



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

ALLEN'S
LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

DR. P. HENN.

NEW YORK:

E. STEIGER & CO.

Educ T 918.81.125



Harvard College Library

THE GIFT OF

GINN AND COMPANY

23



3 2044 097 055 867



STEIGER's Latin Series.

AHN'S
LATIN GRAMMAR.

WITH
REFERENCES TO THE EXERCISES
IN THE
FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD LATIN BOOKS.

BY
Dr. P. HENN.

NEW YORK:
E. STEIGER & CO.

1881.

Edue T 918 . 81. ¹²⁵~~450~~

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY
DEC. 26, 1923

REQUEST.

The undersigned, in their efforts to secure the greatest possible correctness in their educational publications, will feel obliged for the suggestion of improvements.

E. Steiger & Co., Publishers.

Copyright, 1881, by E. STEIGER & Co.

Press of
E. Steiger & Co., N. Y.

P R E F A C E.

AHN'S Latin Grammar forms part of a series which has been undertaken with the design to facilitate the study of Latin for beginners. The author desires to state at the outset that this volume is in no respect a condensation of the *First*, *Second*, and *Third Latin Books*. It is constructed on a plan of its own, and with a twofold object in view: first, to provide a complete grammatical course for those teachers who prefer the synthetic method to the exclusion of the analytic, and secondly, to supply for reference in study a really compendious grammar, which may answer the needs of young scholars, while it is sufficiently comprehensive and full for more advanced students — in a word, the first and also the last grammar in the student's hands.

In pursuance of this plan, the *Grammar* retains from the *First*, *Second*, and *Third Latin Books* the general statement of grammatical facts in the exact form and language of those books, but, of course, in the traditional presentation of synthetic grammar. In the treatment of **Etymology** the following have been the leading features. While scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Of the stem theory especially the author has meant to place before the learner just so much as may be used to explain difficulties — not to multiply them. The pupil's attention should be directed first to what most needs to be learned, viz.: the **etymological forms themselves**. With this in view, the *Grammar* embraces all the important features of the series which are of practical assistance to the learner, particularly during the first year. The sharp distinction, for instance, of inflectional endings by **bold-faced** type is a matter of no small importance if we wish to make the pupil from the very outset so familiar with all the inflections that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur.

Of course, a *real* understanding he will obtain *only* by learning *how those inflections arose*, and here again the brief, clear and practical rules on the subject will be found to simplify a very complex matter, and to remove perhaps the greatest difficulty in the study of Latin grammar. As complementary to the etymological part the careful classification and definition of derivative endings cannot fail to be valuable for constant reference, if not for class study.

In the treatment of **Syntax** the points which have received particular attention are: to set forth the facts of classical Latin (represented by Caesar and Cicero) just as they are in themselves; to describe as fairly and briefly as possible the actual uses of syntactical forms, to illustrate them by carefully selected examples, and, withal, to bear constantly in mind that this Course is meant to lead at the earliest possible moment to the reading of the classical authors. It will be for professional teachers to say whether the endeavor to reach this practical end has been successful.

To furnish to teachers who may so desire, the opportunity of drilling their pupils in the more important rules and principles while they are learning them, references to the corresponding exercises in the *First*, *Second*, and *Third Latin Books* are inserted throughout this *Grammar*. The detailed **Index of Subjects** will be found to contain every topic in the text.

To summarize: the design of this Latin Series is to enable pupils to gain a thorough knowledge of Latin — not without honest exertions, yet with the greatest possible ease.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

General Division of the Subject.

Page 1

PART I. — PHONOLOGY.

<i>Alphabet; Classification</i>	1
<i>Pronunciation</i>	3
<i>Roman Method</i>	3
<i>Continental Method</i>	4
<i>English Method</i>	5
<i>Syllables</i>	6
<i>Quantity</i>	6
<i>Accent</i>	7

PART II. — ETYMOLOGY.

<i>The Parts of Speech</i>	7
SUBSTANTIVES	8-48
<i>Gender</i>	8
<i>Number and Case</i>	10
<i>Declensions</i>	10
<i>General Rules</i>	11
<i>First Declension</i>	12
<i>Second Declension</i>	13
<i>Adjectives</i>	16
<i>Third Declension</i>	20
<i>Formation of the Genitive</i>	20
<i>Adjectives</i>	33
<i>Remarks on Certain Cases</i>	35
<i>Greek Nouns</i>	38
<i>Gender in Third Declension</i>	38
<i>Fourth Declension</i>	42
<i>Fifth Declension</i>	43
<i>Irregular Nouns</i>	44
<i>Proper Names</i>	47
ADJECTIVES	48-53
<i>Declension</i>	48
<i>Comparison</i>	50
NUMERALS	54-59
<i>Numeral Adjectives</i>	54
<i>Numeral Adverbs</i>	58

PRONOUNS	Page 59-65
<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	59
<i>Pronouns of the Third Person</i>	61
<i>Demonstrative</i>	61
<i>Determinative</i>	62
<i>Relative</i>	63
<i>Interrogative</i>	64
<i>Indefinite</i>	64
<i>Pronominal Adjectives</i>	65
VERBS	66-145
<i>Voices</i>	66
<i>Tenses</i>	67
<i>Moods</i>	67
<i>Verbal Nouns and Adjectives</i>	68
<i>Numbers and Persons</i>	69
<i>The Four Conjugations</i>	69
<i>Simple Forms</i>	70
<i>Compound Forms</i>	72
<i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i>	75
<i>First Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	77
<i>Second Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	80
<i>Third Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	84
<i>Fourth Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	88
<i>Deponent Verbs (Paradigms)</i>	92
<i>Appendix to Third Conjugation (Verbs in 16)</i>	100
<i>Special Forms in Conjugation</i>	103
<i>Formation of the Principal Parts</i>	105
<i>in the First Conjugation</i>	106
<i>in the Second Conjugation</i>	108
<i>in the Third Conjugation</i>	112
<i>Stems in u, v</i>	113
<i>Verbs in 16</i>	114
<i>Stems in d, t</i>	115
<i>Stems in b, p</i>	118
<i>Stems in c, g, q, h, ct</i>	119
<i>Stems in l, m, n, r</i>	121
<i>Stems in s, x</i>	124
<i>Stems in sc (Inceptives)</i>	124
<i>in the Fourth Conjugation</i>	129
<i>Irregular Verbs</i>	130
<i>Defective Verbs</i>	141
<i>Impersonal Verbs</i>	144

ADVERBS	Page 145-151
<i>Primitive and Derivative</i>	145
<i>Comparison</i>	150
PREPOSITIONS	151
CONJUNCTIONS	152-154
<i>Co-ordinating</i>	152
<i>Subordinating</i>	153
INTERJECTIONS	155
WORD-FORMATION	155-168
<i>Derivation of Verbs</i>	155
<i>of Substantives</i>	158
<i>of Adjectives</i>	161
<i>Composition of Verbs</i>	164
<i>of Substantives</i>	168
<i>of Adjectives</i>	168

PART III. — SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE	169
<i>Subject and Predicate</i>	169
<i>Attribute and Apposition</i>	172
<i>Agreement of Pronouns</i>	173
<i>The Order of Words</i>	175
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES	176-208
<i>Genitive with Substantives</i>	176
<i>with Adjectives</i>	178
<i>with Verbs</i>	179
<i>Accusative, Direct Object</i>	182
<i>two Accusatives</i>	183
<i>with Impersonal Verbs</i>	184
<i>Idiomatic Uses</i>	185
<i>Dative with Verbs</i>	185
<i>with Adjectives</i>	189
<i>Ethical Dative</i>	190
<i>Ablative of Cause</i>	190
<i>of Means and Instrument</i>	191
<i>of Limitation</i>	191
<i>of Comparison</i>	191
<i>of Manner</i>	192
<i>of Quality</i>	193
<i>of Price</i>	193
<i>of Separation, Plenty and Want</i>	194
<i>in Special Constructions</i>	196

<i>Time, Space, Place</i>	Page 197-207
<i>Use of Prepositions</i>	197
<i>Time</i>	204
<i>Space</i>	206
<i>Place</i>	207
SPECIAL USES OF <i>Substantives</i>	209
<i>of Adjectives</i>	210
<i>of Pronouns</i>	211
SYNTAX OF THE VERB	214-246
<i>Use of Tenses</i>	214
<i>Sequence of Tenses</i>	217
<i>Use of the Indicative</i>	219
<i>Independent Uses of the Subjunctive</i>	220
<i>Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive</i>	221
<i>Consecutive and Final Conjunctions</i>	221
<i>Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions</i>	225
<i>Temporal Conjunctions</i>	226
<i>Causal Conjunctions</i>	227
<i>Conditional Conjunctions</i>	228
<i>Relative Clauses with Subjunctive</i>	230
<i>Direct Questions</i>	231
<i>Indirect Questions</i>	233
<i>The Imperative</i>	234
<i>The Infinitive</i>	235
<i>Accusative with the Infinitive</i>	236
<i>Tenses of the Infinitive</i>	238
<i>Nominative with the Infinitive</i>	239
<i>Direct Discourse</i>	239
<i>Indirect Discourse</i>	239
<i>Participles</i>	241
<i>Ablative Absolute</i>	242
<i>Gerund</i>	243
<i>Gerundive</i>	243
<i>Supine and its Equivalents</i>	245
CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	246-259
<i>Copulative</i>	246
<i>Disjunctive</i>	247
<i>Adversative</i>	248
<i>Causal</i>	249
<i>Illative</i>	249
<i>Corresponsive</i>	249

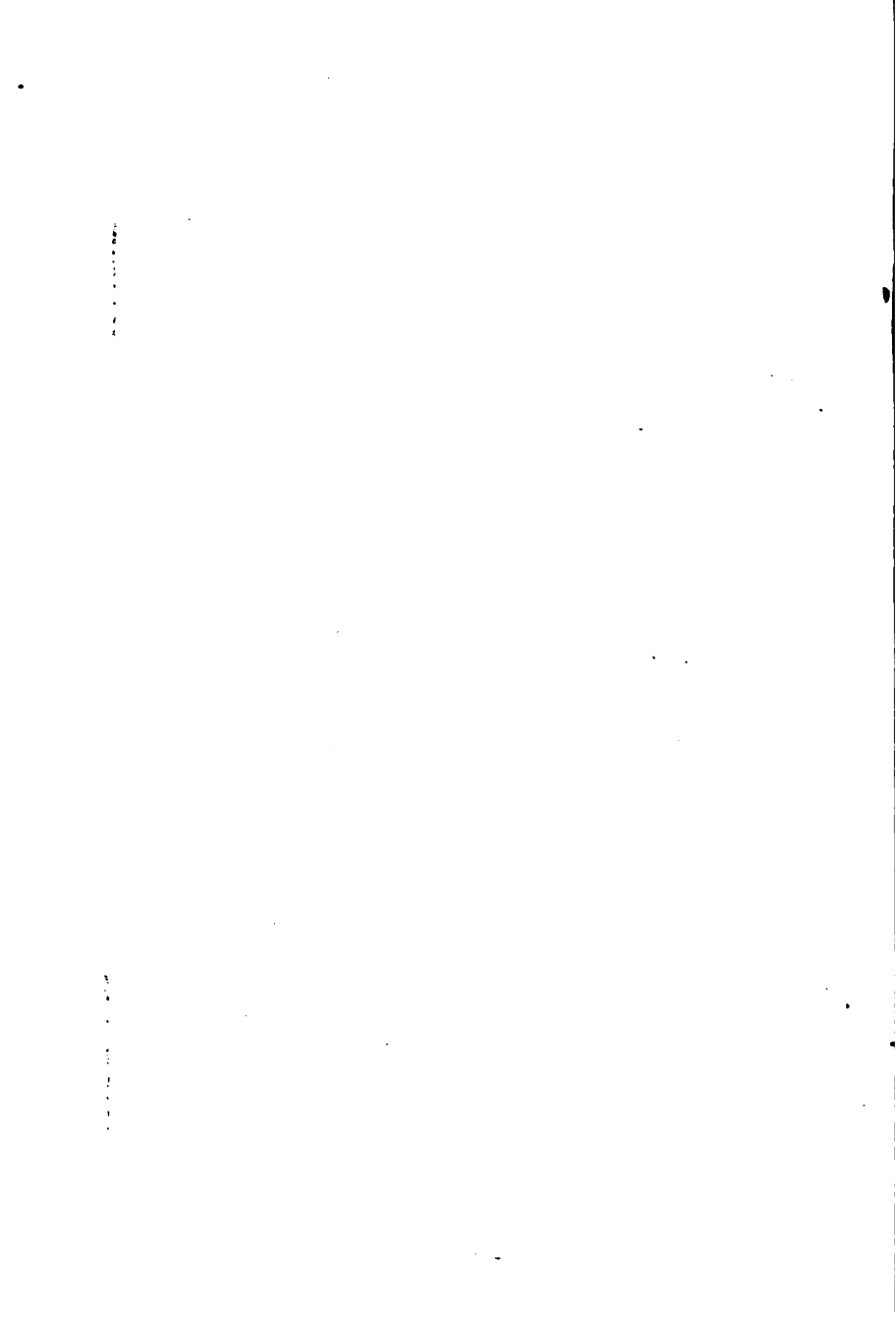
POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY	Page 250-256
<i>Quantity. General Rules</i>	250
<i>Middle Syllables</i>	251
<i>Final Syllables</i>	253
<i>Monosyllables</i>	254
<i>Compounds</i>	255
<i>Figures of Prosody</i>	255
ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION	257-268
<i>Feet. Rhythm</i>	257
<i>Dactylic Hexameter</i>	260
<i>Elegiac Pentameter</i>	261
<i>Iambic Trimeter</i>	261
<i>Compound Verses</i>	261
<i>Metres of Horace</i>	263
<i>Index of the Metres of Horace</i>	267

MISCELLANEOUS.

<i>The Roman Calendar</i>	269
<i>Roman Money, Weights, and Measures</i>	272
<i>Abbreviations</i>	273
<i>Principal Latin Authors</i>	274
INDEX OF VERBS	277
INDEX OF SUBJECTS	288





LATIN GRAMMAR.

GENERAL DIVISION OF THE SUBJECT.

1. Latin Grammar is a description of the usages of the Latin language according to the different ways in which words (*vocabŭla*) are put together to form speech (*oratio*). It is divided into three parts:

I. Phonology which deals with the elementary sounds in the Latin language.

II. Etymology which treats of the forms of single words—**Inflection**—and of derivation and composition—**Word-formation**.

III. Syntax which treats of the arrangement and combination of words in sentences.

PART FIRST.

PHONOLOGY.

2. Nearly all words are composed of articulate sounds. These are represented to the eye by the letters of the **Alphabet** which is the same as the English, except that it has no **w**.

The **Latin Alphabet** consists, strictly, of but twenty-three letters, **i** and **j** being anciently but one character, as likewise **u** and **v**. During the classical age, **y** and **z** were recognized as *Greek* letters, and **x** was the twenty-first and *last* letter of the Latin alphabet (see **4.** below).

3. The **Alphabetical Names** still most generally used in English schools, are the English. Yet, it is more probable that in the ancient spelling of Latin the letters were named in the following manner:

a	A	ah	m	M	em
b	B	bay	n	N	en
c	C	kay	o	O	o
d	D	day	p	P	pay
e	E	ay	q	Q	koo
f	F	eff	r	R	er
g	G	gay	s	S	ess
h	H	hah	t	T	tay
i	I	ee (<i>vowel</i>)	u	U	oo (<i>vowel</i>)
j	J	ee (<i>consonant</i>)	v	V	oo (<i>consonant</i>)
k	K	kah	x	X	ix
l	L	el	y	Y	ipseelon
			z	Z	tsaytah

The Latin uses capital initial letters at the beginning of sentences; also for all proper names, and for substantives and adjectives derived from proper names.

4. The **Vowels** are: a, e, i, o, u, y. All other letters, except the aspirate h, are consonants. Originally, i and u were used both as vowels and as consonants, and supplied the place of j and v. y and z occur in Greek words only.

5. The **Diphthongs** are: ae, oe, au, eu.

6. **Consonants** are classified according to the principal *organs* by which they are produced, as:

Labials (*lip-sounds*): b, p, f, v, m;

Dentals (*tooth-sounds*): d, t, n, s;

Linguals (*tongue-sounds*): l, r;

Gutturals (*throat-sounds*): c, g, k, q;

and according to the *mode* of utterance, as:

Liquids which can be uttered without a vowel:

l, m, n, r, s;

Mutes which cannot be perfectly sounded without a vowel:

b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t.

7. **Double Consonants** are:

z = dz in *adze*; x = cs (*gs*).

PRONUNCIATION.

8. The **Pronunciation** of Latin is different in different countries. In the United States, general usage is now strongly in favor of either the **Roman** or the **Continental Method**, the difference between these two not being very considerable. Many persons, however, prefer to retain the **English Method**, which has been the prevailing system of pronunciation among English-speaking scholars for the last two or three centuries.*

Roman Method.

9. By the **Roman, or Phonetic Method**, *every letter has always the same sound*.

Sounds of the Vowels.

10. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long or short. Vowels marked thus: **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** are long; marked thus: **ă ě ĭ ȳ** are short.

ā = *a* in *father*

ē = *e* in *prey*

ī = *i* in *machine*

ō = *o* in *bone*

ū = *oo* in *boot*

ŷ = *i* in *machine*

ă = *a* in *idea*

ě = *e* in *met*

ĭ = *i* in *holiest*

ȳ = *o* in *obey*

ũ = *u* in *full*

ŷ = *i* in *holiest*

Sounds of the Diphthongs.

11. **Diphthongs** are pronounced by the rapid successive utterance of the elements forming them.

ae = *ay* in *aye*

oe = *o* in *world*

au = *ou* in *house*

eu = *oy* in *boy* (nearly)

The sound of **eu** is much disputed; many scholars contend for **eu** as English *ew*, in *few*.

12. All diphthongs are long, as: **fōedūs**, *a treaty*.

13. To denote that two successive vowels which might otherwise be taken for a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, the **Diaeresis** (¨) is placed over the second vowel, as: **pōētā**, *a poet*.

* For class-instruction in Latin pronunciation and current reading AHN-HENN'S *Latin Reading Charts* will be found valuable.

Sounds of the Consonants.

14. The **Consonants** are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

c is hard and sounds in all situations like **k**, as: *Cicērō* = *Kikēro*.

ch in Latin words is a **k**; in Greek words a **k** with the subaddition of **h**, commonly pronounced as **ch** in German. The latter sound can only be acquired through means of oral instruction.

g is hard throughout, as in *get*, *give*.

j has the sound of **y** in *you*.

qu = **kw** (nearly). **gū** and **sū** before another vowel when both vowels belong to the same syllable = **gw**, **sw**, as: *lingūa*, *lingwa*; *sūētūs*, *swetus*.

rh is pronounced like **r** simply.

s and **x** are always hard, as in *hiss*, *axe*.

t has the same sound as **t** in English, but is never aspirated; **th** is pronounced like **t** simply.

v = **w** in *we*.

Continental Method.

15. In the pronunciation of the vowels, the **Continental Method** is identical with the Roman. As to the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English Method, the following letters deserve special notice.

t before **ī** (short **i**) with another vowel, has the sharp sound of **th** in *thin*; when preceded by another **t**, **s**, or **x**, or when **i** is long (**ī**), and in Greek words, **t** retains its original sound, as: *mix' tī ō*, *a mixture*.

c before **e**, **i**, **y**, **ae**, **oe**, **eu**, is pronounced like **ts** in *nets*; in every other position it is hard like the English **k**. **cī** before a vowel has nearly the same sound as **tī** in the same position, and they are sometimes interchangeable.

ch = **k** with the subaddition of **h**, has a hard guttural sound like the German **ch**. **sch** is pronounced by the successive utterance of **s** and **ch**. Neither of these sounds (**ch** and **sch**) has an equivalent in English, and they must be learned from the lips of a teacher.

English Method.

16. As a general rule, those who prefer to retain the **English Method**, should read a Latin sentence *just as if the words were English*, carefully observing the directions which follow, especially the Rules of Accent (29–31.), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters.

Sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs.

17. Vowels have their long English sounds, as in *fate, me, pine, no, tube, type*, in the following situations:

at the end of a word, as: dōm' ī nī, *masters*; cor' nī, *a horn*; lē' ō, *a lion*;

before another vowel or diphthong, as: Dē' ūs, *God*; vī' ā, *a way*; jā' nū ā, *a door*;

when ending an accented syllable; as: pā' tēr, *a father*; dē' dīt, *he gave*; vī' vūs, *living*; sō' lūs, *alone*; lŷ' rā, *a lyre*.

EXCEPTIONS: a unaccented has the sound of final *a* in *America*; as: men' sā, *a table*. In tībī, *to thee*, and sībī, *to one's self*, final *i* has its short sound.

18. Vowels have their short English sounds, as in *fat, met, pin, not, tub, symbol*, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, as: mag' nūs, *great*; fīn' gū, *I fashion*; cor' pūs, *a body*; mens, *the mind*.

EXCEPTIONS: pōst, *after*, is pronounced as the same word in English; the termination ēs like the English word *ease*, and the termination ōs like *ose* in *morose*, as: ā' vēs, *birds*; pū' ē rōs, *boys*.

19. The Diphthongs ae and oe are pronounced as *e* would be in the same place; au like *aw*, and eu like *ew*, as: poe' nā, *punishment*; au' rūm, *gold*; Eu rō' pā, *Europe*; Cae' sār, *Cæsar*.

Sounds of the Consonants.

20. The Consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English. The following, however, require special notice:

c and g are soft (like *s* and *j*) before e, i, y, ae, and oe, and hard in other situations, as: cen' tūm, *a hundred*; cī' vīs, *a citizen*; cā' dō, *I fall*; gē' nū, *the knee*; grā' nūm, *a grain*.

ch is hard like **k**, as: **chǒ'rūs**, a *choir*.

The consonants **c**, **s**, **t**, immediately preceded by the accent, and standing before **i**, followed by another vowel, are aspirated, **c**, **s**, and **t** taking the sound of **sh**, **x** that of **ksh**, as: **sǒ'cī ūs** (so'-she us), a *companion*; **Hel vē'tī ā** (Hel ve'shi a), *Switzerland*. — **c** following an accented syllable has also the same sound before **eu** and **yo**, as: **cā dū'cē ūs** (ca du'she us), a *herald's staff*. — **t** preceded by another **t**, **s**, or **x**, has its hard sound, as: **o'stī ūm**, a *door*; **mix'tī ō**, a *mixture*.

Syllables.

21. A **Syllable** is one or more sounds pronounced by a single impulse of the voice; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

22. A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the latter, as: **sī'tīs**, *thirst*.

23. Of several consonants coming together between two vowels, those which can be used to begin a Latin word, belong to the next syllable, as: **men'sā**, a *table*; **tem'plūm**, a *temple*; **ca'strā**, a *military camp*.

24. Compound words must be divided into the words which compose them, as: **post'ēā**, *afterward*. But if the former part has dropped its termination, the compound word is to be divided like a simple word, as: **tā met'sī** (contracted from **tā'mēn et'sī**), *although*.

25. The last syllable of the word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

Quantity.

The following are general Rules of **Quantity**:

26. A syllable is long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as: **sōl**, *the sun*; **aurum**, *gold*; *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or by **j**, **x**, **z**; as: **aptus**, *fit*; **collis**, *hill*; **saxum**, *rock*.

27. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common (anceps), that is, it may be long or short in verse, as in **tenēbrae**, *darkness*; in prose it is invariably short.

28. A vowel before another vowel is short, no account being taken of **h**, as: **Dēūs**, *God*; **trāhō**, *I draw*.

Accent.

The following are Rules of **Accent**:

29. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as: lă' nă, *wool*.

30. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *penult*, if that is long, as: man dă' tă, *orders*; if it is short, then on the *antepenult*, as: ă' dă măs, *the diamond*.

31. When -quě, -ně, -vě are joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before these words, whether it be short or long, as: terră'quě, *and the earth*.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

32. The classes into which words are divided, according to their uses, are called **Parts of Speech**; namely,

the **Substantive**, which is the name of a person, thing, or idea; as: vîr, *a man*; dômûs, *a house*; dîes îrae, *the day of wrath*;

the **Adjective**, which is used to qualify a noun, as: rără âvis, *a rare bird*;

the **Pronoun**, which points out some person or thing, as: tû, *thou*; hœc, *that*;

the **Verb**, which is used to assert or declare something, as: dùm spîrô, spērô, *while I breathe, I hope*;

the **Adverb**, which is used to qualify a verb or an adjective, as: nôtă bënë, *mark well*;

the **Preposition**, which joins a word to some other word to show the relation between them, as: lûpûs în făbûlă, *the wolf in the fable*;

the **Conjunction**, which connects sentences together, or words used in the same sentence, as: ôră  t lăbôră, *pray and work*;

the **Interjection**, which is an exclamation, expressive of feeling; as: O c r s h m n m! *O the cares of men!*

33. The word **Noun** is used as a name for both Nouns and Adjectives, the former being distinguished as **nouns substantive**, or **Substantives**, and the latter as **nouns adjective**, or **Adjectives**.

34. **Inflection** is a change made chiefly in the end of a word, to show its grammatical relation.

35. *Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns* have inflections of **Declension**, to denote **number, gender, and case**. *Verbs* have inflections of **Conjugation**, to denote **voice, mood, tense, number, and person**.

36. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called **Particles**; these are *Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections*.

SUBSTANTIVES.

37. The **Substantive** is the name of a *Person* or *Thing (Concrete)*, or of a *Quality (Abstract)*.

38. **Concrete Substantives** are either:

Proper, *i. e.* peculiar to *certain* persons or things, as: *Hömērüs, Homer; Tiberis, Tiber*; or

Common to a *whole class*, as: *arbör, a tree*; or

Collective, denoting in the singular *more than one*, as: *exercitus, an army*. To this class belong also the names of **Materials**, as: *lignüm, wood*.

Gender.

39. There are, as in English, **three Genders: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter**. The gender of Latin nouns, in many instances, is to be determined by their *signification*, according to the following

General Rules.

40. **Masculine** are the names of males, rivers, winds, and months, as: *nautä, a sailor; Rhënüs, the Rhine; nôtüs, the south-wind; Aprîlis, April*.

41. **EXCEPTIONS:** In the following words, Gender is determined by the *termination*, and not by the *distinction of sex*:

<i>cōpiæ, troops</i>	<i>vigîllæ, watchmen</i>
<i>custōdiæ, guards</i>	<i>excūbiæ, sentinels</i>
<i>ōpærae, laborers</i>	<i>mancipium, a slave</i>
<i>auxiliâ, auxiliary troops.</i>	

42. Feminine are: the names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees, as: *virgō, a maid; Aegyptūs, Egypt; Nēāpōlis, Naples; Rhōdūs, Rhodes; pīrūs, a pear-tree.*

43. The numerous **EXCEPTIONS** are chiefly names of towns, which, as to gender, follow the *termination*, instead of the *signification*, as:

Masculine: Argī, *Argos*; **Neuter:** Sāguntūm, *Saguntum*.

44. Neuter are: all **Indeclinable Nouns**, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely as such, without reference to their meaning, as: *nihil, nothing; scīrē tūm, thy knowledge; hōc dīu, this (word) diu.*

45. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of **Common Gender**:

artifex, <i>an artist</i>	dux, <i>a leader</i>	testis, <i>a witness</i>
civis, <i>a citizen</i>	hērēs, <i>an heir</i>	jūdex, <i>a judge</i>
cōmēs, <i>a companion</i>	pārens, <i>a parent</i>	pātrūēlis, <i>a cousin</i>
custōs, <i>a keeper</i>	jūvēnis <i>a youth</i>	vātēs, <i>a prophet.</i>

46. Names of **Persons** with different terminations to distinguish masculines and feminines, are called **substantīva mobilia**; as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgistēr	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēgīnā	<i>a king, queen.</i>

47. Names of **Animals** deserve special notice. With some of them gender is expressed by *difference of termination*, as:

lēō, <i>a lion</i>	lēaenā, <i>a lioness</i>
cervūs, <i>a stag</i>	cervā, <i>a hind;</i>

others are of the *common gender*, as:

hic bōs, <i>this ox</i>	haec bōs, <i>this cow;</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------

others have for *both sexes* one grammatical gender; these are called **epicoena**. Thus *lēpūs, a hare*, is always masculine, and *vulpēs, fox*, always feminine. If necessary, the sexes are distinguished by *mās, male*, and *fēmīnā, female*, as:

vulpēs mās, a male fox *lēpūs fēmīnā, a female hare.*

48. The gender of **Substantives** not determined by their signification, is to be ascertained by their termination, according to the **Special Rules** of Gender under the several declensions. **Adjectives** distinguish gender by *different forms* in the *same words*, and agree in gender with their Substantives.

Number and Case.

49. The Latin, like the English, has **two Numbers**; the **Singular** Number denotes one, the **Plural**, more than one. There are **six Cases** in Latin: the **Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative**.

The **Nominative** is the case of the subject of the sentence, and answers the question *Who?* or *What?*

The **Genitive** may be translated by the English Possessive or with the preposition *of*; it answers the question *Whose?* or *Whereof?*

The **Dative** may usually be translated by the preposition *to* or *for*, answering the question *To whom?* or *For whom?* Sometimes it corresponds to the English Objective.

The **Accusative** nearly corresponds to the English Objective; it answers the question *Whom?* or *What?*

The **Vocative** is the case of direct address.

The **Ablative** may usually be translated by the prepositions *from, by, with*; it answers the questions *Where? Whence? or Wherewith?*

50. According to their relations, the cases are divided into **cāsūs rectī, Independent Cases**, and **cāsūs obliquī, Dependent Cases**. **Nominative** and **Vocative** are **cāsūs rectī**; **Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, cāsūs obliquī**.

Declensions.

51. The formation of the several cases is called **Declension**. There are **five Declensions** in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the **Genitive Singular**.

First Declension.	Genitive Singular	ae
Second Declension.	“	ī
Third Declension.	“	is
Fourth Declension.	“	ūs
Fifth Declension.	“	ei

52. The **Stem** is that part of the word which remains after taking away the Inflections; its last letter is called the **Characteristic**.

53. The stem may be found from the **Genitive Plural**, in the *First, Second and Fifth Declensions* by cutting off **rūm**; in the *Third and Fourth* by cutting off **ūm**.

54. CASE-ENDINGS of the Five Declensions.*

FIRST DECLENSION.				SECOND DECLENSION.			
Singular.		Plural.		Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	ā (ē, ās, ēs)	ae		ūs, ēr, īr, ūr, ūm	I, Neut. ā		
Gen.	ae (ēs)	ārūm		ī	ōrūm		
Dat.	ae	īs (ābūs)		ō	īs		
Acc.	ām (ēn)	ās		ūm	ōs, Neut. ā		
Voc.	ā (ā, ē)	ae		ē, ēr, īr, ūr, ūm	I, Neut. ā		
Abl.	ā (ē)	īs (ābūs)		ō	īs		

THIRD DECLENSION.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	ā, ē, ī, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, x	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)	
Gen.	īs	ūm (īūm)	
Dat.	ī	ībūs	
Acc.	ēm (īm)	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)	
Voc.	like Nom.	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)	
Abl.	ē (ī)	ībūs	

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	ūs, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā	
Gen.	ūs	ūūm	
Dat.	ūī, ū	ībūs (ūbūs)	
Acc.	ūm, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā	
Voc.	ūs, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā	
Abl.	ū	ībūs (ūbūs)	

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Singular.		Plural.	
	ēs		ēs
	ēī, ēī		ērūm
	ēī, ēī		ēbūs
	ēm		ēs
	ēs		ēs
	ē		ēbūs

55. The following are General Rules applying to all Declensions:

1. In both numbers the **Vocative** is the same as the **Nominative**, except in the singular of nouns in ūs of the *Second Declension*.
2. Neuters have the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative** alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, always end in ā.
3. The **Dative** and **Ablative** plural are always alike.

* This *Synopsis* of Case-endings is embodied in **ARN-HENN'S Latin Paradigm Charts**, printed in large type and intended for permanent display on the wall.

First Declension.

56. Latin nouns which have **ae** in the Genitive Singular, are of the **First Declension**. They have the Nominative *like the stem*, ending in **ā**.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. men' sā , a table	men' sae , tables
Gen. men' sae , of a table	men sā' rūm , of tables
Dat. men' sae , to a table	men' sīs , to tables
Acc. men' sām , a table	men' sās , tables
Voc. men' sā , O table	men' sae , O tables
Abl. men' sā , with a table	men' sīs , with tables

57. The Latin has no Article; therefore **mensā** may be rendered *a table*, or *the table*, or *table*, according to the connection.

Examples for Practice:

lūnā , -ae, the moon	rānā , -ae, a frog
stellā , -ae, a star	terrā , -ae, the earth, land
viā , -ae, a way, road	ālūdā , -ae, a lark
insulā , -ae, an island	rōsā , -ae, a rose
nautā , -ae, a sailor	viōlā , -ae, a violet [15-18] *

58. In composition with **pātēr**, **mātēr**, **filīūs**, **filīā**, the word **fāmīliā** has in the Genitive Singular **fāmīliās**, e. g., **pāterfāmīliās**, the father of a family.

59. The Dative and Ablative Plural of **dēā**, a goddess, and **filīā**, a daughter, end in **ābūs**, viz.: **dēābūs**, **filīābūs**, to distinguish them from the same cases of **dētūs**, a god, and **filītūs**, a son.

Greek Nouns.

60. To the **First Declension** belong also some Greek Nouns, ending in **ē**, **ās**, **ēs**. The declension of these nouns in the plural differs in no respect from that of Latin nouns of the First Declension.

Singular.

Nom. ē pī' tō mē , epitome	bō' rē ās , north-wind	pŷ rī' tēs , flint
Gen. ē pī' tō mēs	bō' rē ae	pŷ rī' tae
Dat. ē pī' tō mae	bō' rē ae	pŷ rī' tae
Acc. ē pī' tō mēn	bō' rē ām (ān)	pŷ rī' tēn
Voc. ē pī' tō mē	bō' rē ā	pŷ rī' tē
Abl. ē pī' tō mē	bō' rē ā	pŷ rī' tē

* These figures refer to the Exercises for translation in the *First, Second and Third Latin Books*.

Examples for Practice:

grammătîcē, -ēs, <i>grammar</i>	Messîās, -ae, <i>the Messiah</i>
ălōē, -ēs, <i>the aloe</i>	Lūcās, -ae, <i>Luke</i>
mūsîcē, -ēs, <i>music</i>	cōmētēs, -ae, <i>a comet</i>

Many of them have also regular Latin forms, as: plānētēs and plānētā, *a planet*. [101. 102.]

Rule of Gender.

61. Nouns of the First Declension ending in **ā** and **ē** are feminine; those in **ās** and **ēs** are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

62. Nearly all the exceptions are such as are masculine from their signification, according to the **General Rule** above mentioned (**55. 1.**), as: nautā, *a sailor*; also Hădriā, *the Adriatic*.

Second Declension.

63. Latin nouns whose genitive is **ī**, are of the **Second Declension**. In the nominative they end in **ūs**, **ōr**, **īr**, **ūr**, **ūm**. Those ending in **ūm** are neuter, the rest are masculine.

Singular.

Nom.	flū' vī ūs, <i>a river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>a roof</i>
Gen.	flū' vī ī, <i>of a river</i>	tec' tī, <i>of a roof</i>
Dat.	flū' vī ō, <i>to a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>to a roof</i>
Acc.	flū' vī ūm, <i>a river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>a roof</i>
Voc.	flū' vī ē, <i>O river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>O roof</i>
Abl.	flū' vī ō, <i>with a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>with a roof</i>

Plural.

Nom.	flū' vī ī, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tā, <i>roofs</i>
Gen.	flū vī ō' rūm, <i>of rivers</i>	tec tō' rūm, <i>of roofs</i>
Dat.	flū' vī īs, <i>to rivers</i>	tec' tīs, <i>to roofs</i>
Acc.	flū' vī ōs, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tā, <i>roofs</i>
Voc.	flū' vī ī, <i>O rivers</i>	tec' tā, <i>O roofs</i>
Abl.	flū' vī īs, <i>with rivers</i>	tec' tīs, <i>with roofs</i>

In Nouns of the **Second Declension** the stem ends in **ō**-, as: flūvîō-, tectō-, pŭērō-, āgrō-.

In the **Genitive Singular** **ī**, from Substantives in **ūs**, **ūm**, is often contracted into **ī**, the accent remaining unchanged, as:

Appŭs, Gen. Appī consillŭm, Gen. consi'ī.

Examples for Practice:

dōmīnūs, -ī, <i>a master, lord</i>	caelūm, -ī, <i>the heaven, sky</i>
mundūs, -ī, <i>the world</i>	aurūm, -ī, <i>gold</i>
annūs, -ī, <i>a year</i>	ferrūm, -ī, <i>iron</i>
morbūs, -ī, <i>a disease</i>	mētallūm, -ī, <i>a metal</i>
ānīmūs, -ī, <i>the mind, soul</i>	īnītīūm, -ī, <i>a beginning</i>
discīpūlūs, -ī, <i>a scholar, pupil</i>	signūm, -ī, <i>a sign</i>
ventūs, -ī, <i>the wind</i>	īnsectūm, -ī, <i>an insect</i>
ēquūs, -ī, <i>a horse</i>	prātūm, -ī, <i>a meadow</i>
ōcūlūs, -ī, <i>an eye</i>	mendācīūm, -ī, <i>a lie</i>
hortūs, -ī, <i>a garden</i>	aedīfīcīūm, -ī, <i>a building</i>

[19. 20]

64. Words of the **Second Declension**, ending in the nominative in **ēr** (**īr**, **ūr**) have dropped the original ending **ūs** of the nominative. In most of them the **ē** is only inserted in the **Nominative** and **Vocative**, and disappears in the other cases.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā' gēr, <i>a field</i>	ā' grī, <i>fields</i>
Gen.	ā' grī, <i>of a field</i>	ā' grō' rūm, <i>of fields</i>
Dat.	ā' grō, <i>to a field</i>	ā' grīs, <i>to fields</i>
Acc.	ā' grūm, <i>a field</i>	ā' grōs, <i>fields</i>
Voc.	ā' gēr, <i>O field</i>	ā' grī, <i>O fields</i>
Abl.	ā' grō, <i>with a field</i>	ā' grīs, <i>with fields</i>

Examples for Practice:

māgīstēr, -rī, <i>a teacher, master</i>	cultēr, -rī, <i>a knife</i>
lībēr, -rī, <i>a book</i>	āpēr, -rī, <i>a wild boar</i>
arbitēr, -rī, <i>a judge</i>	fābēr, -rī, <i>a smith</i>
austēr, -rī, <i>the south wind</i>	mīnistēr, -rī, <i>a servant</i>
cancēr, -rī, <i>a crab</i>	cāpēr, -rī, <i>a goat</i>

65. In other words ending in **ēr**, the **ē** of the **Nominative** belongs to the stem and is retained *through all the cases*, as:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pū' ēr, <i>a boy</i>	pū' ē rī, <i>boys</i>
Gen.	pū' ē rī, <i>of a boy</i>	pū' ē rō' rūm, <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	pū' ē rō, <i>to a boy</i>	pū' ē rīs, <i>to boys</i>
Acc.	pū' ē rūm, <i>a boy</i>	pū' ē rōs, <i>boys</i>
Voc.	pū' ēr, <i>O boy</i>	pū' ē rī, <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	pū' ē rō, <i>with a boy</i>	pū' ē rīs, <i>with boys</i>

To this class belong:

Substantives: ādultēr, -ī, *an adulterer* gēnēr, -ī, *a son-in-law*
 pūēr, -ī, *a boy* sōcēr, -ī, *a father-in-law*
 vespēr, -ī, *evening* Lībēr, -ī, *Bacchus*
 libērī, -ōrūm, *children*

Adjectives: aspēr, aspērā, aspērūm, *rough*
 lācēr, lācērā, lācērūm, *torn*
 mīsēr, mīsērā, mīsērūm, *wretched*
 prospēr, prospērā, prospērūm, *prosperous*
 tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm, *tender*
 dextēr, dext(ē)rā, dext(ē)rūm, *right*.

Words ending in fēr and gēr from fērō, I bear, and gērō, I carry:

Lūcīfēr, -ī, *light-bringer*
 armīgēr, -ī, *an armor-bearer*
 frūgīfēr, frūgīfērā, frūgīfērūm, *fruit-bearing*
 lānīgēr, lānīgērā, lānīgērūm, *wool-bearing*.

[23. 24.]

66. The only words in **īr** and **ūr** are: vīr, -ī, *a man*, with its compounds, as: lēvīr, -ī, *a brother-in-law*, and the masculine of the adjective sātūr, -ā, -ūm, *sated*.

67. Proper Nouns in **iūs** omit ē in the **Vocative**, as: Antō-niūs, *Anthony*, Antōnī; likewise filiūs, *a son*, and gēniūs, *a guardian angel*, make fili and gēnī. The possessive mēūs, *my*, (but not mēā, mēūm) has mī, and Dēūs, *God*, has Dēūs. In the plural **Nominative** and **Vocative**, dēūs has dīī or dī; **Genitive**: dēōrūm; **Dative** and **Ablative**: dīīs, dīs.

68. In the **Genitive plural** of the **Second Declension** ūm is often found for ōrūm, especially in certain words denoting money, measure, or weight, as: nummūm for nummōrūm, *of moneys*; also in a few other words, as: dēūm for dēōrūm, libērūm for libērōrūm.

69. A few **Greek Nouns** of the **Second Declension** end in ōs, ōn, instead of ūs, ūm. Greek Nouns ending in ēūs (like Orpheūs) are thus declined:

Nom.	Or' phēūs	Dat.	Or' phē ō	Voc.	Or' phēū
Gen.	Or' phē ī	Acc.	Or' phē ūm	Abl.	Or' phē ō

[101. 102.]

Rule of Gender.

70. Nouns in **ūs**, **ēr**, **īr** are masculine; in **ūm** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

71. Of nouns ending in **ūs** the names of towns, islands, and trees are **Feminine**, as: **Cōrīnthūs**, *Corinth*; **Sāmūs**, *Samos*; **pōpūlūs**, *a poplar*, etc. (**42**); also:

alvūs, **-ī**, *the belly*

hūmūs, **-ī**, *soil*

cōlūs, **-ī**, *a distaff*

vannūs, **ī**, *a van*

and many Greek words of frequent occurrence, as:

diphthongūs, **-ī**, *a diphthong*

mēthōdūs, **-ī**, *a method*

pārāgrāphūs, **-ī**, *a paragraph*

dīālectūs, **-ī**, *a dialect*

The following in **ūs** are **Neuter**:

pēlāgūs, **-ī**, *the sea*; **vulgūs**, **-ī**, *the rabble*; **virūs**, **-ī**, *poison*;

their accusative, as of all neuters, is the same as the nominative, but they have no plural. [27. 28.]

Adjectives in **ūs**, **ā**, **ūm**.

72. Adjectives in **ūs**, **ā**, **ūm** are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine like substantives of the **First**.

bōnūs, **bōnā**, **bōnūm**, *good*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	bō' nūs	bō' nā	bō' nūm
Gen.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nī
Dat.	bō' nō	bō' nae	bō' nō
Acc.	bō' nūm	bō' nām	bō' nūm
Voc.	bō' nē	bō' nā	bō' nūm
Abl.	bō' nō	bō' nā	bō' nō

Plural.

Nom.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nā
Gen.	bō nō' rūm	bō nā' rūm	bō nō' rūm
Dat.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs
Acc.	bō' nōs	bō' nās	bō' nā
Voc.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nā
Abl.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs

Examples for Practice:

sēdūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>busy</i>	mōdestūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>modest</i>
tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>timid</i>	bēātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>happy, blessed</i>
rōtundūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>round</i>	albūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>white</i>
ōdōrūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fragrant</i>	fulvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>yellow</i>
clārūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>bright, clear</i>	multūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>much, many</i>
lūcīdūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shining</i>	magnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>great, large</i>
ardūūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>arduous, steep</i>	parvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>little, small</i>
umbrōsūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shady</i>	hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>human</i>
garrulūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>garrulous</i>	vērūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>true</i>

[21. 22.]

73. Substantives and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions are combined in the following manner:

Singular.

Nom.	nau'tā lae'tūs, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Gen.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>of a merry sailor</i>
Dat.	nau'tae lae'tō, <i>to a merry sailor</i>
Acc.	nau'tām lae'tūm, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Voc.	nau'tā lae'tē, <i>O merry sailor</i>
Abl.	nau'tā lae'tō, <i>with a merry sailor</i>

Plural.

Nom.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>merry sailors</i>
Gen.	nau'tā'rūm lae'tō'rūm, <i>of merry sailors</i>
Dat.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>to merry sailors</i>
Acc.	nau'tās lae'tōs, <i>merry sailors</i>
Voc.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>O merry sailors</i>
Abl.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>with merry sailors</i>

Singular.

Nom.	coe'nā mō'dīcā, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Gen.	coe'nae mō'dīcae, <i>of a moderate dinner</i>
Dat.	coe'nae mō'dīcae, <i>to a moderate dinner</i>
Acc.	coe'nām mō'dīcām, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Voc.	coe'nā mō'dīcā, <i>O moderate dinner</i>
Abl.	coe'nā mō'dīcā, <i>with a moderate dinner</i>

Plural.

Nom.	coe'nae mō'dīcae, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Gen.	coe'nā'rūm mō'dīcā'rūm, <i>of moderate dinners</i>
Dat.	coe'nīs mō'dīcīs, <i>to moderate dinners</i>
Acc.	coe'nās mō'dīcās, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Voc.	coe'nae mō'dīcae, <i>O moderate dinners</i>
Abl.	coe'nīs mō'dīcīs, <i>with moderate dinners</i>

Singular.

Nom.	tec'tūm al'tūm, a high roof
Gen.	tec'tī al'tī, of a high roof
Dat.	tec'tō al'tō, to a high roof
Acc.	tec'tūm al'tūm, a high roof
Voc.	tec'tūm al'tūm, O high roof
Abl.	tec'tō al'tō, with a high roof

Plural.

Nom.	tec'tā al'tā, high roofs
Gen.	tec'tō'rūm al'tō'rūm, of high roofs
Dat.	tec'tīs al'tīs, to high roofs
Acc.	tec'tā al'tā, high roofs
Voc.	tec'tā al'tā, O high roofs
Abl.	tec'tīs al'tīs, with high roofs

Examples for Practice.

pōētā clārūs, a famous poet	flūvīūs lātūs, a broad river
formicā sēdūlā, the busy ant	collūm longūm, a long neck.

Adjectives in ěr, ā, ūm.

74. Adjectives in ěr, ā, ūm, are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine, like substantives of the **First**.

nīĝēr, nīgrā, nīgrūm, black

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	nī' ĝēr	nī' grā	nī' grūm
Gen.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grī
Dat.	nī' grō	nī' grae	nī' grō
Acc.	nī' grūm	nī' grām	nī' grūm
Voc.	nī' ĝēr	nī' grā	nī' grūm
Abl.	nī' grō	nī' grā	nī' grō

Plural.

Nom.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grā
Gen.	nī' grō' rūm	nī' grā' rūm	nī' grō' rūm
Dat.	nī' grīs	nī' grīs	nī' grīs
Acc.	nī' grōs	nī' grās	nī' grā
Voc.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grā
Abl.	nī' grīs	nī' grīs	nī' grīs

liběr, liběrá, liběrům, *free*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	li' běr	li' bě rá	li' bě rům
Gen.	li' bě rī	li' bě rae	li' bě rī
Dat.	li' bě rō	li' bě rae	li' bě rō
Acc.	li' bě rům	li' bě rām	li' bě rům
Voc.	li' běr	li' bě rá	li' bě rům
Abl.	li' bě rō	li' bě rá	li' bě rō

Plural.

Nom.	li' bě rī	li' bě rae	li' bě rá
Gen.	li' bě rō' rům	li' bě rá' rům	li' bě rō' rům
Dat.	li' bě rīs	li' bě rīs	li' bě rīs
Acc.	li' bě rōs	li' bě rās	li' bě rá
Voc.	li' bě rī	li' bě rae	li' bě rá
Abl.	li' bě rīs	li' bě rīs	li' bě rīs

75. Most adjectives in **ěr**, **á**, **ům** drop the **ě** before the **r** like **nīgěr**. Examples are:

aegěr, aegrá, aegrům, *sick*
 crěběr, crěbrá, crěbrům, *frequent*
 rūběr, rūbrá, rūbrům, *red*
 pulchěr, pulchrá, pulchrům, *beautiful, fine*
 sīnistěr, sīnistrá, sīnistrům, *left*
 pīgěr, pigrá, pigrům, *lazy*
 intěgěr, intěgrá, intěgrům, *whole, entire*

76. A few adjectives in **ěr**, **á**, **ům** retain the **ě** throughout, like **liběr**. (See 65.) [25. 26.]

77. These nine adjectives have the genitive singular in **iūs**, and the dative in **ī** in all the genders:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Dative.
ālūs, -ā, -ūd, <i>another</i>	ālīūs	ālīī
nullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>no, not any, no one</i>	nullīūs	nullīī
sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>alone</i>	sōlīūs	sōlīī
tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>whole</i>	tōtīūs	tōtīī
ullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>	ullīūs	ullīī
ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>one</i>	ūnīūs	ūnīī
altěr, -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>	altěrīūs	altěrīī
ūtěr, -rá, -rům, <i>which (of two)</i>	utrīūs	utrīī
neutěr, -rá, -rům, <i>neither</i>	neutrīūs	neutrīī

The plural is regular like that of **bōnūs**.

[71. 72.]

Third Declension.

78. Nouns whose genitive ends in **īs**, are of the **Third Declension**. Their nominative ends in

ā, ē, ī, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

79. In the Third Declension, the **stem** ends either in **ī** (**Vowel-stem**) or in a consonant (**Consonant-stem**). There are only two **u-stems**, **sū-s**, *a swine*, and **grū-s**, *a crane*. The stem can be found by cutting off **ūm** from the **Genitive Plural**:

āvīs, <i>a bird</i>	Gen. Plur. āvīūm	Stem āvī-
lāpīs, <i>a stone</i>	“ lāpīdūm	“ lāpīd-

80. All nouns having the *same* number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (**Parisyllabic**) have **Vowel-stems** in **ī**. They end in the Nominative in **īs, ēs, ē, āl, ār**, those in **āl** and **ār** having lost a final **ē**.

Nom. nāvīs	Gen. nāvī-s	Nom. ānīmāl(ē)	Gen. ānīmālī-s
“ nūbēs	“ nūbī-s	“ calcār(ē)	“ calcārī-s
“ mārē	“ mārī-s		

81. All nouns *increasing* in the Genitive (**Imparisyllabic**) have **Consonant-stems**:

Nom. lāpīs	Gen. lāpīd-īs	Nom. hōmō	Gen. hōmīn-īs
------------	---------------	-----------	---------------

Formation of the Genitive.

82. The **Entire Declension** of any Substantive of the Third Declension may be readily formed by substituting for the Genitive-ending **īs**, the proper endings of the other cases. Hence to decline a word correctly, in this Declension, we need to know how its **Genitive** is formed.

But we must bear in mind that **Neuters** always form the **Accusative** and **Vocative** cases in both numbers like the **Nominative**, and the **Nominative Plural** in **ā**. *This is a rule of highest importance.*

83. Nouns in **ā** are **Neuters** of Greek origin and change **ā** into **ātīs** to form the genitive, as: **pōēmā, pōēmātīs**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pǒ ē' mā, <i>a poem</i>	pǒ ē' mā tā, <i>poems</i>
Gen.	pǒ ē' mā tīs, <i>of a poem</i>	pǒ ē' mā tīm, <i>of poems</i>
Dat.	pǒ ē' mā tī, <i>to a poem</i>	pǒ ē mā' tī būs, <i>to poems</i>
Acc.	pǒ ē' mā, <i>a poem</i>	pǒ ē' mā tā, <i>poems</i>
Voc.	pǒ ē' mā, <i>O poem</i>	pǒ ē' mā tā, <i>O poems</i>
Abl.	pǒ ē' mā tē, <i>with a poem</i>	pǒ ē mā' tī būs, <i>with poems</i>

Examples for Practice:

ārōmā, -tīs, <i>a spice</i>	aenigmā, -tīs, <i>a riddle</i>
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

[65. 66.]

84. Nouns in ē change ē into ĩs to form the genitive, as: rētē, rētīs. They are Neuter.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>	rē' tī ā, <i>nets</i>
Gen.	rē' tīs, <i>of a net</i>	rē' tī ūm, <i>of nets</i>
Dat.	rē' tī, <i>to a net</i>	rē' tī būs, <i>to nets</i>
Acc.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>	rē' tī ā, <i>nets</i>
Voc.	rē' tē, <i>O net</i>	rē' tī ā; <i>O nets</i>
Abl.	rē' tī, <i>with a net</i>	rē' tī būs, <i>with nets</i>

Examples for Practice:

mārē, -īs, <i>the sea, ocean</i>	cūbīlē, -īs, <i>a lair</i>
altārē, -īs, <i>an altar</i>	conclāvē, -īs, <i>a room</i>

[53. 54.]

85. Certain nouns ending in ō form their genitive by changing ō into ĩnīs, as: hōmō, hōmĩnīs.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	hō' mō, <i>man</i>	hō' mĩ nēs, <i>men, people</i>
Gen.	hō' mĩ nīs, <i>of man</i>	hō' mĩ nūm, <i>of men</i>
Dat.	hō' mĩ nī, <i>to man</i>	hō mĩ' nī būs, <i>to men</i>
Acc.	hō' mĩ nēm, <i>man</i>	hō' mĩ nēs, <i>men</i>
Voc.	hō' mō, <i>O man</i>	hō' mĩ nēs, <i>O men</i>
Abl.	hō' mĩ nē, <i>with man</i>	hō mĩ' nī būs, <i>with men</i>

Thus we have:

hōmō, -ĩnīs, <i>man</i>	turbō, -ĩnīs, <i>a whirlwind</i>
nēmō, -ĩnīs, <i>nobody</i>	Āpollō, -ĩnīs, <i>Apollo</i>

and nearly all the words in dō and gō, as:

ordō, -ĩnīs, <i>order</i>	īmāgō, -ĩnīs, <i>an image</i>
consuetūdō, -ĩnīs, <i>habit</i>	pulchritūdō, -ĩnīs, <i>beauty.</i>

86. Mark: cārō, *flesh*; carnīs, *gen. plur.: carnīum.*

87. All other words ending in **ō** change **ō** into **ōnīs** to form the genitive, as: **lēō, lēōnīs.**

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	lē' ō, <i>a lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	lē ō' nīs, <i>of a lion</i>	lē ō' nūm, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	lē ō' nī, <i>to a lion</i>	lē ō' nī būs, <i>to lions</i>
Acc.	lē ō' nēm, <i>a lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	lē' ō, <i>O lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	lē ō' nē, <i>with a lion</i>	lē ō' nī būs, <i>with lions</i>

Such are:

pāvō, -ōnīs, <i>a peacock</i>	āquīlō, -ōnīs, <i>the north wind</i>
pulmō, -ōnīs, <i>a lung</i>	pōtīō, -ōnīs, <i>a drink(ing)</i>

also a few in **dō** and **gō**, namely:

harpāgō, -ōnīs, <i>a grapple-hook</i>	praedō, -ōnīs, <i>a robber</i>
cōmēdō, -ōnīs, <i>a glutton</i>	līgō, -ōnīs, <i>a mattock</i>

[29—32.]

Peculiar: **Ānīō, -ēnīs, the river Anio.**

88. Nouns in **ī** and **ŷ** (Neuters of Greek origin) take **īs, ŷīs** in the genitive, as: **sināpī, -īs, mustard; mīsŷ, -ŷīs, copperas.**

89. Neuters in **c**: only **ālēc, ālēcīs, pickle; lāc, lactīs, milk.**

90. Nouns in **l** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	con' sūl, <i>a consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Gen.	con' sū līs, <i>of a consul</i>	con' sū lūm, <i>of the consuls</i>
Dat.	con' sū lī, <i>to a consul</i>	con sū' lī būs, <i>to the consuls</i>
Acc.	con' sū lēm, <i>a consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Voc.	con' sūl, <i>O consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>O consuls</i>
Abl.	con' sū lē, <i>with a consul</i>	con sū' lī būs, <i>with the consuls</i>

Examples for Practice:

sōl, sōlīs, <i>the sun</i>	exsūl, exsūlīs, <i>an exile</i>
sāl, sālīs, <i>salt</i>	pūgil, pūgilīs, <i>a pugilist</i>

91. Nouns in **āl** change **āl** to **ālīs** to form the genitive, as: **ānīmāl, animālīs.** They are **Neuter.**

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Gen.	ā nī māl' līs, <i>of an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ūm, <i>of animals</i>
Dat.	ā nī māl' lī, <i>to an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>to animals</i>
Acc.	ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Voc.	ā' nī māl, <i>O animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>O animals</i>
Abl.	ā nī māl' lī, <i>with an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>with animals</i>

Examples for Practice:

vectīgāļ, -āļs, *a tax* tribūnāļ, -āļs, *a tribunal*

92. mēļ, *honey*, has mellis, and the plural mellā; fēļ, *gall*, has fellis, but is without a plural; both are **Neuter**. [53. 54.]

93. Nouns in **ēn** form their genitive by changing **ēn** into **īnis**, as: carmēn, carmīnis; Nouns in **ēn**, by adding **is**, as: rēn, rēnis. All in **mēn** are **Neuter**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	car' mēn, <i>a poem</i>	car' mī nā, <i>poems</i>
Gen.	car' mī nīs, <i>of a poem</i>	car' mī nūm, <i>of poems</i>
Dat.	car' mī nī, <i>to a poem</i>	car mī' nī būs, <i>to poems</i>
Acc.	car' mēn, <i>a poem</i>	car' mī nā, <i>poems</i>
Voc.	car' mēn, <i>O poem</i>	car' mī nā, <i>O poems</i>
Abl.	car' mī nē, <i>with a poem</i>	car mī' nī būs, <i>with poems</i>

Examples for Practice:

nōmēn, -īnis, <i>a name</i>	(rēn, rēnis) usually pl.: rēnēs,
lūmēn, -īnis, <i>light</i>	rēnūm, <i>the kidneys</i>
ōmēn, -īnis, <i>an omen</i>	liēn, liēnis, <i>spleen</i>
fulmēn, -īnis, <i>a thunder-bolt</i>	splēn, splēnis, <i>spleen</i>
grāmēn, -īnis, <i>grass</i>	pectēn, -īnis, <i>a comb</i> [59. 60.]

94. As a rule, nouns in **r**, viz. **ār**, **ēr**, **ōr**, **ūr**, add **is** to form the genitive, subject, however, to the following variations:

Those in **ār** form the Genitive by changing **ār** into **ārīs**, as: calcār, calcārīs. They are **Neuter**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	cal' cār, <i>a spur</i>	cal cā' rī ā, <i>spurs</i>
Gen.	cal cā' rīs, <i>of a spur</i>	cal cā' rī ūm, <i>of spurs</i>
Dat.	cal cā' rī, <i>to a spur</i>	cal cā' rī būs, <i>to spurs</i>
Acc.	cal' cār, <i>a spur</i>	cal cā' rī ā, <i>spurs</i>
Voc.	cal' cār, <i>O spur</i>	cal cā' rī ā, <i>O spurs</i>
Abl.	cal cā' rī, <i>with a spur</i>	cal cā' rī būs, <i>with spurs</i>

Examples for Practice:

exemplār, -ārīs, *a model* cochlēār, -ārīs, *a spoon*

95.

EXCEPTIONS:

Neuter.	Masculine.
nectār, -īs, <i>nectar</i>	Caesār, -īs, <i>Caesar</i>
hēpār, -ātīs, <i>the liver</i>	lār, lārīs, <i>a household deity</i>
fār, fārīs, <i>corn</i>	pār, pārīs, <i>a pair</i> [53. 54.]

96. Nouns in **ēr** and **ēr** add **īs** to form the genitive, as: **ansēr**, **ansērīs**, *a goose*; **vēr**, **vērīs**, *spring*; but **imbēr**, *a shower*, the names of months in **bēr**, and nouns in **tēr**, except **lätēr**, *a brick*, change **ēr** into **rīs**, dropping the **ē** before the **r**, as: **pätēr**, **pätērīs**.

Singular.

Nom.	an' sēr, <i>a goose</i>	pā' tēr, <i>a father</i>
Gen.	an' sē rīs, <i>of a goose</i>	pā' trīs, <i>of a father</i>
Dat.	an' sē rī, <i>to a goose</i>	pā' trī, <i>to a father</i>
Acc.	an' sē rēm, <i>a goose</i>	pā' trēm, <i>a father</i>
Voc.	an' sēr, <i>O goose</i>	pā' tēr, <i>O father</i>
Abl.	an' sē rē, <i>with a goose</i>	pā' trē, <i>with a father</i>

Plural.

Nom.	an' sē rēs, <i>geese</i>	pā' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Gen.	an' sē rūm, <i>of geese</i>	pā' trūm, <i>of fathers</i>
Dat.	an' sē rī būs, <i>to geese</i>	pā' trī būs, <i>to fathers</i>
Acc.	an' sē rēs, <i>geese</i>	pā' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Voc.	an' sē rēs, <i>O geese</i>	pā' trēs, <i>O fathers</i>
Abl.	an' sē rī būs, <i>with geese</i>	pā' trī būs, <i>with fathers</i>

Examples for Practice:

passēr , -īs , <i>a sparrow</i>	mātēr , -rīs , <i>a mother</i>
mūlīēr , -īs , <i>a woman</i>	frātēr , -rīs , <i>a brother</i>
aggēr , -īs , <i>a rampart</i>	imbēr , -rīs , <i>a shower</i>
lätēr , -īs , <i>a brick</i>	Septembēr , -rīs , <i>September</i>

97.

Peculiar:

ītēr , ītīnērīs , <i>a way (Neuter)</i>	āēr , āērīs , <i>the air</i>
Juppītēr , Jōvīs , <i>Jove</i>	aethēr , aethērīs , <i>the upper air</i>

98. A few have **ītūm**, instead of **ūtūm**, in the Genitive plural:

imbēr , <i>a shower</i> , imbrītūm	ūtēr , <i>a leather sack</i> , ūtītūm
lītēr , <i>a boat</i> , lītītūm	ventēr , <i>the belly</i> , ventītūm

[37. 38.]

99. Nouns in **ōr** change **ōr** into **ōrīs** to form the genitive; as: **cōlōr**, **-ōrīs**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	cō' lōr, <i>a color</i>	cō' lō' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Gen.	cō' lō' rīs, <i>of a color</i>	cō' lō' rūm, <i>of colors</i>
Dat.	cō' lō' rī, <i>to a color</i>	cō' lō' rī būs, <i>to colors</i>
Acc.	cō' lō' rēm, <i>a color</i>	cō' lō' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Voc.	cō' lōr, <i>O color</i>	cō' lō' rēs, <i>O colors</i>
Abl.	cō' lō' rē, <i>with a color</i>	cō' lō' rī būs, <i>with colors</i>

Examples for Practice:

tīmōr, -ōrīs, <i>fear</i>	āmōr, -ōrīs, <i>love</i>
praeceptōr, -ōrīs, <i>a teacher</i>	sāpōr, -ōrīs, <i>taste</i>
auctōr, -ōrīs, <i>an author</i>	ōdōr, -ōrīs, <i>smell</i>
audītōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hearer</i>	clāmōr, -ōrīs, <i>a shout, noise</i>
ōrātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a speaker</i>	venātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hunter</i>

100. The following have **ō** short in the genitive:

arbōr, arbōrīs, <i>a tree</i>	Neut. {	marmōr, marmōrīs, <i>marble</i>
mēmōr, mēmōrīs, <i>mindful</i>		aequōr, aequōrīs, <i>the sea</i>
immēmōr, immēmōrīs, <i>forgetful</i>		ādōr, ādōrīs, <i>spelt</i>

101. Mark the **Neuter** cōr, cordīs, *heart*, and its Compounds:
 concors, -dīs, *harmonious* discors, -dīs, *discordant*
[33. 34.]

102. Nouns in **ūr** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive;
 as: guttūr, guttūrīs; they are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>the throats</i>
Gen.	gut' tū rīs, <i>of the throat</i>	gut' tū rūm, <i>of the throats</i>
Dat.	gut' tū rī, <i>to the throat</i>	gut' tū rī būs, <i>to the throats</i>
Acc.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>the throats</i>
Voc.	gut' tūr, <i>O throat</i>	gut' tū rā, <i>O throats</i>
Abl.	gut' tū rē, <i>with the throat</i>	gut' tū rī būs, <i>with the throats</i>

103. These four change **ūr** into **ōrīs**, but are also **Neuter**:

ēbūr, -ōrīs, <i>ivory</i>	fēmūr, -ōrīs, <i>the thigh</i>
jēcūr, -ōrīs (jēcīnōrīs), <i>the liver</i>	rōbūr, -ōrīs, <i>strength</i>

[63. 64.]

104. There are two **Classes** of nouns in **s**:

s after a vowel: **as, es, is, os, us, aus**
s after a consonant: **ls, ns, rs; bs, ps, ms.**

105. Nouns in **ās** change **ās** into **ātīs** to form the genitive,
 as: aetās, aetātīs; ānās, *a duck*, has ānātīs; vās, *a surety*, vādīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	ae' tās, <i>an age</i>	ae' tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen.	ae' tā' tīs, <i>of an age</i>	ae' tā' tūm, <i>of ages</i>
Dat.	ae' tā' tī, <i>to an age</i>	ae' tā' tī būs, <i>to ages</i>
Acc.	ae' tā' tēm, <i>an age</i>	ae' tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Voc.	ae' tās, <i>O age</i>	ae' tā' tēs, <i>O ages</i>
Abl.	ae' tā' tē, <i>with an age</i>	ae' tā' tī būs, <i>with ages</i>

Examples for Practice:

aestās, -ātīs, <i>summer</i>	paupertās, -ātīs, <i>poverty</i>
vōluptās, -ātīs, <i>pleasure</i>	vōluntās, -ātīs, <i>the will</i>
sōciētās, -ātīs, <i>society</i>	libertās, -ātīs, <i>liberty</i>
difficultās, -ātīs, <i>difficulty</i>	vāriētās, -ātīs, <i>variety</i>
civītās, -ātīs, <i>a state</i>	sānitās, -ātīs, <i>health</i>

106. The following in ās form their genitives differently:

Nom. ās, <i>a copper</i>	Gen. assīs	Gen. Pl. assīūm
mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīs	mārīūm
ādāmās, <i>a diamond</i>	ādāmantīs	
ēlēphās, <i>an elephant</i>	ēlēphantīs	
vās, <i>a vessel</i> (Neuter)	vāsīs, Pl. vāsā, -ōrūm (2d decl.)	

107. fās, *right*; nēfās, *wrong*, are Indeclinable.

[39. 40.]

108. Nouns ending in ēs change ēs into īs to form the genitive, as: nūbēs, nūbīs (Vowel-stems). They have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive. Nouns in ēs increase in the genitive, changing ēs into ītīs, as: mīlēš, mīlītīs (Consonant-stems).

Singular.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>a soldier</i>
Gen. nū' bīs, <i>of a cloud</i>	mī' lī tīs, <i>of a soldier</i>
Dat. nū' bī, <i>to a cloud</i>	mī' lī tī, <i>to a soldier</i>
Acc. nū' bēm, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lī tēm, <i>a soldier</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>O soldier</i>
Abl. nū' bē, <i>with a cloud</i>	mī' lī tē, <i>with a soldier</i>

Plural.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Gen. nū' bī ūm, <i>of clouds</i>	mī' lī tūm, <i>of soldiers</i>
Dat. nū' bī būs, <i>to clouds</i>	mī' lī tī būs, <i>to soldiers</i>
Acc. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>O soldiers</i>
Abl. nū' bī būs, <i>with clouds</i>	mī' lī tī būs, <i>with soldiers</i>

Examples for Practice:

fāmēs, -īs, <i>hunger</i>	cōmēs, -ītīs, <i>a companion</i>
clādēs, -īs, <i>defeat</i>	mergēs, -ītīs, <i>a sheaf</i>
vulpēs, -īs, <i>a fox</i>	pēdēs, -ītīs, <i>a foot-soldier</i>
sēdēs, -īs, <i>a seat</i>	ēquēs, -ītīs, <i>a horseman</i>

109. EXCEPTIONS. The following in *ēs* and *īs* increase in the genitive in different ways (*ēt-īs*, *ēt-īs*, *ēd-īs*, *ēd-īs*, *īd-īs*, *ēr-īs*).

<i>ābīēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>the silver fir</i>	<i>pēs</i> , <i>pēdīs</i> , <i>a foot</i>
<i>ārīēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>a ram</i>	<i>quādrūpēs</i> , -ēdīs, <i>four-footed</i>
<i>pārīēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>a wall</i>	<i>compēs</i> , -ēdīs, <i>a fetter</i>
<i>interpēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>an interpreter</i>	<i>hērēs</i> , -ēdīs, <i>an heir</i>
<i>sēgēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>a crop</i>	<i>mercēs</i> , -ēdīs, <i>a reward</i>
<i>tēgēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>a covering</i>	<i>obsēs</i> , -īdīs, <i>a hostage</i>
<i>quīēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>rest</i>	<i>praesēs</i> , -īdīs, <i>a president</i>
<i>lōcūplēs</i> , -ētīs, <i>wealthy</i>	<i>Cērēs</i> , -ērīs, <i>Ceres</i> [45. 46.]

110. Mark the solitary nouns:

aes, *aerīs*, *brass* (Neuter) *praes*, *praedīs*, *surety*

111. The majority of nouns ending in *īs* have **Vowel-stems**, and form their genitive in *īs*, with an equal number of syllables. They have the nominative and genitive singular *alike*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>ā' vīs</i> , <i>a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs</i> , <i>birds</i>
Gen.	<i>ā' vīs</i> , <i>of a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī ūm</i> , <i>of birds</i>
Dat.	<i>ā' vī</i> , <i>to a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs</i> , <i>to birds</i>
Acc.	<i>ā' vēm</i> , <i>a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs</i> , <i>birds</i>
Voc.	<i>ā' vīs</i> , <i>O bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs</i> , <i>O birds</i>
Abl.	<i>ā' vē</i> , <i>with a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs</i> , <i>with birds</i>

Examples for Practice:

<i>amnīs</i> , -, <i>a river</i>	<i>felīs</i> , -, <i>a cat</i>	<i>ōvīs</i> , -, <i>a sheep</i>
<i>āpīs</i> , -, <i>a bee</i>	<i>finīs</i> , -, <i>an end</i>	<i>pānīs</i> , -, <i>bread</i>
<i>aurīs</i> , -, <i>the ear</i>	<i>hostīs</i> , -, <i>an enemy</i>	<i>piscīs</i> , -, <i>a fish</i>
<i>cānīs</i> , -, <i>a dog</i>	<i>ignīs</i> , -, <i>fire</i>	<i>tīgrīs</i> , -, <i>a tiger</i>
<i>civīs</i> , -, <i>a citizen</i>	<i>mensīs</i> , -, <i>a month</i>	<i>vallis</i> , -, <i>a valley</i>
<i>classīs</i> , -, <i>a fleet</i>	<i>nātālīs</i> , -, <i>a birthday</i>	<i>vermīs</i> , -, <i>a worm</i>
<i>collīs</i> , -, <i>a hill</i>	<i>nāvīs</i> , -, <i>a ship</i>	<i>vestīs</i> , -, <i>a dress</i>

112. Others in *īs* and *īs* have **Consonant-stems** increasing in the genitive in different ways (*īd-īs*, *īt-īs*, *ēr-īs*, *īr-īs*, *īn-īs*).

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>lā' pīs</i> , <i>a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs</i> , <i>stones</i>
Gen.	<i>lā' pī dīs</i> , <i>of a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dūm</i> , <i>of stones</i>
Dat.	<i>lā' pī dī</i> , <i>to a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs</i> , <i>to stones</i>
Acc.	<i>lā' pī dēm</i> , <i>a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs</i> , <i>stones</i>
Voc.	<i>lā' pīs</i> , <i>O stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs</i> , <i>O stones</i>
Abl.	<i>lā' pī dē</i> , <i>with a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs</i> , <i>with stones</i>

To this class belong:

cassīs, cassīdīs, *a helmet*
lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *a stone*
cinīs, cinērīs, *ashes*
pulvīs, pulvērīs, *dust*
cuspīs, cuspidīs, *a spear*
vōmīs, vōmērīs, *a plowshare*

līs, litīs, *a quarrel*
sanguīs, sanguīnīs, *blood*
glīs, glīrīs, *a dormouse*
Samnīs, Samnitīs, *a Samnite*
týrannīs, týrannīdīs, *tyranny*

113. exsanguīs, -ē, *bloodless*, though a compound of sangūīs, has in the genitive exsangūīs (*parisyllabic*).

114. Mark the special paradigm of vīs, *force*:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	vīs, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs, <i>forces</i>
Gen.	—	vī' rī ūm, <i>of forces</i>
Dat.	—	vī' rī būs, <i>to forces</i>
Acc.	vīm, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs, <i>forces</i>
Voc.	vīs, <i>O force</i>	vī' rēs, <i>O forces</i>
Abl.	vī, <i>by force</i>	vī' rī būs, <i>with forces</i> [41 - 44.]

115. Some Nouns in ōs form their genitive by changing ōs into ōrīs, others by changing ōs into ōtīs. Thus, we have:

ōs, ōrīs	ōs, ōtīs
fīōs, -ōrīs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, -ōtīs, <i>a dowry</i>
mōs, -ōrīs, <i>custom</i>	cōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grindstone</i>
rōs, -ōrīs, <i>dew</i>	nēpōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grandchild</i>
lēpōs, -ōrīs, <i>charm, wit</i>	rhīnōcērōs, -ōtīs, <i>a rhinoceros</i>
ōs, ōrīs, <i>the mouth (Neuter)</i>	sācerdōs, -ōtīs, <i>a priest</i>

Singular.

Nom.	fīōs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, <i>a dowry</i>
Gen.	fīō' rīs, <i>of a flower</i>	dō' tīs, <i>of a dowry</i>
Dat.	fīō' rī, <i>to a flower</i>	dō' tī, <i>to a dowry</i>
Acc.	fīō' rēm, <i>a flower</i>	dō' tēm, <i>a dowry</i>
Voc.	fīōs, <i>O flower</i>	dōs, <i>O dowry</i>
Abl.	fīō' rē, <i>with a flower</i>	dō' tē, <i>with a dowry</i>

Plural.

Nom.	fīō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Gen.	fīō' rūm, <i>of flowers</i>	dō' tūm, <i>of dowries</i>
Dat.	fīō' rī būs, <i>to flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>to dowries</i>
Acc.	fīō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Voc.	fīō' rēs, <i>O flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>O dowries</i>
Abl.	fīō' rī būs, <i>with flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>with dowries</i>

116.

Peculiar:

custōs, custōdīs, *a keeper*
ōs, ossīs, *a bone (Neuter);*
Gen. Plur. ossiūm

compōs, compōtīs, *capable*
bōs, bōvīs, *an ox; Plur. N. bōvēs;*
G. bōtīm; D. bōbūs or bābūs

117. A few masculine Greek nouns in ōs have ōīs, as:

hērōs, -ōīs, *a hero*

Trōs, -ōīs, *a Trojan* [35. 36.]

118. Of **Feminine Nouns** in ūs, some change ūs into ūtīs, others into ūdīs to form the genitive; as: virtūs, virtūtīs; pālūs, pālūdīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. vir' tūs, *virtue*
Gen. vir tū' tīs, *of virtue*
Dat. vir tū' tī, *to virtue*
Acc. vir tū' tēm, *virtue*
Voc. vir' tūs, *O virtue*
Abl. vir tū' tē, *with virtue*

vir tū' tēs, *virtues*
vir tū' tūm, *of virtues*
vir tū' tī būs, *to virtues*
vir tū' tēs, *virtues*
vir tū' tēs, *O virtues*
vir tū' tī būs, *with virtues*

sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety, welfare*
servītūs, -ūtīs, *slavery*
jūventūs, -ūtīs, *youth*

sēnectūs, -ūtīs, *old age*
pālūs, -ūdīs, *a marsh*
incūs, -ūdīs, *an anvil*

119. tellūs, *earth*, has tellūrīs, pēcūs, *a head of cattle, an animal*, pēcūdīs, and Vēnūs, *the goddess Venus*, Vēnērīs.

120. Notice the following names of animals in us:

mūs, mūrīs, *a mouse; Gen. Plur.*
mūrīūm
lēpūs, lēpōrīs, *a hare*

grūs, grūs, *a crane*
sūs, sūs, *a swine; Dat. Plur.*
sūbūs (instead of sūibūs)

[51. 52.]

121. Of **Neuter Nouns** in ūs of two or more syllables, some change ūs into ōrīs to form the genitive, as: corpūs, corpōrīs; others change ūs into ěrīs, as: ōpūs, ōpērīs. All monosyllables, with long ū, form their genitive in ūrīs, as: jūs, jūrīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. cor' pūs, *a body*
Gen. cor' pō rīs, *of a body*
Dat. cor' pō rī, *to a body*
Acc. cor' pūs, *a body*
Voc. cor' pūs, *O body*
Abl. cor' pō rē, *with a body*

cor' pō rā, *bodies*
cor' pō rūm, *of bodies*
cor' pō' rī būs, *to bodies*
cor' pō rā, *bodies*
cor' pō rā, *O bodies*
cor' pō' rī būs, *with bodies*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>works</i>
Gen.	ō' pē rīs, <i>of a work</i>	ō' pē rūm, <i>of works</i>
Dat.	ō' pē rī, <i>to a work</i>	ō' pē' rī būs, <i>to works</i>
Acc.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>works</i>
Voc.	ō' pūs, <i>O work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>O works</i>
Abl.	ō' pē rē, <i>with a work</i>	ō' pē' rī būs, <i>with works</i>
Nom.	jūs, <i>right, law</i>	jū' rā, <i>rights</i>
Gen.	jū' rīs, <i>of right</i>	jū' rūm, <i>of rights</i>
Dat.	jū' rī, <i>to right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>to rights</i>
Acc.	jūs, <i>right</i>	jū' rā, <i>rights</i>
Voc.	jūs, <i>O right</i>	jū' rā, <i>O rights</i>
Abl.	jū' rē, <i>with right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>with rights</i>

Examples for Practice:

frīgūs, -ōrīs, <i>cold</i>	mūnūs, -ērīs, <i>an office, gift</i>
tempūs, -ōrīs, <i>a time</i>	gēnūs, -ērīs, <i>a kind, race</i>
litūs, -ōrīs, <i>a shore</i>	ōnūs, -ērīs, <i>a burden</i>
dēcūs, -ōrīs, <i>an ornament</i>	sīdūs, -ērīs, <i>a star, constella-</i>
nēmūs, -ōrīs, <i>a grove</i>	scēlūs, -ērīs, <i>a crime</i> [tion
pectūs, -ōrīs, <i>the breast</i>	crūs, -ūrīs, <i>the leg</i>
vulnūs, -ērīs, <i>a wound</i>	rūs, -ūrīs, <i>the country</i>

[61. 62.]

122. The following Greek nouns in **us** (Masculine and Feminine) deserve special notice:

Trápēzūs, -untīs, <i>Trebizond</i>	Oedīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>Oedipus</i>
tripūs, -ōdīs, <i>a tripod</i>	pōlypūs, -ī, <i>a polyp</i> (2d decl.)

123. The only two nouns in **aus** are *laus, laudīs, praise*, and *fraus, fraudīs, fraud*; *fraus* has *fraudūm* or *fraudīum* in the genitive plural. [51.]

124. Nouns ending in **bs, ps, and ms** change *s* final into **īs** to form the genitive; as: *urbs, urbīs*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	urbs, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Gen.	ur' bīs, <i>of a city</i>	ur' bī ūm <i>of cities</i>
Dat.	ur' bī, <i>to a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>to cities</i>
Acc.	ur' bēm, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Voc.	urbs, <i>O city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>O cities</i>
Abl.	ur' bē, <i>with a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>with cities</i>

Examples for Practice:

plebs, plēbīs, <i>the populace</i>	stirps, stirpīs, <i>a stem</i>
trabs, trābīs, <i>a beam</i>	hiems, hiēmīs, <i>winter</i>

125. A few are subject to a variation of the radical vowel:

ādeps, ādīpīs, <i>lard</i>	auceps, aucīpīs, <i>a fowler</i>
caelebs, caelībīs, <i>unmarried</i>	

126. Compounds in **ceps** from **cāplō** have **cīpīs**, as:

princeps, -cīpīs, <i>a chief</i>	particeps, -cīpīs, <i>sharing</i>
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpūt** have **cīpītīs**, as:

anceps, -cīpītīs, <i>double</i>	praeceps, -cīpītīs, <i>steep</i>
---------------------------------	----------------------------------

127. All nouns ending in **is**, **rs**, and **ns** change **s** final into **tīs** to form the genitive; as: pars, partīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	pars, <i>a part, side</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Gen.	par' tīs, <i>of a part</i>	par' tī ūm, <i>of parts</i>
Dat.	par' tī, <i>to a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>to parts</i>
Acc.	par' tēm, <i>a part</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Voc.	pars, <i>O part</i>	par' tēs, <i>O parts</i>
Abl.	par' tē, <i>with a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>with parts</i>

Examples for Practice:

mors, -tīs, <i>death</i>	gens, -tīs, <i>a tribe, people</i>
infans, -tīs, <i>a babe, child</i>	frons, -tīs, <i>the forehead, brow</i>
ars, -tīs, <i>art</i>	pārens, -tīs, <i>a parent</i>

128. Only three have **dīs** in the genitive, namely:

frons, -dīs, *foliage*; glans, -dīs, *an acorn*; juglans, -dīs, *a walnut*
[47. 48.]

129. There is only one noun in **t** (Neuter):

cāpūt, cāpītīs, *the head*, and its Compounds. [63.]

130. Nouns in **x** form their genitive by resolving **x** into **cs** or **gs** and changing final **s** into **īs**, as: dux (= ducs), dūcīs; rex (= regs), rēgīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	dux, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Gen.	dū' cīs, <i>of a leader</i>	dū' cūm, <i>of leaders</i>
Dat.	dū' cī, <i>to a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>to leaders</i>
Acc.	dū' cēm, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Voc.	dūx, <i>O leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>O leaders</i>
Abl.	dū' cē, <i>with a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>with leaders</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rex, <i>a king</i>	rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Gen.	rē' gīs, <i>of a king</i>	rē' gūm, <i>of kings</i>
Dat.	rē' gī, <i>to a king</i>	rē' gī būs, <i>to kings</i>
Acc.	rē' gēm, <i>a king</i>	rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Voc.	rex, <i>O king</i>	rē' gēs, <i>O kings</i>
Abl.	rē' gē, <i>with a king</i>	rē' gī būs, <i>with kings</i>

131. Nouns in **x** with preceding consonant change **x** into **cīs**:

falx, -cīs, <i>a sickle</i>	arx, -cīs, <i>a citadel</i>
merx, -cīs, <i>merchandise</i>	lanx, -cīs, <i>a dish</i>

132. Nouns in **ax** have **ācīs**, as: pax, pācīs, *peace*.

EXCEPTION: fax, fācīs, *a torch*.

133. Nouns in **ex** have commonly **īcīs**, as:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	jū' dex, <i>a judge</i>	jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Gen.	jū' dī cīs, <i>of a judge</i>	jū' dī cūm, <i>of judges</i>
Dat.	jū' dī cī, <i>to a judge</i>	jū' dī cī būs, <i>to judges</i>
Acc.	jū' dī cēm, <i>a judge</i>	jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Voc.	jū' dex, <i>O judge</i>	jū' dī cēs, <i>O judges</i>
Abl.	jū' dī cē, <i>with a judge</i>	jū' dī cī būs, <i>with judges</i>

EXCEPTIONS:

lex, lēgīs, <i>a law</i>	rēmex, rēmīgīs, <i>a rower</i>
rex, rēgīs, <i>a king</i>	sēnex, sēnīs, <i>an old man</i>
grex, grēgīs, <i>a flock</i>	sūpellex, sūpellectīlīs, <i>furniture</i>
nex, nēcīs, <i>murder</i>	vervex, vervēcīs, <i>a wether</i>
faex, faecīs, <i>lees</i>	

134. Nouns in **ix** have **īcīs**, and less frequently **īcīs**, as:

cicātrix, -īcīs, <i>a wound</i>	pix, -īcīs, <i>pitch</i>
cornix, -īcīs, <i>a crow</i>	cālix, -īcīs, <i>a cup</i>
rādix, -īcīs, <i>a root</i>	fornix, -īcīs, <i>an arch</i>
nūtrix, -īcīs, <i>a nurse</i>	appendix, -īcīs, <i>an appendix</i>

But nix, *snow*, has nīvīs.

135. Nouns in **ox** have **ōcīs**, as: vox, vōcīs, *a voice*.

EXCEPTIONS:

praecox, praecōcīs, *premature* nox, noctīs, *night*
and a few national names in **ox**, as:

Cappādox, -ōcīs, *a Cappadocian*
Allōbrox, -ōgīs, *one of the Allobroges*.

136. Nouns in **ux** have **ŭcĭs**, as: **dux**, **dŭcĭs**, a leader.

EXCEPTIONS:

lux , lŭcĭs , <i>light</i>	conjug , conjŭgĭs , <i>a spouse</i>
Pollux , Pollŭcĭs , <i>Pollux</i>	frux , frŭgĭs , <i>fruit</i>
faux , faucĭs , <i>the throat</i>	

[49. 50.]

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

137. Certain adjectives of the **Third Declension** have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender — others two, the masculine and feminine being the same — others but one, the same for all genders.

138. Adjectives of three terminations end in **ēr**, **ĭs**, **ĕ**, and are declined like **pătēr**, **āvĭs**, **mārĕ**, respectively. All drop the **ē** before **r** in declension, except **cĕlēr**, **cĕlērĭs**, **cĕlĕrĕ**, *swift*, which retains it.

ācēr, **ācĕrĭs**, **ācĕrĕ**, *sharp, keen*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ā' cĕr	ā' crĭs	ā' crĕ
Gen.	ā' crĭs	ā' crĭs	ā' crĭs
Dat.	ā' crĭ	ā' crĭ	ā' crĭ
Acc.	ā' crēm	ā' crēm	ā' crĕ
Voc.	ā' cĕr	ā' crĭs	ā' crĕ
Abl.	ā' crĭ	ā' crĭ	ā' crĭ

Plural.

Nom.	ā' crēs	ā' crēs	ā' crĭ ā
Gen.	ā' crĭ ūm	ā' crĭ ūm	ā' crĭ ūm
Dat.	ā' crĭ būs	ā' crĭ būs	ā' crĭ būs
Acc.	ā' crēs	ā' crēs	ā' crĭ ā
Voc.	ā' crēs	ā' crēs	ā' crĭ ā
Abl.	ā' crĭ būs	ā' crĭ būs	ā' crĭ būs

Examples for Practice:

terrestĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>terrestrial</i>	silvestĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>woody</i>
pālustĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>marshy</i>	campestĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>level</i>
cĕlēbĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>famous</i>	ēquestĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>equestrian</i>
ālācĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>lively</i>	sālŭbĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>healthy</i>
pŭtĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>putrid</i>	vŏlŭcĕr , -rĭs , -rĕ , <i>winged</i>

139. Adjectives of two terminations end in *īs*, *ēs*, and *ōr*, *ūs* (Comparatives), and are thus declined:

tristīs, tristēs, sad			
Singular.		Plural.	
	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	
Nom.	tri' stīs	tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Gen.	tri' stīs	tri' stīs	tri' stī ūm
Dat.	tri' stī	tri' stī	tri' stī būs
Acc.	tri' stēm	tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Voc.	tri' stīs	tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Abl.	tri' stī	tri' stī	tri' stī būs

Examples for Practice:

sūāvīs, —ē, pleasant	instābīlīs, —ē, unsteady	omnīs, —ē, all, every
dulcīs, —ē, sweet	hūmīlīs, —ē, low	sīmīlīs, —ē, like
brēvīs, —ē, short	mortālīs, —ē, mortal	fācīlīs, —ē, easy

[55. 56.]

dūriōr, dūriūs, harder			
Singular.		Plural.	
	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	
Nom.	dū' rī ōr	dū' rī ūs	dū' rī ō' rēs
Gen.	dū' rī ō' rīs	dū' rī ō' rīs	dū' rī ō' rūm
Dat.	dū' rī ō' rī	dū' rī ō' rī	dū' rī ō' rī būs
Acc.	dū' rī ō' rēm	dū' rī ūs	dū' rī ō' rēs
Voc.	dū' rī ōr	dū' rī ūs	dū' rī ō' rēs
Abl.	dū' rī ō' rē	dū' rī ō' rē	dū' rī ō' rī būs

Examples for Practice:

excelsiōr, —ūs, higher	ācriōr, —ūs, sharper	mēliōr, —ūs, better
liberiōr, —ūs, freer	lēviōr, —ūs, lighter	cāriōr, —ūs, dearer
pulchriōr, —ūs, finer	fēliciōr, —ūs, happier	hēbētiōr, —ūs, duller

[73. 74.]

140. As a rule, adjectives in *ōr*, *īs*, *ēs*, and *īs*, *ēs* form their ablative singular in *ī*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter in *īā*, and the genitive plural in *īūm*; *cēlēr*, *swift*, has *cēlērūm*.

141. Adjectives of one termination have the same forms in all genders, except that in the accusative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine. They end in *l*, *r*, *s*, *x*, and are declined like substantives of the Third Declension.

fēlix, happy, fortunate

prūdēns, prudent, sensible

Singular.

<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom. fē' līx	fē' līx	prū' dens	prū' dens
Gen. fē lī' cīs		prū den' tīs	
Dat. fē lī' cī		prū den' tī	
Acc. fē lī' cēm	fē' līx	prū den' tēm	prū' dens
Voc. fē' līx		prū' dens	
Abl. fē lī' cī		prū den' tī	

Plural.

Nom. fē lī' cēs	fē lī' cī ā	prū den' tēs	prū den' tī ā
Gen. fē lī' cī ūm		prū den' tī ūm	
Dat. fē lī' cī būs		prū den' tī būs	
Acc. fē lī' cēs	fē lī' cī ā	prū den' tēs	prū den' tī ā
Voc. fē lī' cēs	fē lī' cī ā	prū den' tēs	prū den' tī ā
Abl. fē lī' cī būs		prū den' tī būs	

Examples for Practice:

mendax, -ācīs, lying

sāpiēns, -tīs, wise

lōquax, -ācīs, loquacious

pātēns, -tīs, open

rāpax, -ācīs, rapacious

diligēns, -tīs, diligent

vēlox, -ōcīs, swift

clēmēns, -tīs, mild

[57. 58.]

142. As a rule, adjectives of one termination have **ī** in the ablative singular, but to this there are many exceptions. The neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural ends in **īā**, and the genitive in **īūm** (see 144—147).

Remarks on Certain Cases.

Accusative Singular.

143. The **Accusative** in **īm** is found *exclusively*:

1. in Greek nouns in **īs**, as: *bāsīs, a base, bāsīm*;
2. in names of rivers and towns in **īs**, as: *Tībērīs, the Tiber, Tībērīm*; *Nēāpōlīs, Naples, Nēāpōlīm*;
3. in *āmussīs, a mason's rule, āmussīm*; *rāvīs, hoarseness, rāvīm*; *sītīs, thirst, sītīm*; *tussīs, a cough, tussīm*; *vis, force, vīm*; and is regarded as *preferable*:
4. in *fēbrīs, a fever, fēbrīm (fēbrēm)*; *pelvīs, a basin, pelvīm (pelvēm)*; *puppīs, the stern, puppīm (puppēm)*; *restīs, a rope, restīm (restēm)*; *turrīs, a tower, turrīm (turrēm)*; *sēcūrīs, an axe, sēcūrīm (sēcūrēm)*.

Ablative Singular.

144. The Ablative in **ī** is found *exclusively*:

1. in all nouns which have or *may* have the accusative in **īm**, and in **clāvis**, *a key*, Abl. **clāvī**; **nāvis**, *a ship*, Abl. **nāvī**; **imbēr**, *a shower*, Abl. **imbrī**; **occipūt**, *the back part of the head*, Abl. **occipitī**;

2. in neuter nouns in **ē**, and those in **āl** and **ār** which have **ā** long in the genitive; also in **pār**, **pāris**, *a pair*, Abl. **pārī**;

3. in those Substantives in **īs** and **ēr** which are originally Adjectives, as: **fāmilliāris**, *a friend*, Abl. **fāmilliārī**; also in the names of the months, as: **Septembēr**, *September*, Abl. **Septembrī**; but **jūvēnis**, *a youth*, **aedīlis**, *an aedile*, have ablative in **ē**, **jūvēnē**, **aedilē**.

4. In all Adjectives of the Third Declension, including Participial Adjectives in **ans** and **ens**; but to this, there are many exceptions:

paupēr, <i>poor</i>	Abl. paupērē	caelebs, <i>single</i>	Abl. caelībē
dēsēs, <i>indolent</i>	“ dēsīdē	dīvēs, <i>rich</i>	“ dīvītē
pūbēr, <i>adult</i>	“ pūbērē	vētūs, <i>old</i>	“ vētērē
sospēs, <i>safe</i>	“ sospītē	princeps, <i>first</i>	“ princīpē
compōs, <i>possessed of</i>	“ compōtē	particeps, <i>sharing</i>	“ partīcīpē
	superstēs, <i>surviving</i>	Abl. superstītē	

All Comparatives, as: **altīōr**, *higher*, Abl. **altīōrē**;

Participles, when used as such or as Substantives, as: **sāpiens**, *a wise man*, Abl. **sāpiētē**; but **vīr sāpiens** has ablative **vīrō sāpiētī**;

Adjectives used as proper names, as: **Jūvēnālis**, *Juvenal*, Abl. **Jūvēnālē**. [59. 60.]

Nominative Plural.

145. Such Neuters of Nouns, Adjectives and Participles as have **ī** in the Ablative singular form their Nominative Plural in **īā** instead of **ā**.

Of Adjectives having **ē** in the ablative singular, only **vētūs** has a neuter of the plural, **vētērā**. Of Comparatives, **complūrēs**, *several*, has **complūrā** and **complūrīā**.

Genitive Plural.

146. The Genitive Plural in **īŭm** is found:

1. in all nouns having **ī** in the ablative singular (see above 144.);

2. in all nouns in **ēr**, **īs**, and **ēs** having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (*parisyllabic*), and in all pure Latin words in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant, except the following which retain **ūm** in the genitive plural:

	Gen. Plural.		Gen. Plural.
<i>vātēs, a prophet</i>	<i>vātūm</i>	<i>pātēr, a father</i>	<i>pātrūm</i>
<i>strūēs, a heap</i>	<i>strūūm</i>	<i>mātēr, a mother</i>	<i>mātrūm</i>
<i>sēdēs, a seat</i>	<i>sēdūm</i>	<i>frātēr, a brother</i>	<i>frātrūm</i>
<i>cānīs, a dog</i>	<i>cānūm</i>	<i>accipitēr, a hawk</i>	<i>accipitrūm</i>
<i>pānīs, bread</i>	<i>pānūm</i>	<i>ādeps, fat</i>	<i>ādipūm</i>
<i>jūvēnīs, a youth</i>	<i>jūvēnūm</i>	<i>(ops), help</i>	<i>ōpūm</i>
<i>vōlūcrīs, a bird</i>	<i>vōlūcrūm</i>	<i>hiēms, winter</i>	<i>hiēmūm</i>

3. in the following words:

<i>mās, a male</i>	<i>mārīūm</i>	<i>nox, the night</i>	<i>noctīūm</i>
<i>mūs, a mouse</i>	<i>mūrīūm</i>	<i>jūs, right</i>	<i>jūrīūm</i>
<i>glīs, a dormouse</i>	<i>glirīūm</i>	<i>nix, snow</i>	<i>nivīūm</i>
<i>lis, a quarrel</i>	<i>litīūm</i>	<i>ōs, a bone</i>	<i>ossīūm</i>
<i>vīs, force</i>	<i>virīūm</i>	<i>ās, an as (Roman coin)</i>	<i>assīūm</i>
<i>cārō, flesh</i>	<i>carnīūm</i>	<i>(faux), the throat</i>	<i>faucīūm</i>

4. in names of nations in **ās**, **-ātīs**; **īs**, **-ītīs**, as:

<i>Arpīnās, an Arpinian</i>	Gen. Plural.	<i>Arpīnātīūm</i>
<i>Samnīs, a Samnite</i>	" "	<i>Samnitīūm</i>

and likewise in:

<i>pēnātēs, penates</i>	" "	<i>pēnātīūm</i>
<i>optīmātēs, the aristocrats</i>	" "	<i>optīmātīūm</i>
<i>nostrās, our countryman</i>	" "	<i>nostrātīūm</i>
<i>vestrās, your countryman</i>	" "	<i>vestrātīūm</i>

147. Of Adjectives having **ī** in the ablative singular, the following have **ūm** in the Genitive plural:

<i>ūbēr, -īs, fertile</i>	Abl. Sing.	<i>ūbērī</i>	Gen. Pl.	<i>ūbērūm</i>
<i>mēmōr, -īs, mindful</i>	"	<i>mēmōrī</i>	"	<i>mēmōrūm</i>
<i>immēmōr, -īs, unmindful</i>	"	<i>immēmōrī</i>	"	<i>immēmōrūm</i>
<i>cīcūr, -īs, tame</i>	"	<i>cīcūrī</i>	"	<i>cīcūrūm</i>
<i>vīgīl, -īs, watchful</i>	"	<i>vīgīlī</i>	"	<i>vīgīlūm</i>

[103. 104.]

Accusative Plural.

148. The Accusative Plural in **īs** occurs side by side with **ēs** in all nouns which have **īūm** in the genitive plural, as: *navēs* and *nāvīs*; and seems preferable in nouns in **ēr** which have **ī** in the ablative, as: *imbrīs* and *imbrēs*.

Dative and Ablative Plural.

149. In the Dative and Ablative Plural, Neuters in *mā* have commonly *is* instead of *ibūs*; thus: *pōemātīs*, instead of *pōemātibūs*. See 83.

Greek Nouns.

150. Most Greek Nouns of the Third Declension are entirely regular; a few, however, retain certain peculiarities of the Greek.

151. Proper Names in *ης* of the first Greek Declension often follow the third in Latin, as: *Xerxēs*, *-īs*.

152. Several feminine nouns in *ō* have Genitive sing. *tis*, all the other cases ending in *ō*, as: *ēchō*, Gen. *ēchūs*, Dat. *ēchō*, *an echo*.

153. Many Greek nouns have Genitive *ōs*, as: *lampās*, *lampādōs*, *a lamp*— and Accusative *ā*, as: *Sālāmīs*, Acc. *Sālāminā*, *Salamis*; *āēr*, Acc. *āērā*, *air*; *aethēr*, Acc. *aethērā*, *ether*.

154. The Vocative sing. drops *s* in nouns in *ēus*, *īs*, *ys*, and *ās* (*antis*), as: *Daphnīs*, Voc. *Daphnī*, *Daphnis*; *Orphēus*, Voc. *Orphēu*, *Orpheus*; *Atlās*, Voc. *Atlā*, *Atlas*.

155. A few Neuters in *ōs*, as: *mēlōs*, *a song*; *pēlāgōs*, *the sea*, have *ē* in the plural: *mēlē*, *pēlāgē*.

156. The ending *ōn* occurs in the Genitive plur. of a few titles of books, as: *Mētāmorphōsēs*, *-ēōn*.

157. Many Greek nouns have Plural Nom. *ēs*, as: *lampās*, *lampādēs*— and Accus. *ās*, as: *Ārabs*, *Ārābās*, *Arabian*; *Cyclops*, *Cyclōpās*, *a Cyclops*.

Gender in Third Declension.

Nouns whose gender is determined by their meaning (see 40–42.) are not included in the following rules.

I. MASCULINES.

158. Nouns of the Third Declension in *ō*, *ōr*, *ōs*, *ōr*, and *ēs* or *ēs* increasing in the Genitive:

hīc sermō, *this speech*
hīc aggēr, *this mound*
hīc cōlōr, *this color*

hīc mōs, *this custom*
hīc pēs, *this foot* (gen. *pēdis*)
hīc caespēs, *this sod* (gen. *caespītis*)

159.

EXCEPTIONS in ō.

Feminine:

1. Nouns in **dō** and **gō**, as: *hīrundō*, a swallow; *ōrigō*, origin; &c. Only the following in **dō** and **gō** are **Masculine**:

<i>ordō</i> , -īnīs, order	<i>līgō</i> , -ōnīs, a mattock
<i>cardō</i> , -īnīs, the hinge (of a door)	<i>harpāgō</i> , -ōnīs, a grapple-hook
	<i>margō</i> , -īnīs, a margin

2. Abstract nouns in **īō**, as: *ōpiniō*, -ōnīs, an opinion; *actiō*, -ōnīs, a deed; *ōrātiō*, -ōnīs, speech; *venātiō*, -ōnīs, hunting; &c. The following (concrete) nouns in **īō** are **Masculine**:

<i>septentrīō</i> , -ōnīs, the north	<i>pāpiliō</i> , -ōnīs, a butterfly
<i>scorpiō</i> , -ōnīs, a scorpion	<i>pūgiō</i> , -ōnīs, a dagger
<i>vespertiliō</i> , -ōnīs, a bat	<i>scīpiō</i> , -ōnīs, a staff
<i>tītīō</i> , -ōnīs, a firebrand	<i>ūniō</i> , -ōnīs, a pearl

3. <i>cārō</i> , carnīs, flesh	<i>ēchō</i> , -ūs, an echo
--------------------------------	----------------------------

160.

EXCEPTIONS in ōr.

Neuter.

<i>marmōr</i> , <i>marmōrīs</i> , marble	<i>ādōr</i> , <i>ādōrīs</i> , spelt
<i>aequōr</i> , <i>aequōrīs</i> , the sea	<i>cōr</i> , <i>cordīs</i> , the heart

Feminine.

arbōr, *arbōrīs*, a tree

161.

EXCEPTIONS in ōs, ōs.

Feminine.

<i>cōs</i> , <i>cōtīs</i> , a whetstone	<i>dōs</i> , <i>dōtīs</i> , a dowry
---	-------------------------------------

Neuter.

<i>ōs</i> , <i>ōrīs</i> , the mouth	<i>ōs</i> , <i>ossīs</i> , a bone
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

162.

EXCEPTIONS in ēr, ēr.

Neuter.

<i>cādāvēr</i> , -īs, a corpse	<i>spīnthēr</i> , -īs, a bracelet
<i>pīpēr</i> , -īs, pepper	<i>tūbēr</i> , -īs, a hump
<i>cicēr</i> , -īs, a chick-pea	<i>ūbēr</i> , -īs, a teat
<i>ītēr</i> , <i>itinērīs</i> , a journey	<i>vēr</i> , -īs, spring
<i>pāpāvēr</i> , -īs, the poppy	<i>(verbēr, -īs)</i> , a blow

Common.

lūtēr, -rīs, a boat

163. EXCEPTIONS in ēs, ēs imparisyllabic.

Neuter.

aes, aeris, *copper*

Feminine.

mergēs, -ītis, *a sheaf*

sēgēs, -ētis, *a crop*

tēgēs, -ētis, *a covering*

mercēs, -ēdis, *a reward*

quiēs, -ētis

rēquiēs, -ētis } *rest*

inquiēs, -ētis, *restlessness*

compēs, -ēdis, *a fetter*

Common.

ālēs, -ītis, *a bird*

quādrūpēs, -ēdis, *a quadruped*

II. FEMININES.

164. Nouns of the Third Declension in **ās, is, aus, x, ēs** not increasing in the Genitive, and in **s** preceded by a consonant:

haec tempestās, *this storm*

haec auris, *this ear*

haec laus, *this praise*

haec rādis, *this root*

haec nūbēs, *this cloud*

haec hīems, *this winter.*

165. EXCEPTIONS in ās, ās.

Masculine.

ās, assis, *an as (coin)*

vās, vādīs, *a surety*

ēlēphās, -antis, *an elephant*

ādāmās, -antis, *a diamond*

Neuter.

vās, vāsīs, *a vessel*; plur. vāsā, -ōrūm (2d decl.)

Indeclinable.

fās, *right*

nēfās, *wrong*

166. EXCEPTIONS in is, is.

Masculine.

1. All nouns in **nīs**, as: ignīs, *fire*; amnīs, *a river*; &c.

2. Also the following:

axis, -, *an axis*

collis, -, *a hill*

orbis, -, *a circle*

angūis, -, *a serpent*

fascis, -, *a bundle*

postis, -, *a post*

torquis, -, *a collar*

sangūis, -inis, *blood*

pulvis, -eris, *dust*

lāpis, -idis, *a stone*

vermis, -, *a worm*

mensis, -, *a month*

piscis, -, *a fish*

unguis, -, *a claw*

fustis, -, *a club*

ensis, -, *a sword*

Feminine.

jūventūs, -ūtīs, *youth*
 sēnectūs, -ūtīs, *old age*
 virtūs, -ūtīs, *virtue*
 servitūs, -ūtīs, *slavery*
 sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety*
 sūs, sūīs, *a swine*

incūs, -ūdīs, *an anvil*
 pālūs, -ūdīs, *a marsh*
 pēcūs, -ūdīs, *a head of cattle*
 tellūs, -ūrīs, *the earth*
 grūs, grūīs, *a crane*

Fourth Declension.

171. Latin nouns whose genitive ends in **ūs**, are of the **Fourth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fourth Declension* ends in **ū**. Masculine and Feminine nouns end in the Nominative in **ūs**; Neuters in **ū**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	fruc' tūs, <i>fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>
Gen.	fruc' tūs, <i>of fruit</i>	fruc' tū ūm, <i>of fruits</i>
Dat.	fruc' tū ī, <i>to fruit</i>	fruc' tī būs, <i>to fruits</i>
Acc.	fruc' tūm, <i>fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>
Voc.	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruits</i>
Abl.	fruc' tū, <i>with fruit</i>	fruc' tī būs, <i>with fruits</i>
Nom.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>
Gen.	cor' nūs, <i>of a horn</i>	cor' nū ūm, <i>of horns</i>
Dat.	cor' nū (tū), <i>to a horn</i>	cor' nī būs, <i>to horns</i>
Acc.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>
Voc.	cor' nū, <i>O horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>O horns</i>
Abl.	cor' nū, <i>with a horn</i>	cor' nī būs, <i>with horns</i>

Examples for Practice:

sensūs, -ūs, <i>sense</i>	olfactūs, -ūs, <i>smell</i>	obītūs, -ūs, <i>death</i>
visūs, -ūs, <i>sight</i>	mōtūs, -ūs, <i>motion</i>	nūtūs, -ūs, <i>a nod</i>
gustūs, -ūs, <i>taste</i>	fluctūs, -ūs, <i>a flood</i>	gēlū, -ūs, <i>(icy) cold</i>
tactūs, -ūs, <i>touch</i>	cantūs, -ūs, <i>a song</i>	gēnū, -ūs, <i>the knee</i>

172. The following have the **Dative** and **Ablative** plural in **ūbūs**:

ācūs, ācūbūs, <i>a needle</i>	artūs, artūbūs, <i>a joint</i>
arcūs, arcūbūs, <i>a bow</i>	partūs, partūbūs, <i>birth</i>
lācūs, lācūbūs, <i>a lake</i>	portūs, portūbūs, <i>a harbor</i>
pēcū, pēcūbūs, <i>cattle</i>	tribūs, tribūbūs, <i>a tribe</i>
quercūs, quercūbūs, <i>an oak</i>	vērū, vērūbūs, <i>a spit</i>
spēcūs, spēcūbūs, <i>a cave</i>	

173. *dōmūs, a house*, is declined thus:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dō' mūs, <i>a house</i>	dō' mūs, <i>houses</i>
Gen.	{ dō' mūs, <i>of a house</i> dō' mī, <i>at home</i>	{ dō' mū ūm, } <i>of houses</i> dō mō' rūm, }
Dat.	dō' mū ī, <i>to a house</i>	dō' mī būs, <i>to houses</i>
Acc.	dō' mūm, <i>a house, home</i>	dō' mūs & dō' mōs, <i>houses</i>
Voc.	dō' mūs, <i>O house</i>	dō' mūs, <i>O houses</i>
Abl.	dō' mō, <i>with a house, from home</i>	dō' mī būs, <i>with houses</i>

Rule of Gender.

174. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in ūs are masculine. The few words in ū are all neuter.

175.

EXCEPTIONS.

Feminine.

ācūs, -ūs, *a needle*

dōmūs, -ūs, *a house*

Idūs, -ūm (pl.), *the Ides*

mānūs, -ūs, *the hand*

porticūs, -ūs, *a gallery*

tribūs, -ūs, *a tribe*

[67. 68. 105. 106.]

Fifth Declension.

176. Nouns which have ēī or ēī in the genitive from ēs in the nominative are of the **Fifth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fifth Declension* ends in e, which appears in all the cases.

Singular.

Nom. dī' ēs, *a day*

Gen. dī ē' ī, *of a day*

Dat. dī ē' ī, *to a day*

Acc. dī' ēm, *a day*

Voc. dī' ēs, *O day*

Abl. dī' ē, *with a day*

rēs, *a thing*

rē' ī, *of a thing*

rē' ī, *to a thing*

rēm, *a thing*

rēs, *O thing*

rē, *with a thing*

Plural.

Nom. dī' ēs, *days*

Gen. dī ē' rūm, *of days*

Dat. dī ē' būs, *to days*

Acc. dī' ēs, *days*

Voc. dī' ēs, *O days*

Abl. dī ē' būs, *with days*

rēs, *things*

rē' rūm, *of things*

rē' būs, *to things*

rēs, *things*

rēs, *O things*

rē' būs, *with things*

Examples for Practice:

fáciēs, -ēī, <i>the face</i>	sēriēs, -ēī, <i>a series</i>
effigiēs, -ēī, <i>a likeness</i>	sūp̄ficiēs, -ēī, <i>a surface</i>
spēs, -ēī, <i>hope</i>	fidēs, -ēī, <i>faith</i>
glāciēs, -ēī, <i>ice</i>	prōgēniēs, -ēī, <i>offspring</i>

177. Of all the nouns of the Fifth Declension only two are complete in the plural, viz.: *dīēs* and *rēs*.

178. The *e* of *ei* in the genitive and dative is long when preceded by a vowel, as: *dī-ē-i*, and short when preceded by a consonant, as: *fī-dē-i*.

Rule of Gender.

179. All Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *mērīdīēs*, *mid-day*, and the plural of *dīēs*, *a day*, which are always masculine.

180. In the singular, *dīēs* is usually masculine, but sometimes feminine, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, or time in general, as: *constitūtā diē*, *on the appointed day*.

[69. 70. 105. 106.]

Irregular Nouns.

181. The Latin has only a few **Indeclinable Nouns**; viz.:

fās, <i>right</i>	mānē, <i>morning</i>
nēfās, <i>wrong</i>	nīhīl, <i>nothing</i>
instār, <i>an image, kind</i>	pondō, (lit. <i>in weight</i>), <i>pounds</i>
nēcessē, <i>necessary</i>	ōpūs, <i>need</i>

besides the names of the Latin and Greek letters, as: *A*, *D*, *alphā*, *deltā*, and some foreign words, as: *sīnāpī*, *mustard*.

182. Some nouns are **Defective in Case**, i. e., they want one or more cases.

The commonest of them are:

- (*diciō*), *sway*, Nom. sing. wanting.
- fors*, *chance*, only in Nom. & Abl. sing. *fortē*, *by chance*.
- (*frux*), *fruit*, Nom. sing. wanting.
- grātēs*, *thanks*, only in Nom. & Acc. plur.
- impētūs*, *attack*, only in Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing. & Nom. & Acc. plur.
- infītīās*, *denial*, only in Acc. with *irē*, as: *infītīās ire*, *to deny*.

němō, *no one*, only in **Dat. & Acc.** — **Gen. & Abl.** supplied by nullūs, nullō.

(ops), *aid*, **Nom. sing.** wanting; **plur.** ōpēs, *wealth*, entire.

(prex), *prayer*, only in **Dat. & Abl. sing.** přecī, přecē; — **plur.** přecēs, *prayers*, entire.

(sordēs), *filth*, only **Acc. & Abl. sing.** sordēm, sordē; **plural** entire.

(spons), *will*, only in **Abl. sing.** spontē, as: mēā spontē, *of my own accord*.

věnum, *sale*, only in **Acc. sing.** as: věnum dārē, *to put up for sale*.

(verbēr), *whip*, only in **Abl. sing.** verbērē; **plur.** verbērā, *whipping*.

(vix or vícis), *change*, only in **Gen., Acc. & Abl. sing.** (vícis, vícēm, vícē). In the **plural**, only the **Genitive** is wanting.

vīs, *force*, only in **Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing.** — **Plural** entire.

183. Of many verbal nouns in **sūs** or **tūs** of the *Fourth Declension*, only the **Ablative singular** is used; as: jussū mēō, *by my command*; concessū, impulsū, permissū, rōgātū mēō.

184. The **Genitive Plural** of many monosyllabic words does not occur; such are:

cōs, cōr, fāx, lūx, ōs, pāx, rōs, sāl, sōl, tūs, vēr.

185. Monosyllabic neuters, such as: aes, jūs, rūs, are found only in the **Nominative** and **Accusative Plural**: aerā, jūrā, rūrā.

186. **Defective in Number** are those which want either the singular or the plural.

187. Nouns used in the **Singular** only: **Singularia tantum**. Some nouns, from the nature of the things meant, have no plural, as: justitīā, *justice*; fāmēs, *hunger*; aurūm, *gold*. There are also other nouns which lack the plural, without any obvious reason, as: spēcīmēn, *a sample*; vespēr, *evening*; mēridiēs, *mid-day*; vēr, *spring*.

188. Nouns used in the **Plural** only: **Pluralia tantum**. The commonest of them are:

First Declension.

dēlicīae, -ārūm, *delight*

dīvītīae, -ārūm, *riches*

exsēquīae, -ārūm, *a funeral*

fērīae, -ārūm, *holidays*

indūtīae, -ārūm, *a truce*

insidīae, -ārūm, *an ambush*

nundīnae, -ārūm, *market-day*

nuptīae, -ārūm, *a wedding*

tēnēbrae, -ārūm, *darkness*

Athēnae, -ārūm, *Athens*

Second Declension.

armā, -ōrūm, arms, weapons	libērī, -ōrūm, children
fastī, -ōrūm, an almanac	postērī, -ōrūm, descendants
gēminī, -ōrūm, twins	Delphī, -ōrūm, Delphi

Third Declension.

Alpēs, -īŭm, the Alps	faucēs, -īŭm, the throat
mājōrēs, -ūm, ancestors	mānēs, -īŭm, the shades of the dead

189. Some words have, besides the *general* meaning for both numbers, a *special* meaning for the **Plural**.

Singular.

aedēs, -īs, *a temple*
 āquā, -ae, *water*
 auxiliŭm, -ī, *help*
 castrū, -ī, *a fort*
 cōpiā, -ae, *abundance*
 finīs, -, *an end, limit*
 fortunā, -ae, *fortune*
 grātiā, -ae, *favor*
 littērā, -ae, *a letter (of the alphabet)*
 impēdimentū, -ī, *a hindrance*
 ōpērā, -ae, *a task; service*
 (ops) ōpīs, *help; power*
 pars, -tīs, *a part*
 rostrū, -ī, *a beak*
 sāl, sālis, *salt*

Plural.

aedēs, -īŭm, *a house*
 āquae, -ārūm, *medicinal springs*
 auxiliā, -ōrūm, *auxiliary troops*
 castrā, -ōrūm, *a camp*
 cōpiae, -ārūm, *troops*
 finēs, -īŭm, *borders; a territory*
 fortunae, -ārūm, *wealth*
 grātiāe, -ārūm, *favours; thanks*
 littērae, -ārūm, *an epistle; learning; literature*
 impēdimentā, -ōrūm, *baggage*
 ōpērae, -ārūm, *workmen*
 ōpēs, -ūm, *wealth*
 partēs, -īŭm, *a part (on the stage); a party*
 rostrā, -ōrūm, *a speaker's platform*
 sālēs, -īŭm, *witty sayings*

190. Some nouns have two or more forms of Declension (**Heteroclites**). Such are:

laurūs, -ī	laurūs, -ūs, a laurel-tree
ēventūs, -ūs	ēventū, -ī, an event
luxūrīā, -ae	luxūrīēs, -ēī, luxury
mātērīā, -ae	mātērīēs, -ēī, matter
segnītiā, -ae	segnītiēs, -ēī, slothfulness
ēlēphantūs, -ī	ēlēphās, -antīs, an elephant
plēbs, -īs	plēbēs, -ēī, the common people

vās, vāsīs, a vessel, etc. etc.

[107. 108.]

191. The following have the plural in a gender different from that of the singular (**Heterogeneous Nouns**):

Singular.	Plural.
jōcūs, -ī, a <i>joke, jest</i>	jōcī, -ōrūm, & jōcā, -ōrūm, <i>jokes</i>
lōcūs, -ī, a <i>place</i>	{ lōcī, -ōrūm, <i>passages (in books)</i> lōcā, -ōrūm, <i>places</i>
margāritā, -ae, a <i>pearl</i>	{ margāritae, -ārūm } <i>pearls</i> margāritā, -ōrūm }
caelūm, -ī, <i>heaven</i>	caelī, -ōrūm, <i>heavens</i>
ēpūlūm, -ī, a <i>banquet</i>	ēpūlae, -ārūm, a <i>meal</i>
balnētūm, -ī, a <i>bath</i>	balnēae, -ārūm, <i>baths, a bathhouse</i>
frēnūm, -ī, a <i>bridle</i>	frēnī, -ōrūm, & frēnā, -ōrūm, a <i>bit</i>

[107. 108.]

192. Sometimes a Noun in combination with an adjective takes a special signification, both parts being regularly inflected, as: jūsjurandūm, an *oath*; rēspublīcā, a *commonwealth*.

Singular.

	<i>an oath</i>	<i>a commonwealth</i>
Nom.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Gen.	jū ris jū ran' dī	rē ī pu' blī cae
Dat.	jū rī jū ran' dō	rē ī pu' blī cae
Acc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēm pu' blī cām
Voc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Abl.	jū rē jū ran' dō	rē pu' blī cā

Plural.

Nom.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cae
Gen.	—	rē rūm pu blī cā' rūm
Dat.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs
Acc.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cās
Voc.	—	rēs pu' blī cae
Abl.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs

[109. 110.]

Proper Names.

193. The Romans regularly had **three names**, as: Marcus Tullius Cicero.

194. Marcus, the **praenomen**, corresponded to our *Christian name*; Tullius, the **nomen**, was the *name* of the gens or clanship; the **cognomen**, or *surname*, as Cicero, indicated the particular family to which one belonged. Another species of *surname*, **agnomen**,

was some significant epithet, as: **Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus**, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

195. The three names, however, were not always used, commonly two. The Romans, when addressing a person, generally used the praenomen.

196. Women had no personal names, but were known only by that of their gens with a feminine termination, as: *Julia, the daughter of Gaius Julius Caesar.*

197. The commonest praenomens are thus abbreviated:

A. = Aulus	L. = Lucius	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus
App. = Appius	M. = Marcus	S. (Sex.) = Sextus
C. (G.) = Gaius	M'. = Manius	Serv. = Servius
Cn. (Gn.) = Gnaeus	Mam. = Mamercus	Sp. = Spurius
D. = Decimus	N. (Num.) = Numerius	T. = Titus
K. = Kaeso	P. = Publius	Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius

ADJECTIVES.

198. **Adjectives and Participles** are in general declined like substantives. They distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, corresponding with their substantives in **Number, Gender, and Case.**

199. Some Adjectives denote each gender by a different termination, and consequently have **three terminations**, viz.:

Of the **First and Second Declensions**:

ŭs, ā, ūm, as: **bōnŭs, -ā, -ūm**, *good* (see 72.)

ēr, ā, ūm, as: { **libēr, -ā, -ūm**, *free* (see 74.)
nīgēr, -rā, -rūm, *black* (see 76.)

ŭr, ā, ūm, only **sātŭr, -ā, -ūm**, *sated* (see 66.)

[21. 22. 25. 26.]

Of the **Third Declension**:

ēr, is, ě, as: **ācēr, -rīs, -rĕ**, *sharp* (see 137.) [55. 56.]

200. Some Adjectives of the **Third Declension** have **two terminations** — one for the masculine and feminine, and the other for the neuter; they end in:

is, ě, as: **tristīs, -ĕ**, *sad* (see 139.)

ōr, ŭs, as: **dūrīōr, -ŭs**, *harder* (see 139.) [55. 56. 73. 74.]

201. Some Adjectives of the Third Declension have only one termination which is common to all genders; they end in:

- l**, as: *vigīl*, *wakeful* (see 90.)
r, as: *paupēr*, *poor* (see 95.)
s, as: *prūdēns*, *sensible* (see 141.)
x, as: *fēlix*, *happy* (see 141.)

[57—60.]

Irregular Adjectives.

202. The following Adjectives with their Compounds have the Genitive singular in *īūs*, and the Dative in *ī* for all genders (see 77.).

<i>āliūs</i> , -ā, -ūīd, <i>another</i>	<i>ullūs</i> , -ā, -ūīm, <i>any</i>
<i>nullūs</i> , -ā, -ūīm, <i>no</i>	<i>ūnūs</i> , -ā, -ūīm, <i>one</i>
<i>sōlūs</i> , -ā, -ūīm, <i>alone</i>	<i>altēr</i> , -ā, -ūīm, <i>the other (of two)</i>
<i>tōtūs</i> , -ā, -ūīm, <i>whole</i>	<i>ūtēr</i> , -rā, -rūīm, <i>which (of two)</i>
<i>neutēr</i> , -rā, -rūīm, <i>neither</i>	

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	<i>sō' lūs</i>	<i>sō' lā</i>	<i>sō' lūīm</i> , <i>alone</i>
Gen.	<i>sō ī' ūīs</i>	<i>sō ī' ūīs</i>	<i>sō ī' ūīs</i>
Dat.	<i>sō' ī</i>	<i>sō' ī</i>	<i>sō' ī</i>

Like *ūtēr* are declined its compounds, as *ūterque*, *ūtrāquē*, *ūtrumquē*, *either*. Of *altērūtēr*, *the one or the other of the two*, either both parts are declined; *altēr ūtēr*, *altērā ūtrā*, *altērūīm ūtrūīm*; or only the latter: *altērūtēr*, *altērūtērā*, *altērūtērūīm*.

[71. 72.]

203. Many Adjectives of one termination, especially such as end in *ēr*, *ēs*, *ōr*, *ōs*, *fex*, are not used in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural of the neuter gender, viz.:

<i>dēgēnēr</i> , -īs, <i>degenerate</i>	<i>compōs</i> , -ōtīs, <i>capable</i>
<i>paupēr</i> , -īs, <i>poor</i>	<i>artīfex</i> , -īcīs, <i>artificial</i>
<i>ālēs</i> , -ītīs, <i>winged</i>	<i>īnops</i> , <i>īnōpīs</i> , <i>needy</i>
<i>bīpēs</i> , -ēdīs, <i>two-footed</i>	<i>rēdux</i> , -ūcīs, <i>returning</i>
<i>divēs</i> , -ītīs, <i>rich</i>	<i>sons</i> , -tīs, <i>guilty</i>
<i>sospēs</i> , -ītīs, <i>safe</i>	<i>supplex</i> , -īcīs, <i>suppliant</i>
<i>concōlōr</i> , -ōrīs, <i>of the same com-</i>	<i>trux</i> , -ūcīs, <i>fierce</i>
<i>mēmōr</i> , -īs, <i>mindful</i>	[<i>lor</i> <i>vīgīl</i> , -īs, <i>wakeful</i>

204. Of *cētērī*, -ae, -ā, *the rest*, the Nominative singular masculine is not used. *singūlī*, -ae, -ā, *one at a time*; *paucī*, -ae, -ā, *few*; and *plērīquē*, *plēraequē*, *plērāquē* are not used in the singular.

205. The following Adjectives are **Indeclinable**:

frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	tōt, <i>so many</i>
nēquām, <i>worthless</i>	quōt, <i>how many</i>

206. The Substantives: victōr, *conqueror*, and ultōr, *avenger*, are also used as Adjectives — *victorious*, *vengeful* — and, in poetry, they admit even a neuter of the plural, as: armā victiciā, *victorious arms*.

Comparison.

207. Adjectives have three degrees of **Comparison**: the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**.

208. The **Positive Degree** is expressed by the adjective in its simple form, as: dūrūs, *hard*.

209. The **Comparative Degree** ends in **ōr** for the masculine and feminine, and in **ūs** for the neuter, and is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **is** of the positive into **iōr**, **iūs**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Comparative.
excelsūs, <i>high</i>	excelsī	excelsiōr, excelsiūs
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libēriōr, libēriūs
pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrī	pulchriōr, pulchriūs
ācēr, <i>sharp</i>	ācrīs	ācriōr, ācriūs
lēvis, <i>light</i>	lēvis	lēviōr, lēviūs
sāgax, <i>sagacious</i>	sāgācis	sāgāciōr, sāgāciūs
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i>	prudentīs	prudentiōr, prudentiūs

210. Comparatives are of the *Third Declension*; they are declined like dūriōr, dūriūs (see 139.)

211. The **Superlative** is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **is** of the positive into **issimūs**, **issimā**, **issimūm**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Superlative.
prētiōsūs, <i>valuable</i>	prētiōsī	prētiōsissimūs
diligēns, <i>diligent</i>	diligentīs	diligentissimūs

212. Superlatives are declined like bōnūs, -ā, -ūm of the *First* and *Second Declensions*.

213. Adjectives in **ēr** add **rimūs** to the positive to form the **Superlative**, as:

pulchēr, *beautiful*, pulcherrimūs; ācēr, *sharp*, ācerrimūs.

214. *vētūs, old*, has **Superlative** *vēterrīmūs*, and *mātūrūs*, *ripe*, *mātrissīmūs* and sometimes *mātrrīmūs*.

215. Six adjectives in *īlis* form their **Superlative** by changing the ending *īs* into *īmūs*, as: *facīlis, facillīmūs*. These are:

<i>facīlis, easy</i> , <i>facillīmūs</i>	<i>difficīlis, difficult</i> , <i>difficillīmūs</i>
<i>simīlis, like</i> , <i>simillīmūs</i>	<i>dissimīlis, unlike</i> , <i>dissimillīmūs</i>
<i>grācīlis, slender</i> , <i>grācillīmūs</i>	<i>hūmīlis, low</i> , <i>hūmillīmūs</i>

216. Compound adjectives in *dīcūs*, *ficūs*, and *vōlūs* form their **Comparative** and **Superlative** by changing *ūs* into *entīōr*, *entissīmūs*, as:

<i>bēnēvōlūs, benevolent</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentīōr</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentissīmūs</i>
<i>bēnēficūs, beneficent</i>	<i>bēnēficentīōr</i>	<i>bēnēficentissīmūs</i>
<i>magnīficūs, magnificent</i>	<i>magnīficentīōr</i>	<i>magnīficentissīmūs</i>

217. In like manner are compared:

<i>ēgēnūs (ēgens), needy</i>	<i>ēgentīōr</i>	<i>ēgentissīmūs</i>
<i>prōvidūs, provident</i>	<i>prōvidentīōr</i>	<i>prōvidentissīmūs</i>

218. Adjectives in *ūs*, preceded by a vowel, are compared by means of *māgis* and *maximē*, *more* and *most*:

<i>dūbīūs, doubtful</i>	<i>māgis dūbīūs</i>	<i>maximē dūbīūs</i>
-------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

219. But adjectives in *quūs* are regular:

<i>antīquūs, old</i>	<i>antīquīōr</i>	<i>antīquissīmūs</i>
----------------------	------------------	----------------------

[73—76.]

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

220. The following adjectives have different words for expressing the different degrees of comparison:

<i>bōnūs, good</i>	<i>mēlīōr, better</i>	<i>optīmūs, best</i>
<i>mālūs, bad</i>	<i>pējōr, worse</i>	<i>pessīmūs, worst</i>
<i>magnūs, great</i>	<i>mājōr, greater</i>	<i>maxīmūs, greatest</i>
<i>parvūs, little</i>	<i>mīnōr, less, lesser</i>	<i>mīnīmūs, least</i>
<i>multūs, much</i>	<i>plūs, more</i>	<i>plūrīmūs, most</i>

221. *plūs, more*, is thus declined:

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom. & Acc.	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plū' rēs</i>	<i>plū' rā (plū' rī ā)</i>
Gen.	<i>plū' rīs</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>
Dat. & Abl.	—	<i>plū' rī būs</i>	<i>plū' rī būs</i>

complūrēs, several, very many, is declined like *plūrēs*.

222. Mark the degrees of the two Indeclinable adjectives:

nēquām, <i>worthless</i>	nēquīŀr	nēquissīmūs
frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	frūgālīŀr	frūgālissīmūs

223. The following adjectives have two Irregular Superlatives:

extērūs, <i>outward</i>	extērīŀr, <i>outer</i>	extrēmūs, (extīmūs), <i>outmost</i>
infērūs, <i>below</i>	infērīŀr, <i>lower</i>	infīmūs, imūs, <i>lowest</i>
postērūs, <i>next</i>	postērīŀr, { <i>latter</i>	postrēmūs, { <i>last</i>
	{ <i>later</i>	{ <i>latest</i>
sūpērūs, <i>above</i>	sūpērīŀr, <i>upper</i>	suprēmūs, summūs, <i>highest</i>

224. The following adjectives are Defective in their comparison:

I. Positive wanting.

Comparative.	Superlative.
cītērīŀr, <i>more on this side</i>	cītīmūs, <i>most on this side</i>
intērīŀr, <i>inner</i>	intīmūs, <i>innermost, intimate</i>
prīŀr, <i>prior, former</i>	prīmūs, <i>foremost, first</i>
prōpīŀr, <i>nearer</i>	proxīmūs, <i>nearest</i>
ultērīŀr, <i>ulterior, further</i>	ultīmūs, <i>furthest, last</i>
ōcīŀr, <i>swifter</i>	ōcissīmūs, <i>swiftest</i>
pōtīŀr, <i>preferable</i>	pōtissīmūs, <i>most important</i>
dētērīŀr, <i>worse</i>	dēterrīmūs, <i>worst</i>

II. Comparative wanting.

Positive.	Superlative.
diversūs, <i>different</i>	diversissīmūs, <i>most different</i>
falsūs, <i>false</i>	falsissīmūs, <i>falsest</i>
inclūtūs, <i>renowned</i>	inclūtissīmūs, <i>most renowned</i>
invītūs, <i>unwilling</i>	invītissīmūs, <i>most unwilling</i>
nōvūs, <i>new</i>	nōvissīmūs, <i>latest, last</i>
sācēr, <i>sacred</i>	sācerrīmūs, <i>most sacred</i>
vētūs, <i>old</i>	vēterrīmūs, <i>oldest</i>

III. Superlative wanting.

Positive.	Comparative.
jūvēnīs, <i>young</i>	jūnīŀr, <i>younger</i>
sēnex, <i>old</i>	sēnīŀr, <i>older</i>
ālācēr, <i>gay</i>	ālācērīŀr, <i>gayer</i>
longinquūs, <i>far</i>	longinquīŀr, <i>farther</i>
propinquūs, <i>near</i>	propinquīŀr, <i>nearer</i>
pōpūlārīs, <i>popular</i>	pōpūlārīŀr, <i>more popular</i>
sālūtārīs, <i>salutary</i>	sālūtārīŀr, <i>more salutary</i>

225. Some Adjectives are, by their meaning, excluded from comparison. Among these are certain words implying *matter, time, place, and person*, as: *ferrēus, iron; hōdiernus, of to-day; Rōmānus, Roman; paternus, paternal*; also words denoting the lowest or highest degree of a quality, as: *singulāris, alone of its kind*, and Compounds with *pēr* and *prae*; but *praeclārus, renowned*, and *pertinax, very tenacious*, are found in the Comparative and Superlative.

226. Again, there are Adjectives which, from their form, or without any obvious reason, are incapable of comparison, viz.:

1. Adjectives in *ūs*, after a vowel (see 218.).

2. Compound Adjectives containing a verb or a substantive, as: *particeps, sharing; inops, needy*; except Compounds of *dicō, faciō, vōlō* (see 216.), and Compounds of *ars, cōr, mens*, as: *iners, unskilled; concors, harmonious; āmens, senseless*; which are regularly compared.

3. Adjectives in *icūs, imūs, inūs, inūs, ōrūs, ūlūs*, as: *mōdicus, moderate; lēgitimūs, lawful; dīutīnūs, lasting; mātūtīnūs, early; cānōrūs, melodious; sēdūlūs, busy*.

4. Many Adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct headings:

cādūcūs, drooping
cicūr, tame
curvūs, curved
fērūs, wild
gnārūs, skilful
impīgēr, active
lācēr, torn
lassūs, wearied
mūtīlūs, maimed

mērūs, mere
mēdiocris, middling
mēmōr, mindful
mīrūs, wonderful
pār, equal
impār, unequal
rūdīs, rude
trūx, fierce
vāgūs, vagrant

227. Participles, when used as Adjectives, are regularly compared, as: *doctūs, learned; doctiōr, doctissimūs; abstīnens, abstinent, abstinentiōr, abstinentissimūs*.

Adverbs formed from Adjectives are compared as follows (see 440):

<i>cārūs, dear:</i>	<i>cārē,</i>	<i>cārīus,</i>	<i>cārissimē</i>
<i>miser, wretched:</i>	<i>miserē,</i>	<i>miseriūs,</i>	<i>miserimē</i>
<i>lēvis, light:</i>	<i>lēvitēr,</i>	<i>lēviūs,</i>	<i>lēvissimē</i>

NUMERALS.

Numeral Adjectives.

228. Cardinal Numerals express number in its simplest form, and answer the question *quōt? how many?*

1	I	ūnūs, ūnā, ūnūm
2	II	dūō, dūae, dūō
3	III	trēs, triā
4	IV	quattuōr
5	V	quinquē
6	VI	sex
7	VII	septēm
8	VIII	octō
9	IX	nōvēm
10	X	dēcēm
11	XI	undēcīm
12	XII	dūdēcīm
13	XIII	trēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt trēs)
14	XIV	quattuōrdēcīm (dēcēm ēt quattuōr)
15	XV	quindēcīm (dēcēm ēt quinquē)
16	XVI	sēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt sex)
17	XVII	septendēcīm (dēcēm ēt septēm)
18	XVIII	dūdēviginti (dēcēm ēt octō)
19	XIX	undēviginti (dēcēm ēt nōvēm)
20	XX	vīginti
21	XXI	ūnūs ēt vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti ūnūs
22	XXII	dūō ēt vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti dūō
23	XXIII	trēs ēt vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti trēs
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XXXX or XL	quādrāgintā
50	L	quinqūāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septuāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	LXXXX or XC	nōnāgintā
100	C	centūm
101	CI	centūm ēt ūnūs <i>or</i> centūm ūnūs
200	CC	dūcentī, -ae, -ā
300	CCC	trēcentī, -ae, -ā
400	CCCC	quādringenti, -ae, -ā

500	D or IO	quingentī, -ae, -ā
600	DC or IOC	sescentī, -ae, -ā
700	DCC or IOCC	septingentī, -ae, -ā
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ā
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ā
1000	M or CIO	millē
2000	MM or IIM	dūo millīa
5000	IOO	quinqūe millīa
6000	IOOM	sex millīa
10 000	CCIOO	dēcēm millīa
50 000	IOOO	quinqūagintā millīa
100 000	CCCIOOO	centūm millīa [millīa
1 000 000	CCCCIOOOO	dēcēs centēnā millīa or dēcēs centūm

229. The three first are declined; the rest, as far as one hundred, are indeclinable. Hundreds, as: dūcentī, ae, ā, trēcentī, ae, ā, etc., are declined like the plural of bōnūs.

ūnūs, ūnā, ūnūm, *one*

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. ū' nūs	ū' nā	ū' nūm	ū' nī	ū' nae	ū' nā
G. ū nī' ūs	ū nī' ūs	ū nī' ūs	ū nō' rūm	ū nā' rūm	ū nō' rūm
D. ū' nī	ū' nī	ū' nī	ū' nīs	ū' nīs	ū' nīs
A. ū' nūm	ū' nām	ū' nūm	ū' nōs	ū' nās	ū' nā
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
A. ū' nō	ū' nā	ū' nō	ū' nīs	ū' nīs	ū' nīs

The plural of ūnūs occurs only with such nouns as have no singular, as: ūnā castrā, *one camp*; ūnae nuptiae, *one marriage*.

dūō, dūae, dūō, *two*

trēs, triā, *three*

m.	f.	n.	m. & f.	n.
N. dū' ō	dū' ae	dū' ō	trēs	tri' ā
G. dū ō' rūm	dū ā' rūm	dū ō' rūm	tri' ūm	tri' ūm
D. dū ō' būs	dū ā' būs	dū ō' būs	tri' būs	tri' būs
A. dū' ōs, dū' ō	dū' ās	dū' ō	trēs	tri' ā
V. —	—	—	—	—
A. dū ō' būs	dū ā' būs	dū ō' būs	tri' būs	tri' būs

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both*, is declined like dūō.

230. In the singular millē is an **Indeclinable Adjective**; in the plural it is a **Substantive** and takes the genitive, as: millē milītēs, *a thousand soldiers*; dūō millīa milītūm, *two thousand soldiers*.

231. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English, as: *viginti unus*, *twenty-one*, or *unus et viginti*, *one and twenty*.

232. From 100 on, units follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; *et*, *and*, is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations, as:

centum et quinquaginta or *centum quinquaginta*, 150

centum et quinquaginta tres or *centum quinquaginta tres*, 153.

233. *sexcenti* is used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* in English.

[79. 80.]

234. Ordinal Numerals denote a series, and answer the question *quōtūs? which one in the series?*

1st, <i>primus</i> , -ā, -ūm (<i>prior</i> , -ūs)	23d, <i>tertius et vicessimus</i>
2d, <i>secundus</i> (<i>alter</i>)	30th, <i>tricesimus</i> or <i>trigesimus</i>
3d, <i>tertius</i>	
4th, <i>quartus</i>	40th, <i>quadragessimus</i>
5th, <i>quintus</i>	50th, <i>quingessimus</i>
6th, <i>sextus</i>	60th, <i>sexagesimus</i>
7th, <i>septimus</i>	70th, <i>septuagesimus</i>
8th, <i>octavus</i>	80th, <i>octogessimus</i>
9th, <i>nonus</i>	90th, <i>nonagesimus</i>
10th, <i>decimus</i>	100th, <i>centesimus</i>
11th, <i>undecimus</i>	101st, <i>centesimus (et) primus</i>
12th, <i>duodecimus</i>	200th, <i>ducentesimus</i>
13th, <i>tertius decimus</i>	300th, <i>trecentesimus</i>
14th, <i>quartus decimus</i>	400th, <i>quadringentesimus</i>
15th, <i>quintus decimus</i>	500th, <i>quingentesimus</i>
16th, <i>sextus decimus</i>	600th, <i>sescentesimus</i>
17th, <i>septimus decimus</i>	700th, <i>septingentesimus</i>
18th, <i>octavus decimus</i> or <i>duodevicesimus</i>	800th, <i>octingentesimus</i>
19th, <i>nonus decimus</i> or <i>undevicesimus</i>	900th, <i>nongentesimus</i>
20th, <i>vicessimus</i> or <i>vigesimus</i>	1000th, <i>milliesimus</i>
21st, <i>unus et vicessimus</i> or <i>vicessimus primus</i>	2000th, <i>bis milliesimus</i>
	3000th, <i>ter milliesimus</i>
22d, <i>alter et vicessimus</i> or <i>vicessimus secundus</i>	10 000th, <i>decies milliesimus</i>
	100 000th, <i>centies milliesimus</i>
	1 000 000th, <i>decies centies millesimus</i>

235. All **Ordinals** are adjectives in ūs, ā, ūm; except priōr, priūs, *first*, which is used instead of primūs in speaking of *two*; altēr is often used for sēcundūs. In compounding Ordinals, observe the same practice as with Cardinals (see 231).

236. Ordinals with pars, *part*, expressed or understood, may be used to denote fractions, as: tertīā pars, *a third*; quartā pars, *a fourth*; duae quintae, *two fifths*. [31. 32.]

237. **Distributive Numerals** answer the question quōtēnī? *how many at a time?* and are declined like the plural of bōnūs.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. singŭlī, -ae, -ā, <i>one by one</i> | 22. vicēnī binī |
| 2. binī, -ae, -ā, <i>two by two</i> , etc. | 23. vicēnī ternī |
| 3. ternī (trīnī) | 30. tricēnī |
| 4. quāternī | 40. quādrāgēnī |
| 5. quīnī | 50. quinquāgēnī |
| 6. sēnī | 60. sexāgēnī |
| 7. septēnī | 70. septuāgēnī |
| 8. octōnī | 80. octōgēnī |
| 9. nōvēnī | 90. nōnāgēnī |
| 10. dēnī | 100. centēnī |
| 11. undēnī | 200. dūcēnī |
| 12. dūōdēnī | 300. tricēnī |
| 13. ternī dēnī | 400. quādringēnī |
| 14. quāternī dēnī | 500. quingēnī |
| 15. quīnī dēnī | 600. sexcēnī |
| 16. sēnī dēnī | 700. septingēnī |
| 17. septēnī dēnī | 800. octingēnī |
| 18. octōnī dēnī or dūōdēvicēnī | 900. nongēnī |
| 19. nōvēnī dēnī or undēvicēnī | 1000. singulā mīllā |
| 20. vicēnī | 2000. binā mīllā |
| 21. vicēnī singulī | 3000. ternā mīllā, etc. |

238. **Distributives** are used as follows:

In the meaning of *so many a piece* or *on each side*, as: Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus congressi sunt, *-Scipio and Hannibal met, with an interpreter on each side;*

In multiplication, as: bis bina, *twice two*;

Instead of **Cardinals**, when a noun is plural in form, but singular in meaning, as: bina castrā, *two camps*. But with these, ūnī, -ae, -ā is used instead of singulī, and trīnī instead of ternī; as: ūnae littērae, *one letter*; trīnae littērae, *three letters*.

239. Multiplicative Numerals answer the question *quōtūplex? how many fold?* They are adjectives in *ex, icis*.

simplex, *-icis, single*
dūplex, *twofold, double*
triplex, *threefold, triple*
quādrūplex, *fourfold*

quincūplex, *fivefold*
septemplex, *sevenfold*
dēcemplex, *tenfold*
centūplex, *a hundredfold*

240. Proportional Numerals answer the question *quōtūplūs? how many times as great?* and are adjectives in *ūs, ā, ūm*. Only a few are commonly used.

simplūs, *-ā, -ūm, simple*
dūplūs, *twice as great*
trīplūs, *three times as great*

quādrūplūs, *four times as great*
septūplūs, *seven times as great*
octūplūs, *eight times as great*

Numeral Adverbs.

241. Numeral Adverbs answer the question *quōtī-ens? how often?* Being adverbs, they are indeclinable.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. sēmēl, <i>once</i> | 21. sēmēl ēt vicīēs |
| 2. bīs, <i>twice</i> | 22. bīs ēt vicīēs |
| 3. tēr, <i>thrice</i> | 23. tēr ēt vicīēs |
| 4. quātēr, <i>four times, etc.</i> | 30. trīcīēs |
| 5. quinquīēs | 40. quādrāgīēs |
| 6. sexīēs | 50. quinquāgīēs |
| 7. septīēs | 60. sexāgīēs |
| 8. octīēs | 70. septūāgīēs |
| 9. nōvīēs | 80. octōgīēs |
| 10. dēcīēs | 90. nōnāgīēs |
| 11. undēcīēs | 100. centīēs |
| 12. dūōdēcīēs | 200. dūcentīēs |
| 13. terdēcīēs (trēdēcīēs) | 300. trēcīentīēs |
| 14. quāterdēcīēs (quattūrdēcīēs) | 400. quādringīentīēs |
| 15. quinquīēsdēcīēs (quindēcīēs) | 500. quingīentīēs |
| 16. sexīēsdēcīēs | 600. sescentīēs |
| 17. septīēsdēcīēs | 700. septingīentīēs |
| 18. dūōdēvicīēs (octīēs dēcīēs) | 800. octingīentīēs |
| 19. undēvicīēs (nōvīēs dēcīēs) | 900. nongīentīēs |
| 20. vicīēs | 1000. millīēs |

2000. bīs mīļēs	100 000. centīēs mīļēs
3000. tēr mīļēs	1 000 000. mīļēs mīļēs
10 000. dēciēs mīļēs	2 000 000. bīs mīļēs mīļēs

242. The Accusative and Ablative neuter of Ordinals are used as **Adverbs of order**, thus:

prīmū, prīmō, *first, at first*;
(sēcundū, sēcundō) commonly: itērū, *secondly*;
tertiū, terciō, *thirdly*.

[81. 82.]

PRONOUNS.

243. Pronouns distinguish the Person speaking, or the **First Person**, from the Person spoken to, or the **Second Person**, and the object spoken of, **Third Person**. Accordingly, we have pronouns of the First, Second, and Third persons which are used either substantively or adjectively, or both substantively and adjectively.

244. Strictly speaking, the Pronouns of the *First* and *Second Persons* are the only **Personal Pronouns**, because they apply to Persons, *and to these only*.

245. The **Personal Pronouns** of the *First Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
		Singular.
Nom.	ē' gō, <i>I</i>	
Gen.	mē' i, <i>of me</i>	
Dat.	mī' hī, <i>to me</i>	
Acc.	mē, <i>me</i>	mēūs, mēā, mētū, <i>my</i>
Voc.	—	
Abl.	mē, <i>from me</i>	
		Plural.
Nom.	nōs, <i>we</i>	
Gen.	no' strūm } no' strī }	<i>of us</i>
Dat.	nō' bīs, <i>to us</i>	nostēr, nostrā, nostrū, <i>our</i>
Acc.	nōs, <i>us</i>	
Voc.	—	
Abl.	nō' bīs, <i>from us</i>	

246. The Personal Pronouns of the *Second Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.	
		Singular.	
Nom.	tū, <i>thou</i>		
Gen.	tū' i, <i>of thee</i>		
Dat.	tī' bī, <i>to thee</i>		
Acc.	tē, <i>thee</i>	tūis, tūā, tūim, <i>thy, your</i>	
Voc.	tū, <i>O thou</i>		
Abl.	tē, <i>from thee</i>		
		Plural.	
Nom.	vōs, <i>ye or you</i>		
Gen.	ve' strūm } <i>of you</i>		
	ve' strī }		
Dat.	vō' bīs, <i>to you</i>	vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, <i>your</i>	
Acc.	vōs, <i>you</i>		
Voc.	vōs, <i>O ye or O you</i>		
Abl.	vō' bīs, <i>from you</i>		

The *Genitives* nostrūm, vestrūm are used *partitively* in reference to number.

247. The *Personal Pronouns of the Third Person* (*he, she, it, they*) are wanting in Latin; they are represented by the *Determinative* is, eā, id, *he, she, it*.

SUBSTANTIVE			Singular.		POSSESSIVE.
m.	f.	n.			
N. is	ē' ā	id	he, she, it		
G. ē' jūs	ē' jūs	ē' jūs	of him, etc.		(supplied by the Gen.)
D. ē' i	ē' i	ē' i	to, for him		ējūs, his, hers,
A. ē' ūm	ē' ām	id	him, her, it		its
A. ē' ō	ē' ā	ē' ō	from, by him		
			Plural.		
N. i' i, ē' i	ē' ae	ē' ā	they		
G. ē' ō' rūm	ē' ā' rūm	ē' ō' rūm	of them		ēōrūm, ēārūm,
D. i' is, ē' is	i' is, ē' is	i' is, ē' is	to, for them		ēōrūm, their
A. ē' ōs	ē' ās	ē' ā	them		or theirs
A. i' is, ē' is	i' is, ē' is	i' is, ē' is	from, by them		

Pronouns of the *Third Person*, from their signification, cannot have a *Vocative*.

248. The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person is:

SUBSTANTIVE		POSSESSIVE
Singular.		
Nom.	—	
Gen. sū' I, of him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)		sūūs, sūā, sūūm, his,
Dat. sī' bī, to him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)		her(s), its own
Acc. sē, him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)		
Abl. sē, with him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)		
Plural.		
Nom.	—	
Gen. sū' I, of them(<i>selves</i>)		sūūs, sūā, sūūm, their
Dat. sī' bī, to them(<i>selves</i>)		own
Acc. sē, them(<i>selves</i>)		
Abl. sē, with them(<i>selves</i>)		

249. Possessives are declined like Adjectives of the first and second Declensions; but mēūs has the *Voc. Sing. Masc.* mī (see 67).

250. From *noštēr* and *vestēr* come the *Patrial Adjectives*: *nostrās, -ātīs, of our country; vestrās, -ātīs, of your country.*

251. The particle *-mēt* is joined for emphasis to all forms of *ēgō*, except *nostrūm*; to all forms of *tū*, except *tū* and *vestrūm*; to *sībī*, *sē* and the forms of *sūūs*; as: *ēgōmēt, I myself. -tē* is joined to *tū*: *tūtē, yourself; -ptē* is joined to the *Ablative Singular* of the Possessive, as: *suaptē mănū, by his own hand; sē*, the *Accusative* of *sūl*, is often doubled, as: *sēsē.* [27. 28. 33. 34.]

Pronouns of the Third Person.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

252. The proper Demonstratives are:

hīc, this; istē, that; illē, that (yonder).

Singular.			Plural.		
hīc, haec, hōc, this (of mine)					
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G. hū' jūs	hū' jūs	hū' jūs	hō' rūm	hā' rūm	hō' rūm
D. hū' īc	hū' īc	hū' īc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

istě, istā, istūd, that (of yours)

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. i' stě	i' stā	i' stūd	i' stī	i' stae	i' stā
G. i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stō' rūm	i stā' rūm	i stō' rūm
D. i' stī	i' stī	i' stī	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs
A. i' stūm	i' stām	i' stūd	i' stōs	i' stās	i' stā
A. i' stō	i' stā	i' stō	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs

illě, illā, illūd, that (yonder)

N. il' lě	il' lā	il' lūd	il' lī	il' lae	il' lā
G. il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lō' rūm	il lā' rūm	il lō' rūm
D. il' lī	il' lī	il' lī	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs
A. il' lūm	il' lām	il' lūd	il' lōs	il' lās	il' lā
A. il' lō	il' lā	il' lō	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs

253. *istě* and *illě* have forms in *c*, but only in the **Nominative, Accusative and Ablative singular**, and in the **Nominative and Accusative plural (neuter only)**, thus:

	Singular.			Plural.
Nom.	istīc	istaec	istōc (commonly istūc)	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istōc (" istūc)	istaec
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc	

254. Forms of *hěc* ending in *s*, and the neuter *hōc* are found with the intensive *-cě*, as: *hūjuscě, hoccě*. There is also an interrogative form with *-ně*, *hīcně, haecně, hōcně*? *this here?*

[85. 86.]

Determinative Pronouns.

255. Certain pronouns connected with the Demonstratives in meaning, are ordinarily called **Determinatives**. These are:

Is, he, that; Iděm, the same; ipsě, he, self.

Is, eā, Id, he, she, it; that.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	Is	ě' ā	Id	ī' I, ē' I	ě' ae	ě' ā
Gen.	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' ō' rūm	ě' ā' rūm	ě' ō' rūm
Dat.	ě' I	ě' I	ě' I	ī' Is, ē' Is	ī' Is, ē' Is	ī' Is, ē' Is
Acc.	ě' ūm	ě' ām	Id	ě' ōs	ě' ās	ě' ā
Abl.	ě' ō	ě' ā	ě' ō	ī' Is, ē' Is	ī' Is, ē' Is	ī' Is, ē' Is

Idēm, ēādēm, Idēm, *the same.*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	I' dēm	ē' ā dēm	I' dēm
Gen.	ē jūs' dēm	ē jus' dēm	ē jus' dēm
Dat.	ē I' dēm	ē I' dēm	ē I' dēm
Acc.	ē un' dēm	ē an' dēm	I' dēm
Abl.	ē ō' dēm	ē ā' dēm	ē ō' dēm

Plural.

Nom.	I I' dēm, ē I' dēm	ē ae' dēm	ē' ā dēm
Gen.	ē ō run' dēm	ē ā run' dēm	ē ō run' dēm
Dat.	ē Is' dēm, I Is' dēm	ē Is' dēm, I Is' dēm	ē Is' dēm, I Is' dēm
Acc.	ē ōs' dēm	ē ās' dēm	ē' ā dēm
Abl.	ē Is' dēm, I Is' dēm	ē Is' dēm, I Is' dēm	ē Is' dēm, I Is' dēm

ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm, *he, she, it; self.*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	ip' sē	ip' sā	ip' sūm	ip' sī	ip' sae	ip' sā
G.	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sī' ūs	ip' sō' rūm	ip' sā' rūm	ip' sō' rūm
D.	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs
A.	ip' sūm	ip' sām	ip' sūm	ip' sōs	ip' sās	ip' sā
A.	ip' sō	ip' sā	ip' sō	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs

[85, 86.]

Relative Pronouns.

256. The Relative Pronoun is

quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that.*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
G.	quī' jūs	quī' jūs	quī' jūs	quō' rūm	quā' rūm	quō' rūm
D.	quī	quī	quī	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs
A.	quēm	quām	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs

257. Ancient and rare forms: quīs (queis) for quībūs; quī for quō, quā, chiefly with -cūm; quicūm = quōcūm, *with whom.*

258. The following are General Relatives:

Adjective.	quicunquē	quaecunquē	quodcunquē, <i>whichever</i>
Substantive.	quisquīs, <i>whoever</i>	—	quidquīd, <i>whatever</i>

259. They are declined in the same manner as the simple words; **cunquē** is invariable; of **quisquīs** both parts are declined, but it is generally used in these two forms only: **quisquīs**, *whoever*; **quidquīd**, *whatever*. [87. 88.]

Interrogative Pronouns.

260. The Interrogative (that is question-asking) pronouns are:

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Substantive.	quīs? <i>who?</i>		quīd? <i>what?</i>
Adjective.	quī? <i>which?</i>	quae? <i>which?</i>	quōd? <i>which?</i>
Subst. and Adj.	ūtēr? <i>who?</i>	ūtrā? <i>which of two?</i>	ūtrūm? <i>who? which of two?</i>

Singular.

Nom.	quīs? <i>who?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Gen.	cū' jūs? <i>whose?</i>	cū' jūs? <i>of what?</i>
Dat.	cui? <i>to or for whom?</i>	cui? <i>to or for what?</i>
Acc.	quēm? <i>whom?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Abl.	quō? <i>from or with whom?</i>	quō? <i>from or with what?</i>

261. The Plural of **quīs**, **quīd**? *who*, *what*? and both numbers of **quī**, **quae**, **quōd**? *which*? are the same as the forms of the Relative **quī**, **quae**, **quōd**, *who*, *which*.

262. For the Declension of **ūtēr** see 77.

263. To all cases of **quīs**? **quīd**? the particle **nām** (literally *for*) may be appended for the sake of emphasis, answering to our English *pray*, as: **quidnām** *āgīs*? *pray, what are you doing?*

264. From **cūjūs**, *whose*? comes the **Patrial Adjective**

cūjās, **-ātīs**, *of whose country?* [87. 88.]

Indefinite Pronouns.

265. The following are Indefinite Pronouns:

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
quīs (subst. & adj.)	quae or quā	quīd (subst.), <i>any one</i>
quī (adj.)	quae or quā	quōd (adj.), <i>any one, any</i>
ālīquīs (subst. & adj.)	ālīquā	ālīquīd (subst.), <i>some, some one</i>
ālīquī (adj.)	ālīquā	ālīquōd (adj.), <i>some, some one</i>
quīdām (subst. & adj.)	quaedām	{ quiddām (subst.) } <i>a certain</i> { quoddām (adj.) } <i>one</i>

quispiām (subst. & adj.)	quaepiām	{ quidpiām (subst.)	{ some one,
quisquām (subst.)	—	{ quodpiām (adj.)	{ some
quisquē (subst. & adj.)	quaequē	quidquām (subst.),	any one (no pl.)
		{ quidquē (subst.)	{ each one
		{ quodquē (adj.)	{ each one
quivīs (subst. & adj.)	quaevis	quidvis (subst.)	{ any one
		{ quodvis (adj.)	{ you please,
quīlibēt (subst. & adj.)	quaelibēt	quidlibēt (subst.)	{ any one
		{ quodlibēt (adj.)	{ you like

266. They are all declined like the **Interrogatives**, except **āli-**quis, which has in the feminine singular and the neuter plural **ālī-quā**. They take **quid** in the neuter when used substantively, and **quod** when used adjectively; **quisquām**, *any one*, is almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences.

267. **ūnusquisquē**, **ūnāquaeque**, **ūnumquidquē**, **ūnumquodquē**, *each one, every one, each*, is used only in the singular, and both **ūnūs** and **quisquē** are declined: Gen. **ūnūscūjusquē**, Dat. **ūnīcuiquē**, and so on.

268. Akin to *Indefinite Pronouns* are **Indefinite Adjectives**:

ullūs , -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>	āllūs , -ā, -ūd, <i>another</i>
nullūs , -ā, -ūm, <i>no</i>	altēr , -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>
nonnullūs , -ā, -ūm, <i>some</i>	neutēr , -rā, -rūm, <i>neither</i>

To **ullūs** and **nullūs** the corresponding nouns are: **nēmō** (-īnīs), *nobody*, and **nīhīl** (indeclinable), *nothing*.

269. Mark the following **Pronominal Adjectives**:

Demonstrative.	Relative.
tālīs , -ē, <i>such</i>	quālīs , -ē, <i>such as</i>
tantūs , -ā, -ūm, <i>so great</i>	quantūs , -ā, -ūm, <i>as great</i>
tōt , <i>so many</i>	quōt , <i>as many as</i>
Interrogative.	Indefinite.
quālīs , -ē ? <i>what? of what sort?</i>	āliquantūs , -ā, -ūm, <i>some, con-</i>
quantūs , -ā, -ūm ? <i>how great?</i>	<i>siderable</i>
quōt ? <i>how many?</i>	āliquōt , <i>some</i>

Of these **tōt**, **quōt**, **āliquōt** are indeclinable, the rest are declined like adjectives.

They are called **Correlatives**, when used in pairs, so that one refers or answers to the other, as: **tālīs**..**quālīs**, *such*..*as; like*..*like; tantūs*..**quantūs**, *so great*..*as; tōt*..**quōt**, *so many*..*as;*

VERBS.

270. The **Essential Characteristic** of a verb is that it ascribes some action, state, or quality to a subject. Verbs, like Nouns and Pronouns, have their inflection, or changes of form in order to express certain changes of meaning; this inflection is called their **Conjugation**.

The forms of **Conjugation** are:

Voices, *genēra*; **Tenses**, *tempōra*; **Moods**, *mōdi*;
Numbers and **Persons**, *numēri et persōnae*.

Voices.

271. Some verbs are usually followed by an object signifying that at which the action of the verb is directed. They are said to be **Transitive Verbs** and express an assertion in two forms, called the **Active Voice** and the **Passive Voice**.

272. The **Active Voice** denotes that the action proceeds from the subject, as: *canis puērum mordēbat*, *the dog bit the boy*. The **Passive** denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb, as: *puer mordebātur a cane*, *the boy was bitten by the dog*.

273. Other verbs, again, express an action which is limited to the subject, as: *puer currit*, *the boy runs*. They are called **Intransitive Verbs**, and from their nature cannot be regularly used in the **Passive Voice**.

274. Transitive verbs may be used without any expressed object (*absolutely*), as: *puer scribit*, *the boy writes*.

275. A **Reflexive Verb** is one that represents the action as exerted by the subject upon itself. The **Passive Voice** often has a reflexive meaning, as: *occasio datur*, *the occasion offers, presents itself*.

276. The **Active** and **Passive Voices** in Latin are equivalent to the corresponding English forms. Many verbs are only used in the **Passive** form, but with an active or reflexive signification; they are called **Deponents**.

277. Some verbs which form their Perfect like *Deponents*, are called **Semi-Deponents**, as: •

audēō, -ēre, to dare	ausūs sūm, I dared
gaudēō, -ēre, to rejoice	gāvisūs sūm, I rejoiced
solēō, -ēre, to be wont	sōlitūs sūm, I was wont
fidēō, -ēre, to trust	fisūs sūm, I trusted

278. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect **Passive** Participle with **Active** meaning, viz.:

cēnō, -ārē, to dine	cēnātūs, having dined
prandēō, -ārē, to breakfast	pransūs, having breakfasted
pōtō, -ārē, to drink	pōtūs, having drunk
jūrō, -ārē, to swear	jūrātūs, having sworn

279. Again, a few Active verbs have a **Passive** meaning; they are sometimes called **Neutral Passives**, viz.:

vāpūlārē, to be flogged; venīrē (venūm īrē, to go to sale), to be sold.

Tenses.

280. There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

Of Continued Action

the **Present**, as: scribō, I am writing;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: scribebām, I was writing;

the **Future**, as: scribām, I shall write.

Of Completed Action

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: scripsī, I have written (definite), or: I wrote (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: scripsērām, I had written;

the **Future Perfect**, as: scripsērō, I shall have written.

The **Passive** has the same tenses. (For Particulars see *Syntax*.)

Moods.

281. The **Moods** are three, **Indicative**, **Subjunctive**, and **Imperative**.

282. The **Indicative** is used for direct assertions or interrogations, corresponding, without any auxiliary, to the three forms of an English verb, viz.: the **Simple**, **Progressive**, and **Emphatic**, as: scribō, I write, am writing, do write.

283. The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances, as: *amārem, I should love.*

284. The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice, or exhortation*, as: *este diligentes, puēri, be diligent, boys!*

285. These three moods which are limited by *person, number, and time* are called the **Finite Verb**.

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.

286. Outside of the Finite Verb, and partaking of the nature of nouns, are certain **Verbal Forms** which are so important that they are always given with the inflectional forms, as part of the conjugation of the verb.

287. The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**, as: *amāre, to love.*

288. The **Gerund** is a verbal noun of the *Second Declension*, used only in the singular, and wanting the nominative and vocative; it corresponds to the English Participial Infinitive in *ing*, as: *amandī, of loving.*

289. The **Gerundive** differs from the Gerund only in having adjective terminations in *ūs, ā, ūm*, thus: *Gerund, amandī, of loving; Gerundive, amandūs, -ā, -ūm, to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

290. The **Participle** gives, like the English Participle, the meaning of the verb in the form of an Adjective.

291. A Latin verb may have four **Participles**: two in the **Active**, the Present and the Future—*amans, loving; amātūrus, about to love*; and two in the **Passive**, the Perfect, *amātūs, loved*, and the Future, commonly called Gerundive; *amandūs, deserving to be loved.*

292. The **Supine** is a verbal noun of the *Fourth Declension*, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *amātūm, amātū, to love.*

Numbers and Persons.

293. There are two **Numbers**, *Singular* and *Plural*, and three **Persons**: *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

294. The **Personal Endings** for each of the three persons, both singular and plural, active and passive, are as follows:

PERSON.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Sing. 1. <i>I</i>	-ō, -m ām-ō	-r āmō-r
2. <i>thou, you</i>	-s āmā-s	-rīs āmā-rīs
3. <i>he, she, it</i>	-t āmā-t	-tūr āmā-tūr
Plur. 1. <i>we</i>	-mūs āmā-mūs	-mūr āmā-mūr
2. <i>you</i>	-tīs āmā-tīs	-mīnī āmā-mīnī
3. <i>they</i>	-nt āma-nt	-ntūr āma-ntūr

The *Imperative* has the following terminations:

Sing. 2.	-	āmā	-rē	āmā-rē
" 3.	-tō	āmā-tō	-tōr	āmā-tōr
Plur. 2.	-tē, -tōtē	āmā-tē	-mīnī	āmā-mīnī
" 3.	-ntō	āma-ntō	-ntōr	āma-ntōr

The *Perfect Indicative (active)* has the special terminations:

Sing. 2.	-stī	āmāvi-stī	Plur. 2.	-stīs	āmāvi-stīs
			" 3.	-ērunt	āmāv-ērunt

The Four Conjugations.

295. Verbs are inflected in four regular **Conjugations**, distinguished by the ending of the **Present Infinitive Active**, viz.:

- I. **First Conjugation** -ārē; stem ending in ā;
- II. **Second Conjugation** -ērē; " " in ē;
- III. **Third Conjugation** -ērē; " " in a consonant or ū;
- IV. **Fourth Conjugation** -īrē; " " in ī.

296. Besides the **Present Infinitive** we need to know
 the **Present Indicative Active**, *First Person*,
 the **Perfect Indicative Active**, *First Person*,
 the **Former Supine**,

in order to understand the whole inflection of any verb. Hence these four are called the **Principal Parts**

or **Stem-forms**, and in describing any verb these are given. Their regular forms are seen in the following:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
I. āmō	āmārē , to love	āmāvi	āmātūm
II. mōnēō	mōnērē , to advise	mōnūi	mōnītūm
III. lēgō	lēgērē , to read	lēgi	lectūm
IV. audīō	audīrē , to hear	audīvi	audītūm

297. The **Principal Parts** being known, the rest of the conjugation is found by the following rules.

Simple Forms of the Verb.

298. From the **PRESENT INDICATIVE** are formed:

the **Present Subjunctive** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ēm	ām-ō	ām-ēm
II.	-ēō	"	-ēām	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēām
III.	-ō	"	-ām	lēg-ō	lēg-ām
IV.	-īō	"	-īām	aud-īō	aud-īām

the **Imperfect Indicative** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ābām	ām-ō	ām-ābām
II.	-ēō	"	-ēbām	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēbām
III.	-ō	"	-ēbām	lēg-ō	lēg-ēbām
IV.	-īō	"	-īēbām	aud-īō	aud-īēbām

the **Future Indicative** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ābō	ām-ō	ām-ābō
II.	-ēō	"	-ēbō	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēbō
III.	-ō	"	-ām	lēg-ō	lēg-ām
IV.	-īō	"	-īām	aud-īō	aud-īām

the **Present Participle** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ans	ām-ō	ām-ans
II.	-ēō	"	-ens	mōn-ēō	mōn-ens
III.	-ō	"	-ens	lēg-ō	lēg-ens
IV.	-īō	"	-iens	aud-īō	aud-iens

the **Gerundive** (and the **Gerund**) by changing

I.	-ō	into	-andūs	ām-ō	ām-andūs
II.	-ēō	"	-endūs	mōn-ēō	mōn-endūs
III.	-ō	"	-endūs	lēg-ō	lēg-endūs
IV.	-īō	"	-iendūs	aud-īō	aud-iendūs

299. From the PRESENT INFINITIVE are formed:

the Imperfect Subjunctive Active by adding **m**:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| I. āmārē, āmārē-m | III. lēgērē, lēgērē-m |
| II. mōnērē, mōnērē-m | IV. audirē, audirē-m |

the Imperfect Subjunctive Passive by adding **r**:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| I. āmārē, āmārē-r | III. lēgērē, lēgērē-r |
| II. mōnērē, mōnērē-r | IV. audirē, audirē-r |

the Present Imperative Active by dropping **rē**:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| I. āmā-rē, āmā | III. lēgē-rē, lēgē |
| II. mōnē-rē, mōnē | IV. audī-rē, audī |

the Present Imperative Passive identically:

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|
| I. āmārē | II. mōnērē | III. lēgērē | IV. audirē |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|

the Present Infinitive Passive by changing

- | | | | | | |
|------|-----|------|---|---------|---------|
| I. | ē | into | ī | āmār-ē | āmār-ī |
| II. | ē | " | ī | mōnēr-ē | mōnēr-ī |
| III. | ērē | " | ī | lēg-ērē | lēg-ī |
| IV. | ē | " | ī | audīr-ē | audīr-ī |

300. From the PERFECT INDICATIVE are formed:

the Pluperfect Indicative by changing **ī** into **ērām**:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| I. āmāv-ī, āmāv-ērām | III. lēg-ī, lēg-ērām |
| II. mōnū-ī, mōnū-ērām | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-ērām |

the Future Perfect by changing **ī** into **ērō**:

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| I. āmāv-ī, āmāv-ērō | III. lēg-ī, lēg-ērō |
| II. mōnū-ī, mōnū-ērō | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-ērō |

the Perfect Subjunctive by changing **ī** into **ērīm**:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| I. āmāv-ī, āmāv-ērīm | III. lēg-ī, lēg-ērīm |
| II. mōnū-ī, mōnū-ērīm | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-ērīm |

the Pluperfect Subjunctive by changing **ī** into **issēm**:

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| I. āmāv-ī, āmāv-issēm | III. lēg-ī, lēg-issēm |
| II. mōnū-ī, mōnū-issēm | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-issēm |

the Perfect Infinitive by changing **ī** into **issē**:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| I. āmāv-ī, āmāv-issē | III. lēg-ī, lēg-issē |
| II. mōnū-ī, mōnū-issē | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-issē |

301. From the SUPINE are formed:

the **Perfect Participle** by changing ūm into ūs:

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| I. amāt-ūm, amāt-ūs | III. lect-ūm, lect-ūs |
| II. mōnit-ūm, mōnit-ūs | IV. audit-ūm, audit-ūs |

the **Future Participle** by changing ūm into ūrūs:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| I. amāt-ūm, amāt-ūrūs | III. lect-ūm, lect-ūrūs |
| II. mōnit-ūm, mōnit-ūrūs | IV. audit-ūm, audit-ūrūs |

302. Of the active tenses of continued action, viz.: **Present, Imperfect, and Future**, those ending in ō become passive by changing ō into ōr; those ending in m, by changing m into r, as:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| I. am-ō, am-ōr | III. lēg-ō, lēg-ōr |
| amē-m, amē-r | lēgā-m, lēgā-r |
| II. mōnē-ō, mōnē-ōr | IV. audī-ō, audī-ōr |
| mōnēā-m, mōnēā-r | audiā-m, audiā-r |

To TEACHERS. As the *theory* of conjugation is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the *Paradigms themselves* should be made very familiar, before the *systematic study* of the foregoing rules is taken up. At this stage, *AHN-HENN'S Paradigm Charts* exhibiting the *Essentials of Latin Conjugation*, will greatly help in mastering one of the numerous difficulties of the language.

Compound Forms.

303. All the rest are compound forms, made by the aid of the **Auxiliary** verb *essē, to be*:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
sūm	essē, to be	fūī	—
INDICATIVE.			
Present.		Perfect.	
sūm, <i>I am</i>		fūī, <i>I have been (was)</i>	
ēs, <i>thou art</i>		fūī' stī, <i>thou hast been</i>	
est, <i>he, she, it is</i>		fūī' t, <i>he has been</i>	
sū' mūs, <i>we are</i>		fūī' mūs, <i>we have been</i>	
e' stīs, <i>you are</i>		fūī' stīs, <i>you have been</i>	
sunt, <i>they are</i>		fūī' ē' runt, <i>they have been</i>	

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

ě' rām, *I was*
 ě' rās, *thou wast*
 ě' rāt, *he was*
 ě rā' mūs, *we were*
 ě rā' tīs, *you were*
 ě' rant, *they were*

Future.

ě' rō, *I shall be*
 ě' rīs, *thou wilt be*
 ě' rīt, *he will be*
 ě' rī mūs, *we shall be*
 ě' rī tīs, *you will be*
 ě' runt, *they will be*

Pluperfect.

fū' ě rām, *I had been*
 fū' ě rās, *thou hadst been*
 fū' ě rāt, *he had been*
 fū ě rā' mūs, *we had been*
 fū ě rā' tīs, *you had been*
 fū' ě rant, *they had been*

Future Perfect.

fū' ě rō, *I shall have been*
 fū' ě rīs, *thou wilt have been*
 fū' ě rīt, *he will have been*
 fū ě rī mūs, *we shall have been*
 fū ě rī tīs, *you will have been*
 fū' ě rint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sīm, *may I be**
 sīs, *be thou, or may you be*
 sīt, *let him be (may he be)*
 sī' mūs, *let us be*
 sī' tīs, *be ye, or may ye be*
 sint, *let them be (may they be)*

Imperfect.

es' sēm, *I should be (were)*
 es' sēs, *thou wouldst be*
 es' sēt, *he would be*
 es sē' mūs, *we should be*
 es sē' tīs, *you would be*
 es' sent, *they would be*

Perfect.

fū' ě rīm, *I may have been*
 fū' ě rīs, *thou mayest have been*
 fū' ě rīt, *he may have been*
 fū ě rī mūs, *we may have been*
 fū ě rī tīs, *you may have been*
 fū' ě rint, *they may have been*

Pluperfect.

fū is' sēm, *I should have been*
 fū is' sēs, *thou wouldst have been*
 fū is' sēt, *he would have been*
 fū is sē' mūs, *we should have been*
 fū is sē' tīs, *you would have been*
 fū is' sent, *they would have been*

Future.

fū tñ' rūš, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sīm, <i>I may be about to be</i>
		sīs, <i>thou mayest be about to be</i>
		sīt, <i>he may be about to be</i>
fū tñ' rī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sī' mūs, <i>we may be about to be</i>
		sī' tīs, <i>you may be about to be</i>
		sint, <i>they may be about to be</i>

* The rendering of the Subjunctive here given shows the most frequent meanings of its forms when used independently.

	Singular.	Imperative.	Plural.
Present.	ēs, <i>be thou</i>	e' stē, <i>be ye</i>	
Future.	e' stō, <i>thou shalt be</i> e' stō, <i>he shall be</i>	e stō' tē, <i>ye shall be</i> sun' tō, <i>they shall be</i>	

	Infinitive.
Present.	es' sē, <i>to be</i>
Perfect.	fū is' sē, <i>to have been</i>
Future.	fū tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē, or fō'rē, <i>to be about to be</i>
Future Participle.	fū tū' rūis, -ā, -ūm, <i>about to be</i>

304. The Future Perfect is wanting in the Subjunctive which is represented, when necessary, by the Subjunctive of the Perfect or Pluperfect, according to the connection of the sentence.

305. The verb *essē* has no Gerund or Supine, and no Participle but the Future.

[111—114.]

306.		Compounds of <i>essē</i> .		
Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
absūm	ābessē, <i>to be absent, be away</i>	āfūi	—	
adsūm	ādessē, <i>to be present</i>	adfūi	—	
dēsūm	dēessē, <i>to be wanting</i>	dēfūi	—	
insūm	inessē, <i>to be in</i>	infūi	—	
intersūm	intēressē, <i>to be between</i>	interfūi	—	
obsūm	ōbessē, <i>to be in the way</i>	obfūi	—	
praesūm	praeessē, <i>to be over</i>	praefūi	—	
prōsūm	prōdessē, <i>to be useful</i>	prōfūi	—	
subsūm	sūbessē, <i>to be under</i>	wanting	—	
sūpersūm	sūpēressē, <i>to remain over</i>	sūperfūi	—	

307. All these Compounds are conjugated like *sūm*; but *prōsūm* inserts a *d* when *prō* would be followed by *e*, thus:

Present.	Imperf. Indie.	Imperf. Subj.	Future.
prōsūm	prōdērām	prōdessēm	prōdērō
prōdēs	prōdērās	prōdessēs	prōdērīs
prōdest	prōdērāt	prōdessēt	prōdērīt
prōsūmūs	prōdērāmūs	prōdessēmūs	prōdērīmūs
prōdestīs	prōdērātīs	prōdessētīs	prōdērītīs
prōsunt	prōdērant	prōdessent	prōdērunt
Imperative.	Infinitive.		
prōdēs	prōdestē		
prōdestō	prōdestōtē		

308. Neither *sūm* nor any of its compounds has a present participle, except: *praesens*, *-tīs*, *present*; *absens*, *-tīs*, *absent*; *essē* is also compounded with *pōtīs*, *pōtē*, *able*, in the verb *possē*. For its inflection see **401**. [115. 116.]

309. The **Perfect**, **Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect**, and also the **Perfect Infinitive** in the **Passive Voice** are compound forms, made up of the **Perfect Participle** and the verb *essē* as an auxiliary, as:

Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sūm*, *I have been or was loved*

Perf. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm es'sē*, *to have been loved*

Pluperf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērām*, *I had been loved*

Fut. Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērō*, *I shall have been loved*

Fut. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fōrē*, *to be about to be loved*

310. In the compound tenses of the **Passive**, the **Participle** is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb, as:

bellum parātum est, *war has been prepared*.

Periphrastic Conjugation.

311. The **Periphrastic Conjugation** is formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle** (**Active**), and with the **Gerundive** (**Passive**).

312. **Active Periphrastic Conjugation.**

INDICATIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sūm*, *I am about to love*

Imperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērām*, *I was about to love*

Future. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm ērō*, *I shall be about to love*

Perfect. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūi*, *I have been, or was about to love*

Pluperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērām*, *I had been about to love*

Fut. Perf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērō*, *I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm sīm*, *I may be about to love*

Imperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm essēm*, *I should be about to love*

Future. *(wanting)*

Perfect. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūērīm*, *I may have been about to love*

Pluperf. *āmātūrūs*, *-ā*, *-ūm fūissēm*, *I should have been about to*

Fut. Perf. *(wanting)* [love]

INFINITIVE.

- Present.** *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm essē, to be about to love*
Perfect. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm fūissē, to have been about to love*

313. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

- Present.** *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, I have to be loved*
Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm ērām, I had to be loved*
Future. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm ērō, I shall have to be loved*
Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fūi, I (have) had to be loved*
Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fūērām, I had had to be loved*
Fut. Perf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fūērō, I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- Present.** *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm sīm, I may have to be loved*
Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm essēm, I should have to be loved*
Future. *(wanting)*
Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fūērīm, I may have had to be loved*
Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fūissēm, I should have had to be loved*
Fut. Perf. *(wanting)*

INFINITIVE.

- Present.** *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm essē, to have to be loved*
Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fūissē, to have had to be loved*

314. Impersonal Periphrastic Conjugation.

The Neuter of the Gerundive with *est, ērāt, etc.*, is used impersonally, if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendūm est, we or you must live*; *mōriendūm est, we or you must die*. But the person *by whom* may also be added in the dative, thus:

mihi scribendum est, I must or should write
tibi scribendum est, thou must or shouldst write
ei scribendum est, he must or should write
nobis scribendum est, we must or should write
vobis scribendum est, you must or should write
eis scribendum est, they must or should write

[171, 172.]

315. The **Future Infinitive Passive** is a compound form made up of the **Supine** and **Irī** (lit. *to be gone*), which is the *Infinitive Passive* of the verb *Irē, to go*.

- I. *āmātūm Irī*
 II. *mōnītūm Irī*

- III. *lectūm Irī*
 IV. *auditūm Irī*

316. First Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
 āmō, -ārē, *to love*

Perfect.
 āmāvi

Supine.
 āmātūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ā' mō, *I love*
 ā' mās, *thou lovest*
 ā' māt, *he loves*
 ā mā' mūs, *we love*
 ā mā' tīs, *you love*
 ā' mant, *they love*

ā' mēm, *may I love*
 ā' mēs, *love thou*
 ā' mēt, *let him love*
 ā mē' mūs, *let us love*
 ā mē' tīs, *love ye*
 ā' ment, *let them love*

Imperfect.

ā mā' bām, *I was loving*
 ā mā' bās, *thou wast loving*
 ā mā' bāt, *he was loving*
 ā mā bā' mūs, *we were loving*
 ā mā bā' tīs, *you were loving*
 ā mā' bant, *they were loving*

ā mā' rēm, *I should love*
 ā mā' rēs, *thou wouldst love*
 ā mā' rēt, *he would love*
 ā mā rē' mūs, *we should love*
 ā mā rē' tīs, *you would love*
 ā mā' rent, *they would love*

Future.

ā mā' bō, *I shall love*
 ā mā' bīs, *thou wilt love*
 ā mā' bīt, *he will love*
 ā mā' bī mūs, *we shall love*
 ā mā' bī tīs, *you will love*
 ā mā' bunt, *they will love*

ā mā tū' rūś,	{	sīm	{	<i>be about</i>		
-ā, -ūm		sīs				
	sīt					
ā mā tū' rī,	{	sī' mūs			{	<i>to love</i>
-ae, -ā		sī' tīs				
	sit					

Perfect.

ā mā' vī, *I have loved*
 ā mā' vī' stī, *thou hast loved*
 ā mā' vīt, *he has loved*
 ā mā' vī mūs, *we have loved*
 ā mā' vī' stīs, *you have loved*
 ā mā' vē' runt, *they have loved*

ā mā' vē rīm, *I may have loved*
 ā mā' vē rīs, *thou mayest have l.*
 ā mā' vē rīt, *he may have loved*
 ā mā' vē rī mūs, *we may have l.*
 ā mā' vē rī tīs, *you may have l.*
 ā mā' vē rint, *they may have l.*

Pluperfect.

ā mā' vē rām, *I had loved*
 ā mā' vē rās, *thou hadst loved*
 ā mā' vē rāt, *he had loved*
 ā mā' vē rā' mūs, *we had loved*
 ā mā' vē rā' tīs, *you had loved*
 ā mā' vē rant, *they had loved*

ā mā' vis' sēm, *I should have l.*
 ā mā' vis' sēs, *thou wouldst h. l.*
 ā mā' vis' sēt, *he would have l.*
 ā mā' vis sē' mūs, *we should h. l.*
 ā mā' vis sē' tīs, *you would h. l.*
 ā mā' vis' sent, *they would h. l.*

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ā mā' vē rō, <i>I shall have loved</i>	(wanting)
ā mā' vē rīs, <i>thou wilt have loved</i>	
ā mā' vē rīt, <i>he will have loved</i>	
ā mā vē rī mūs, <i>we shall have loved</i>	
ā mā vē rī tīs, <i>you will have loved</i>	
ā mā' vē rint, <i>they will have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Present. ā' mā, <i>love thou</i>	ā mā' tē, <i>love ye</i>
Future. ā mā' tō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	ā mā tō' tē, <i>ye shall love</i>
ā mā' tō, <i>he shall love</i>	ā man' tō, <i>they shall love</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ā mā' rē, <i>to love</i>	
Perfect.	ā mā vis' sē, <i>to have loved</i>	
Fut. Sing. Nom.	ā mā tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē	} <i>to be about to love</i>
" Acc.	ā mā tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	ā mā tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
" Acc.	ā mā tū' rōš, -ās, -ā es' sē	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ā' mans, ā man' tīs, <i>loving</i>
Future.	ā mā tū' rūš, ā mā tū' rā, ā mā tū' rūm, <i>about to love</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. ā man' dī, <i>of loving</i>	
Dat. ā man' dō, <i>for loving</i>	
Acc. ā man' dūm, <i>loving</i>	ā mā' tūm } <i>to love</i>
Abl. ā man' dō, <i>by loving</i>	ā mā' tū }

[117—120.]

317. First Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ā mōr, <i>I am loved</i>	ā' mēr, <i>may I be loved</i>
ā mā' rīs, <i>thou art loved</i>	ā mē' rīs, <i>be thou loved</i>
ā mā' tūr, <i>he is loved</i>	ā mē' tūr, <i>let him be loved</i>
ā mā' mūr, <i>we are loved</i>	ā mē' mūr, <i>let us be loved</i>
ā mā' mī nī, <i>you are loved</i>	ā mē' mī nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
ā man' tūr, <i>they are loved</i>	ā men' tūr, <i>let them be loved</i>

	Singular.	Imperative.	Plural.
Pres.	ă mǎ' rě, <i>be thou loved</i>		ă mǎ' mī nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
Fut.	ă mǎ' tōr, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>		
	ă mǎ' tōr, <i>he shall be loved</i>		ă man' tōr, <i>they shall be loved</i>

	Infinitive.
Present.	ă mǎ' rī, <i>to be loved</i>
Perfect Sing.	Nom. ă mǎ' tūs, -ă, -ūm es' sě
"	Acc. ă mǎ' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě
Plur.	Nom. ă mǎ' tī, -ae, -ă es' sě
"	Acc. ă mǎ' tōs, -ās, -ă es' sě
Future.	ă mǎ' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>

	Participles.
Perfect.	ă mǎ' tūs, ă mǎ' tǎ, ă mǎ' tūm, <i>loved, beloved, or having been loved</i>
Gerundive.	ă man' dūs, ă man' dā, ă man' dūm, <i>to be loved, deserving to be loved</i>

Examples for Practice:

ăgītō, -ărě, <i>to agitate</i>	spērō, -ărě, <i>to hope for</i>
ēdūcō, -ărě, <i>to bring up</i>	occō, -ărě, <i>to harrow</i>
ēvītō, -ărě, <i>to avoid, shun</i>	compārō, -ărě, <i>to compare</i>
administrō, -ărě, <i>to govern</i>	cāvō, -ărě, <i>to (make) hollow</i>
turbō, -ărě, <i>to trouble</i>	lācērō, -ărě, <i>to tear into pieces</i>
conservō, -ărě, <i>to preserve</i>	expugnō, -ărě, <i>to capture</i>
multō, -ărě, <i>to punish</i>	vastō, -ărě, <i>to lay waste</i>

[121. 122.]

318. Second Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
mōnēō, -ērě, <i>to advise</i>	mōntūī	mōnītūm

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.
mō' nē ō, <i>I advise</i>	mō' nē ăm, <i>may I advise</i>
mō' nēs, <i>thou advisest</i>	mō' nē ăs, <i>advise thou</i>
mō' nēt, <i>he advises</i>	mō' nē ăt, <i>let him advise</i>
mō nē' mūs, <i>we advise</i>	mō nē ă' mūs, <i>let us advise</i>
mō nē' tīs, <i>you advise</i>	mō nē ă' tīs, <i>advise ye</i>
mō' nent, <i>they advise</i>	mō' nē ant, <i>let them advise</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

mō nē' bām, <i>I was advising</i>	mō nē' rēm, <i>I should advise</i>
mō nē' bās, <i>thou wast advising</i>	mō nē' rēs, <i>thou wouldst advise</i>
mō nē' bāt, <i>he was advising</i>	mō nē' rēt, <i>he would advise</i>
mō nē' bā' mūs, <i>we were advis'g</i>	mō nē' rē' mūs, <i>we should advise</i>
mō nē' bā' tīs, <i>you were advis'g</i>	mō nē' rē' tīs, <i>you would advise</i>
mō nē' bant, <i>they were advis'g</i>	mō nē' rent, <i>they would advise</i>

Future.

mō nē' bō, <i>I shall advise</i>	mō nī tū' rūš, { sīm	} be about to advise
mō nē' bīs, <i>thou wilt advise</i>	mō nī tū' rūš, { sīs	
mō nē' bīt, <i>he will advise</i>	-ā, -ūm { sīt	
mō nē' bī mūs, <i>we shall advise</i>	mō nī tū' rī, { sī' mūs	
mō nē' bī tīs, <i>you will advise</i>	-ae, -ā { sī' tīs	
mō nē' bunt, <i>they will advise</i>	sint	

Perfect.

mō' nū ī, <i>I (have) advised</i>	mō nū' ē rīm, <i>I may have adv'd</i>
mō nū ī' stī, <i>thou hast advised</i>	mō nū' ē rīs, <i>thou mayest have a.</i>
mō' nū īt, <i>he has advised</i>	mō nū' ē rīt, <i>he may have adv'd</i>
mō nū' ī mūs, <i>we have advised</i>	mō nū' ē rī mūs, <i>we may have a.</i>
mō nū ī' stīs, <i>you have advised</i>	mō nū' ē rī tīs, <i>you may have a.</i>
mō nū' ē' runt, <i>they have advised</i>	mō nū' ē rint, <i>they may have a.</i>

Pluperfect.

mō nū' ē rām, <i>I had advised</i>	mō nū is' sēm, <i>I should have a.</i>
mō nū' ē rās, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	mō nū is' sēs, <i>thou wouldst h. a.</i>
mō nū' ē rāt, <i>he had advised</i>	mō nū is' sēt, <i>he would have a.</i>
mō nū' ē rā' mūs, <i>we had adv'd</i>	mō nū is' sē' mūs, <i>we should h. a.</i>
mō nū' ē rā' tīs, <i>you had adv'd</i>	mō nū is' sē' tīs, <i>you would h. a.</i>
mō nū' ē rant, <i>they had advised</i>	mō nū is' sent, <i>they would h. a.</i>

Future Perfect.

mō nū' ē rō, <i>I shall have advised</i>	(wanting)
mō nū' ē rīs, <i>thou wilt have adv'd</i>	
mō nū' ē rīt, <i>he will have advised</i>	
mō nū' ē rī mūs, <i>we shall have a.</i>	
mō nū' ē rī tīs, <i>you will have a.</i>	
mō nū' ē rint, <i>they will have a.</i>	

	Singular.	IMPERATIVE.	Plural.
Pres.	mō' nē, <i>advise thou</i>		mō nē' tē, <i>advise ye</i>
Fut.	mō nē' tō, <i>thou shalt advise</i> mō nē' tō, <i>he shall advise</i>		mō nē tō' tē, <i>ye shall advise</i> mō nen' tō, <i>they shall advise</i>

		INFINITIVE.	
Pres.		mō nē' rē, <i>to advise</i>	
Perf.		mō nū is' sē, <i>to have advised</i>	
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	mō nī tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē	} <i>to be about to advise</i>
	Acc.	mō nī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur.	Nom.	mō nī tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
	Acc.	mō nī tū' rōš, -ās, -ā es' sē	

	PARTICIPLES.
Pres.	mō' nens, mō nen' tīs, <i>advising</i>
Fut.	mō nī tū' rūš, mō nī tū' rā, mō nī tū' rūm, <i>about to advise</i>

	GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen.	mō nen' dī, <i>of advising</i>	
Dat.	mō nen' dō, <i>for advising</i>	
Acc.	mō nen' dūm, <i>advising</i>	mō' nī tūm } <i>to advise</i>
Abl.	mō nen' dō, <i>by advising</i>	mō' nī tū }

[125. 126]

319. Second Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		Present.
mō' nē ōr,	<i>I am advised</i>	mō' nē ār, <i>may I be advised</i>
mō nē' rīs,	<i>thou art advised</i>	mō nē ā' rīs, <i>be thou advised</i>
mō nē' tūr,	<i>he is advised</i>	mō nē ā' tūr, <i>let him be advised</i>
mō nē' mūr,	<i>we are advised</i>	mō nē ā' mūr, <i>let us be advised</i>
mō nē' mī nī,	<i>you are advised</i>	mō nē ā' mī nī, <i>be ye advised</i>
mō nen' tūr,	<i>they are advised</i>	mō nē an' tūr, <i>let them be adv'd</i>

	Imperfect.
mō nē' bār,	<i>I was advised</i>
mō nē bā' rīs,	<i>thou wast advised</i>
mō nē bā' tūr,	<i>he was advised</i>
mō nē bā' mūr,	<i>we were advised</i>
mō nē bā' mī nī,	<i>you were adv'd</i>
mō nē ban' tūr,	<i>they were adv'd</i>
mō nē' rēr,	<i>I should be advised</i>
mō nē rē' rīs,	<i>thou wouldst b. a.</i>
mō nē rē' tūr,	<i>he would b. a.</i>
mō nē rē' mūr,	<i>we should b. a.</i>
mō nē rē' mī nī,	<i>you would b. a.</i>
mō nē ren' tūr,	<i>they would b. a.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

mō nē' bōr, *I shall be advised*
 mō nē' bē rīs, *thou wilt be adv'd*
 mō nē' bī tūr, *he will be advised*
 mō nē' bī mūr, *we shall be adv'd*
 mō nē' bī' mī nī, *you will be adv'd*
 mō nē' bun' tūr, *they will be a.*

(wanting)

Perfect.

I have been or was advised

I may have been advised

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { sūm
 { ēs
 { est
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { sū' mūs
 { e' stīs
 { sunt

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { sīm
 { sīs
 { sit
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { sī' mūs
 { sī' tīs
 { sint

Pluperfect.

I had been advised

I should have been advised

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { ē' rām
 { ē' rās
 { ē' rāt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { ē' rā' mūs
 { ē' rā' tīs
 { ē' rant

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { es' sēm
 { es' sēs
 { es' sēt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { es' sē' mūs
 { es' sē' tīs
 { es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have been advised

(wanting)

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { ē' rō
 { ē' rīs
 { ē' rīt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { ē' rī mūs
 { ē' rī tīs
 { ē' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. mō nē' rē, *be thou advised*

mō nē' mī nī, *be ye advised*

Fut. mō nē' tōr, *thou shalt be a.*

mō nē' tōr, *he shall be adv.*

mō nen' tōr, *they shall be adv.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mō nē' rī, to be advised	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē	} to have been advised
" Acc.	mō' nī tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
" Acc.	mō' nī tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē	
Fut.	mō' nī tūm ī' rī, to be about to be advised	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	mō' nī tūs, mō' nī tā, mō' nī tūm, advised
Gerundive.	mō nen' dūs, mō nen' dā, mō nen' dūm, to be advised, deserving to be advised

Examples for Practice:

hābēō, -ērē, to have, maintain	dēbēō, -ērē, to owe
ādhibēō, -ērē, to employ, apply	exercēō, -ērē, to exercise
pārēō, -ērē, to obey	nōcēō, -ērē, to hurt, do harm
tācēō, -ērē, to be silent	terrēō, -ērē, to frighten
plācēō, -ērē, to please	vālēō, -ērē, to avail, be well
praebeō, -ērē, to afford, give	cōercēō, -ērē, to restrain

[127. 128.]

320. Third Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
lēgō, -ērē, to read	lēgī	lectūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

lē' gō, I read	lē' gām, may I read
lē' gīs, thou readest	lē' gās, read thou
lē' gīt, he reads	lē' gāt, let him read
lē' gī mūs, we read	lē' gā' mūs, let us read
lē' gī tīs, you read	lē' gā' tīs, read ye
lē' gunt, they read	lē' gant, let them read

Imperfect.

lē' gē' bām, I was reading	lē' gē' rēm, I should read
lē' gē' bās, thou wast reading	lē' gē' rēs, thou wouldst read
lē' gē' bāt, he was reading	lē' gē' rēt, he would read
lē' gē' bā' mūs, we were reading	lē' gē' rē' mūs, we should read
lē' gē' bā' tīs, you were reading	lē' gē' rē' tīs, you would read
lē' gē' bant, they were reading	lē' gē' rent, they would read

INDICATIVE.

lē' gām, *I shall read*
 lē' gēs, *thou wilt read*
 lē' gēt, *he will read*
 lē' gē' mūs, *we shall read*
 lē' gē' tīs, *you will read*
 lē' gent, *they will read*

Future.

lec tū' rūš,	{ sīm sīs sīt	{ be about to read
-ā, -ūm		
lec tū' rī,	{ sī' mūs sī' tīs sint	
-ae, -ā		

Perfect.

lē' gī, <i>I (have) read</i>	lē' gē rīm, <i>I may have read</i>
lē' gī' stī, <i>thou hast read</i>	lē' gē rīs, <i>thou mayest have read</i>
lē' gīt, <i>he has read</i>	lē' gē rīt, <i>he may have read</i>
lē' gī mūs, <i>we have read</i>	lē' gē rī mūs, <i>we may have read</i>
lē' gī' stīs, <i>you have read</i>	lē' gē rī tīs, <i>you may have read</i>
lē' gē' runt, <i>they have read</i>	lē' gē rint, <i>they may have read</i>

Pluperfect.

lē' gē rām, <i>I had read</i>	lē' gis' sēm <i>I should have read</i>
lē' gē rās, <i>thou hadst read</i>	lē' gis' sēs, <i>thou wouldst have read</i>
lē' gē rāt, <i>he had read</i>	lē' gis' sēt, <i>he would have read</i>
lē' gē rā' mūs, <i>we had read</i>	lē' gis' sē' mūs, <i>we should have r.</i>
lē' gē rā' tīs, <i>you had read</i>	lē' gis' sē' tīs, <i>you would have r.</i>
lē' gē rant, <i>they had read</i>	lē' gis' sent, <i>they would have read</i>

Future Perfect.

lē' gē rō, <i>I shall have read</i>	(wanting)
lē' gē rīs, <i>thou wilt have read</i>	
lē' gē rīt, <i>he will have read</i>	
lē' gē rī mūs, <i>we shall have read</i>	
lē' gē rī tīs, <i>you will have read</i>	
lē' gē rint, <i>they will have read</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. lē' gē, <i>read thou</i>	Plur. lē' gī tē, <i>read ye</i>
Fut. " lē' gī tō, <i>thou shalt read</i>	" lē' gī tō' tē, <i>ye shall read</i>
" lē' gī tō, <i>he shall read</i>	" lē' gun' tō, <i>they shall read</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	lē' gē rē, <i>to read</i>	
Perf.	lē' gis' sē, <i>to have read</i>	
Fut. Sing. Nom.	lec tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	{ to be about to read
" Acc.	lec tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	
Plur. Nom.	lec tū' rī, -ae, -ā	
" Acc.	lec tū' rōs, -ās, -ā	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. lē' gens, lē gen' tīs, *reading*

Fut. lec tū' rūis, lec tū' rā, lec tū' rūm, *about to read*

GERUND.

Gen. lē gen' dī, *of reading*

Dat. lē gen' dō, *for reading*

Acc. lē gen' dūm, *reading*

Abl. lē gen' dō, *by reading*

SUPINE.

lec' tūm } *to read*
lec' tū }

[133. 134.]

321. Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

lē' gōr, *I am read*
lē' gē rīs, *thou art read*
lē' gī tūr, *he is read*
lē' gī mūr, *we are read*
lē' gī mī nī, *you are read*
lē' gun' tūr, *they are read*

Present.

lē' gār, *may I be read*
lē' gā' rīs, *be thou read*
lē' gā' tūr, *let him be read*
lē' gā' mūr, *let us be read*
lē' gā' mī nī, *be ye read*
lē' gan' tūr, *let them be read*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

lē' gē' bār, *I was read*
lē' gē bā' rīs, *thou wast read*
lē' gē bā' tūr, *he was read*
lē' gē bā' mūr, *we were read*
lē' gē bā' mī nī, *you were read*
lē' gē ban' tūr, *they were read*
lē' gē rēr, *I should be read*
lē' gē rē' rīs, *thou wouldst be read*
lē' gē rē' tūr, *he would be read*
lē' gē rē' mūr, *we should be read*
lē' gē rē' mī nī, *you would be read*
lē' gē ren' tūr, *they would be read*

Future.

lē' gār, *I shall be read*
lē' gē' rīs, *thou wilt be read*
lē' gē' tūr, *he will be read*
lē' gē' mūr, *we shall be read*
lē' gē' mī nī, *you will be read*
lē' gen' tūr, *they will be read*

(wanting)

Perfect.

I was or have been read

I may have been read

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm { sūm
 { ēs
 { est
lec' tī, -ae, -ā { sū' mūs
 { es' tīs
 { sunt

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm { sīm
 { sīs
 { sīt
lec' tī, -ae, -ā { sī' mūs
 { sī' tīs
 { sint

INDICATIVE.

I had been read

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm	ē' rām
	ē' rās
	ē' rāt
lec' tī, -ae, -ā	ē rā' mūs
	ē rā' tīs
	ē' rant

Pluperfect.

I should have been read

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm	es' sēm
	es' sēs
	es' sēt
lec' tī, -ae, -ā	es sē' mūs
	es sē' tīs
	es' sent

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been read

lec' tūs, -ā, -ām	ē' rō
	ē' rīs
	ē' rīt
lec' tī, -ae, -ā	ē' rī mūs
	ē' rī tīs
	ē' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Pres. lē' gē rē, *be thou read*

Fut. lē' gī tōr, *thou shalt be read*

lē' gī tōr, *he shall be read*

Plural.

lē gī' mī nī, *be ye read*

lē gun' tōr, *they shall be read*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. lē' gī, *to be read*

Perf. Sing. Nom. lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē

“ Acc. lec' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē

Plur. Nom. lec' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē

“ Acc. lec' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē

Fut. lec' tūm ī' rī, *to be about to be read*

} *to have been read*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. lec' tūs, lec' tā, lec' tūm, *read*

Gerundive. lē gen' dūs, lē gen' dā, lē gen' dūm, *to be read, de-serving to be read*

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

ēmō, -ērē, *to buy*

scribō, -ērē, *to write*

āgō, -ērē, *to drive*

ācūō, -ērē, *to whet*

Perfect.

ēmī

scripsī

ēgī

ācūī

Supine.

emptūm

scriptūm

actūm

ācūtūm

322. Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
audīō, -īrē, *to hear*

Perfect.
audīvī

Supine.
audītūm

INDICATIVE.

au' dī ō, *I hear*
au' dīs, *thou hearest*
au' dīt, *he hears*
au dī' mūs, *we hear*
au dī' tīs, *you hear*
au' dī unt, *they hear*

Present.

au' dī ām, *may I hear*
au' dī ās, *hear thou*
au' dī āt, *let him hear*
au dī ā' mūs, *let us hear*
au dī ā' tīs, *hear ye*
au' dī ant, *let them hear*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

au dī ē' bām, <i>I was hearing</i>	au dī' rēm, <i>I should hear</i>
au dī ē' bās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>	au dī' rēs, <i>thou wouldst hear</i>
au dī ē' bāt, <i>he was hearing</i>	au dī' rēt, <i>he would hear</i>
au dī ē bā' mūs, <i>we were hearing</i>	au dī rē' mūs, <i>we should hear</i>
au dī ē bā' tīs, <i>you were hearing</i>	au dī rē' tīs, <i>you would hear</i>
au dī ē' bant, <i>they were hearing</i>	au dī' rent, <i>they would hear</i>

Future.

au' dī ām, <i>I shall hear</i>	au dī tū' rūś, {	} <i>be about to hear</i>
au' dī ēś, <i>thou wilt hear</i>	-ā, -ūm {	
au' dī ēt, <i>he will hear</i>	{	
au dī ē' mūs, <i>we shall hear</i>	si' mūs {	
au dī ē' tīs, <i>you will hear</i>	si' tīs {	
au' dī ent, <i>they will hear</i>	-ae, -ā {	sint }

Perfect.

au dī' vī, <i>I (have) heard</i>	au dī' vē rīm, <i>I may have heard</i>
au dī vi' stī, <i>thou hast heard</i>	au dī' vē rīs, <i>thou mayest have h.</i>
au dī' vīt, <i>he has heard</i>	au dī' vē rīt, <i>he may have heard</i>
au dī' vī mūs, <i>we have heard</i>	au dī vē rī mūs, <i>we may have h.</i>
au dī vi' stīs, <i>you have heard</i>	au dī vē rī tīs, <i>you may have h.</i>
au dī vē' runt, <i>they have heard</i>	au dī' vē rint, <i>they may have h.</i>

Pluperfect.

au dī' vē rām, <i>I had heard</i>	au dī vis' sēm, <i>I should have h.</i>
au dī' vē rās, <i>thou hadst heard</i>	au dī vis' sēs, <i>thou wouldst h. h.</i>
au dī' vē rāt, <i>he had heard</i>	au dī vis' sēt, <i>he would have h.</i>
au dī vē rā' mūs, <i>we had heard</i>	au dī vis sē' mūs, <i>we should h. h.</i>
au dī vē rā' tīs, <i>you had heard</i>	au dī vis sē' tīs, <i>you would h. h.</i>
au dī' vē rant, <i>they had heard</i>	au dī vis' sent, <i>they would h. h.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

au dī' vē rō, *I shall have heard*
 au dī' vē rīs, *thou wilt have heard*
 au dī' vē rīt, *he will have heard*
 au dī vē rī mūs, *we shall have h.*
 au dī vē rī tīs, *you will have h.*
 au dī' vē rint, *they will have h.*

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. au' dī, *hear thou* au dī' tē, *hear ye*
 Fut. au dī' tō, *thou shalt hear* au dī tō' tē, *ye shall hear*
 au dī' tō, *he shall hear* au dī un' tō, *they shall hear*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. au dī' rē, *to hear*
 Perf. au dī vis' sē, *to have heard*
 Fut. Sing. Nom. au dī tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē
 " Acc. au dī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
 Plur. Nom. au dī tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē
 " Acc. au dī tū' rōs, -ās, -ā es' sē

} *to be about to hear*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. au' dī ens, au dī en' tīs, *hearing*
 Future. au dī tū' rūš, au dī tū' rā, au dī tū' rūm, *about to hear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. au dī en' dī, *of hearing*
 Dat. au dī en' dō, *for hearing*
 Acc. au dī en' dūm, *hearing* au dī' tūm } *to hear*
 Abl. au dī en' dō, *by hearing* au dī' tū }

[155. 156.]

323. Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ōr, *I am heard* au' dī ār, *may I be heard*
 au dī' rīs, *thou art heard* au dī ā' rīs, *be thou heard*
 au dī' tūr, *he is heard* au dī ā' tūr, *let him be heard*
 au dī' mūr, *we are heard* au dī ā' mūr, *let us be heard*
 au dī' mī nī, *you are heard* au dī ā' mī nī, *be ye heard*
 au dī un' tūr, *they are heard* au dī an' tūr, *let them be heard*

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

au dī ē' bār, *I was heard* au dī' rēr, *I should be heard*
 au dī ē bā' rīs, *thou wast heard* au dī rē' rīs, *thou wouldst be h.*
 au dī ē bā' tūr, *he was heard* au dī rē' tūr, *he would be heard*
 au dī ē bā' mūr, *we were heard* au dī rē' mūr, *we should be h.*
 au dī ē bā' mī nī, *you were h.* au dī rē' mī nī, *you would be h.*
 au dī ē ban' tūr, *they were h.* au dī ren' tūr, *they would be h.*

Future.

au' dī ār, *I shall be heard* (*wanting*)
 au dī ē' rīs, *thou wilt be heard*
 au dī ē' tūr, *he will be heard*
 au dī ē' mūr, *we shall be heard*
 au dī ē' mī nī, *you will be heard*
 au dī en' tūr, *they will be heard*

Perfect.

<i>I was or have been heard</i>		<i>I may have been heard</i>	
au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ sūm ēs est	au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ sūn sīs sīt
au dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ sū' mūs e' stīs sunt	au dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

Pluperfect.

<i>I had been heard</i>		<i>I should have been heard</i>	
au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ ē' rām ē' rās ē' rāt	au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
au dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ ē rā' mūs ē rā' tīs ē' rant	au dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ es sē' mūs es sē' tīs es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have been heard (*wanting*)
 au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm { ē' rō
 ē' rīs
 ē' rīt
 au dī' tī, -ae, -ā { ē' rī mūs
 ē' rī tīs
 ē' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. au dī' rē, *be thou heard* au dī' mī nī, *be ye heard*

Fut. au dī' tōr, *thou shalt be h.*

au dī' tōr, *he shall be heard* au dī un' tōr, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. au dī' rī, *to be heard*

Perf. Sing. Nom. au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē

“ Acc. au dī' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē

Plur. Nom. au dī' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē

“ Acc. au dī' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē

Fut. au dī' tūm ī' rī, *to be about to be heard*

} *to have been heard*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. au dī' tūs, au dī' tā, au dī' tūm, *heard*

Gerundive. au dī en' dūs, au dī en' dā, au dī en' dūm, *to be heard, deserving to be heard*

Examples for Practice:

dormīō, -īrē, *to sleep*

custōdīō, -īrē, *to guard*

ērūdīō, -īrē, *to instruct*

impēdīō, -īrē, *to hinder*

condīō, -īrē, *to season*

vestīō, -īrē, *to clothe*

lēnīō, -īrē, *to appease*

nūtrīō, -īrē, *to nourish*

pūnīō, -īrē, *to punish*

fīnīō, -īrē, *to finish*

[157. 158.]

Deponent Verbs.

324. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice with an active signification, as: hortōr, hortātūs sūm, hortārī, *to exhort*, the Perfect hortātūs sūm representing at the same time the Supine hortātūm.

325. Deponent Verbs have **Four Participles**:

the **Present Participle**, as: hortans, *exhorting*

the **Perfect Participle**, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*

the **Fut. Part. Act.**, as: hortātūrus, *being about to exhort*

the **Fut. Part. Pass.**, as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

326. The Future Infinitive is always to be given in the active form, thus: hortātūrus essē, *to be about to exhort* (not hortātūm iri).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

I had exhorted

I should have exhorted

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm {
 {
 {
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā {
 {
 {

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm {
 {
 {
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā {
 {
 {

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have exhorted

(wanting)

hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm {
 {
 {
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā {
 {
 {

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. hor tā' rē, *exhort thou* hor tā' nī nī, *exhort ye*
Fut. hor tā' tōr, *thou shalt exhort*
 hor tā' tōr, *he shall exhort* hor tan' tōr, *they shall exhort*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. hor tā' rī, *to exhort*
Perf. Sing. Nom. hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē
 " Acc. hor tā' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
Plur. Nom. hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē
 " Acc. hor tā' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē
Fut. Sing. Nom. hor tā' tū' rūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē
 " Acc. hor tā' tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
Plur. Nom. hor tā' tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē
 " Acc. hor tā' tū' rōs, -ās, -ā es' sē

PARTICIPLES.

Present. hor' tans, hor tan' tīs, *exhorting*
Perfect. hor tā' tūs, hor tā' tā, hor tā' tūm, *having exhorted*
Fut. Act. hor tā' tū' rūs, hor tā' tū' rā, hor tā' tū' rūm, *about to exhort*
Gerundive. hor tan' dūs, hor tan' dā, hor tan' dūm, *to be exhorted*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	hor tan' dī, of exhorting	
Dat.	hor tan' dō, for exhorting	
Acc.	hor tan' dūm, exhorting	hor tās' tūm } to exhort
Abl.	hor tan' dō, by exhorting	hor tās' tū }

Examples for Practice:

piscōr, -ārī, to fish	arbītrōr, -ārī, to regard
īmītōr, -ārī, to imitate	cōnōr, -ārī, to try
rēcōrdōr, -ārī, to remember	cōmītōr, -ārī, to accompany
proellōr, -ārī, to fight	vāgōr, -ārī, to roam
laetōr, -ārī, to rejoice (at)	mīrōr, -ārī, to admire
vēnōr, -ārī, to hunt	mīnōr, -ārī, to threaten

[161. 162.]

328. Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

vērōr, -ērī, to fear

vērītūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I fear
vē' rē ōr
vē rē' rīs
vē rē' tūr
vē rē' mūr
vē rē' mī nī
vē ren' tūr

I may fear
vē' rē ār
vē rē ā' rīs
vē rē ā' tūr
vē rē ā' mūr
vē rē ā' mī nī
vē rē an' tūr

Imperfect.

I was fearing
vē rē' bār
vē rē bā' rīs
vē rē bā' tūr
vē rē bā' mūr
vē rē bā' mī nī
vē rē ban' tūr

I should fear
vē rē' rēr
vē rē rē' rīs
vē rē rē' tūr
vē rē rē' mūr
vē rē rē' mī nī
vē rē ren' tūr

Future.

I shall fear
vē rē' bōr
vē rē' bō rīs
vē rē' bī tūr
vē rē' bī mūr
vē rē bī' mī nī
vē rē bun' tūr

I may be about to fear

vē rī tū' rūs,	{	sīm
-ā, -ūm		sīs
		sīt
vē rī tū' rī,	{	sī' mūs
-ae, -ā		sī' tīs
		sint

INDICATIVE.

I (have) feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sūm ěs est
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sū' mūs e' stīs sunt

Perfect.

I may have feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	sīm sīs sīt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

Pluperfect.

I had feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rā' mūs ě' rā' tīs ě' rant

I should have feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	es' sē' mūs es' sē' tīs es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	{	ě' rō ě' rīs ě' rīt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{	ě' rī mūs ě' rī tīs ě' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. vě' rē' rē, fear thou

vě' rē' mī nī, fear ye

Fut. vě' rē' tōr, thou shalt fear

vě' rē' tōr, he shall fear

vě' ren' tōr, they shall fear

INFINITIVE.

Pres. vě' rē' rī, to fear

Perf. Sing. Nom. vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sē

" Acc. vě' rī tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē

Plur. Nom. vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sē

" Acc. vě' rī tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sē

Fut. Sing. Nom. vě' rī tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sē

" Acc. vě' rī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē

Plur. Nom. vě' rī tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ es' sē

" Acc. vě' rī tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sē

} to have feared

} to be about to fear

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	vě' rens, vě ren' tīs, <i>fearing</i>
Perfect.	vě' rī tūs, vě' rī tā, vě' rī tūm, <i>having feared</i>
Fut. Act.	vě' rī tū' rūs, vě' rī tū' rā, vě' rī tū' rūm, <i>about to fear</i>
Gerundive.	vě ren' dūs, vě ren' dā, vě ren' dūm, <i>to be feared</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	vě ren' dī, <i>of fearing</i>	
Dat.	vě ren' dō, <i>for fearing</i>	
Acc.	vě ren' dūm, <i>fearing</i>	vě' rī tūm } <i>to fear</i>
Abl.	vě ren' dō, <i>by fearing</i>	vě' rī tū }

Examples for Practice:

licēōr, -ērī, <i>to bid</i>	tūēōr, -ērī, <i>to look to</i>
pollicēōr, -ērī, <i>to promise</i>	intūēōr, -ērī, <i>to look at</i>
mērēōr, -ērī, <i>to deserve</i>	rēvēēōr, -ērī, <i>to respect</i>

[163. 164.]

329. Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

sēquōr, -ī, *to follow*

sēcūtūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sē' quōr, *I follow*
sē' quē rīs
sē' quī tūr
sē' quī mūr
sē quī' mī nī
sē quon' tūr

sē' quār, *I may follow*
sē quā' rīs
sē quā' tūr
sē quā' mūr
sē quā' mī nī
sē quan' tūr

Imperfect.

sē quē' bār, *I was following*
sē quē bā' rīs
sē quē bā' tūr
sē quē bā' mūr
sē quē bā' mī nī
sē quē ban' tūr

sē' quē rēr, *I should follow*
sē quē rē' rīs
sē quē rē' tūr
sē quē rē' mūr
sē quē rē' mī nī
sē quē ren' tūr

Future.

I shall follow

sē' quār
sē quē' rīs
sē quē' tūr
sē quē' mūr
sē quē' mī nī
sē quen' tūr

I may be about to follow

sē cū tū' rūs, { sīm
-ā, -ūm { sīs
sīt
sē cū tū' rī, { sī' mūs
-ae, -ā { sī' tīs
sint

INDICATIVE.

I (have) followed

sě cū' tūs, -ā, -ūm	sūm
	ēs
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ā	est
	sū' mūs
	e' stīs
	sunt

Perfect.

I may have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ā, -ūm	sīm
	sīs
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ā	sīt
	sī' mūs
	sī' tīs
	sint

Pluperfect.

I had followed

sě cū' tūs, -ā, -ūm	ě' rām
	ě' rās
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ā	ě' rāt
	ě rā' mūs
	ě rā' tīs
	ě' rant

I should have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ā, -ūm	es' sēm
	es' sēs
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ā	es' sēt
	es sē' mūs
	es sē' tīs
	es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ā, -ūm	ě' rō
	ě' rīs
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ā	ě' rīt
	ě' rī mūs
	ě' rī tīs
	ě' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. sě' quě rě, follow thou

sě quī' mī nī, follow ye

Fut. sě' quī tōr, thou shalt follow

sě' quī tōr, he shall follow

sě quun' tōr, they shall follow

INFINITIVE.

Pres. sě' quī, to follow

Perf. Sing. Nom. sě cū' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sě

“ Acc. sě cū' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě

Plur. Nom. sě cū' tī, -ae, -ā es' sě

“ Acc. sě cū' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sě

} to have followed

Fut. Sing. Nom. sě cū tū' rūs -ā, -ūm es' sě

“ Acc. sě cū tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě

Plur. Nom. sě cū tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' se

“ Acc. sě cū tū' rōs, -ās, -ā es' sě

} to be about to follow

PARTICIPLES.

Present. sē' quens, sē quen' tīs, *following*
Perfect. sē cū' tīs, sē cū' tǎ, sē cū' tūm, *having followed*
Fut. Act. sē cū' tū' rīs, sē cū' tū' rǎ, sē cū' tū' rūm, *about to follow*
Gerundive. sē quen' dīs, sē quen' dǎ, sē quen' dūm, *to be followed*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	sē quen' dī, <i>of following</i>	
Dat.	sē quen' dō, <i>for following</i>	
Acc.	sē quen' dūm, <i>following</i>	sē cū' tūm }
Abl.	sē quen' dō, <i>by following</i>	sē cū' tū } <i>to follow</i>

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.
lōquōr, -ī, <i>to speak</i>	lōcūtūs sūm
frūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy</i>	fructūs sūm
fungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>	functūs sūm

[165. 166.]

330. Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

blandīōr, -īrī

blandītūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

blan' dī ōr, *I flatter*
 blan dī' rīs
 blan dī' tūr
 blan dī' mūr
 blan dī' mī nī
 blan dī un' tūr

blan' dī ār, *I may flatter*
 blan dī ā' rīs
 blan dī ā' tūr
 blan dī ā' mūr
 blan dī ā' mī nī
 blan dī an' tūr

Imperfect.

blan dī ē' bār, <i>I was flattering</i>	blan dī' rēr, <i>I should flatter</i>
blan dī ē' bā' rīs	blan dī rē' rīs
blan dī ē' bā' tūr	blan dī rē' tūr
blan dī ē' bā' mūr	blan dī rē' mūr
blan dī ē' bā' mī nī	blan dī rē' mī nī
blan dī ē' ban' tūr	blan dī ren' tūr

Future.

blan' dī ār, *I shall flatter*
 blan dī ē' rīs
 blan dī ē' tūr
 blan dī ē' mūr
 blan dī ē' mī nī
 blan dī en' tūr

blan dī tū' rīs,	{ sīm	} <i>be about to flatter</i>
-ā, -ūm	{ sīs	
	{ sīt	
blan dī tū' rī,	{ sī' mūs	
-ae, -ā	{ sī' tīs	
	{ sint	

INDICATIVE.

I (have) flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ sūm. ēs est
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ sū' mūs e' stīs sunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I may have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ sīm sīs sīt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ sī' mūs sī' tīs sint

Pluperfect.

I had flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ ē' rām ē' rās ē' rāt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ ē' rā' mūs ē' rā' tīs ē' rant

I should have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ es' sē' mūs es' sē' tīs es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	{ ē' rō ē' rīs ē' rīt
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ā	{ ē' rī mūs ē' rī tīs ē' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE

Singular.

Pres. blan dī' rē, flatter thou

Fut. blan dī' tōr, thou shalt flatter

blan dī' tōr, he shall flatter

Plural.

blan dī' mī nī, flatter ye

blan dī un' tōr, they shall flatter

INFINITIVE.

Pres. blan dī' rī, to flatter

Perf. Sing. Nom.	blan dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm	es' sē	} to have flattered
" Acc.	blan dī' tūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	blan dī' tī, -ae, -ā	es' sē	
" Acc.	blan dī' tōs, -ās, -ā	es' sē	

Fut. Sing. Nom.	blan dī tū' rūs, -ā, -ūm	es' sē	} to be about to flatter
" Acc.	blan dī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	blan dī tū' rī, -ae, -ā	es' sē	
" Acc.	blan dī tū' rōs, -ās, -ā	es' sē	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	blan' dī ens, blan dī en' tīs, <i>flattering</i>
Perfect.	blan dī' tūs, blan dī' tās, blan dī' tūm, <i>having flattered</i>
Fut. Act.	blan dī tū' rūš, blan dī tū' rās, blan dī tū' rūm, <i>about to flatter</i>
Gerundive.	blan dī en' dūs, blan dī en' dās, blan dī en' dūm, <i>to be flattered</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	blan dī en' dī, <i>of flattering</i>	
Dat.	blan dī en' dō, <i>for flattering</i>	
Acc.	blan dī en' dūm, <i>flattering</i>	blan dī' tūm } <i>to flatter</i>
Abl.	blan dī en' dō, <i>by flattering</i>	blan dī' tū }

Examples for Practice:

largiōr, -īrī, <i>to bestow</i>	partiōr, -īrī, <i>to share, divide</i>
mentiōr, -īrī, <i>to lie</i>	pōtiōr, -īrī, <i>to possess one's self</i>
mōliōr, -īrī, <i>to strive</i>	sortiōr, -īrī, <i>to draw lots</i>

[167. 168.]

Appendix to the Third Conjugation.

Verbs in IŌ.

331. Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert **ī** before the ending of the Present, as: cāpērē, *to take*; cāpīō, *I take*. This **ī** appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another **ī** or ē, except in the third person of the future active: cāpiēt, *he will take*.

Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
cāpīō, -ērē, *to take*

Perfect.
cāpī

Supine.
captūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I take
cā' pī ō
cā' pīs
cā' pīt
cā' pī mūs
cā' pī tīs
cā' pī unt

I may take
cā' pī ām
cā' pī ās
cā' pī āt
cā' pī ā' mūs
cā' pī ā' tīs
cā' pī ant

INDICATIVE.

I was taking
cǎ pī ē' bām
cǎ pī ē' bās
cǎ pī ē' bāt
cǎ pī ē bā' mūs
cǎ pī ē bā' tīs
cǎ pī ē' bant

I shall take
cǎ' pī ām
cǎ' pī ēs
cǎ' pī ēt
cǎ pī ē' mūs
cǎ pī ē' tīs
cǎ' pī ent

I have taken or I took
cē' pī (like lēgī)

I had taken
cē' pē rām (like lēgērām)

I shall have taken
cē' pē rō (like lēgērō)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

I might take
cǎ' pē rēm
cǎ' pē rēs
cǎ' pē rēt
cǎ pē rē' mūs
cǎ pē rē' tīs
cǎ' pē rent

Future.

I may be about to take
cap tū' rūis, { sīm
-ā, -ūm { sīs
{ sīt
cap tū' rī, { sī' mūs
-ae, -ā { sī' tīs
{ sint

Perfect.

I may have taken
cē' pē rīm (like lēgērīm)

Pluperfect.

I might have taken
cē pis' sēm (like lēgissēm)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Pres. cǎ' pē, take thou
Fut. cǎ' pī tō, thou shalt take
cǎ' pī tō, he shall take

Plural.

cǎ' pī tē, take ye
cǎ pī tō' tē, ye shall take
cǎ pī un' tō, they shall take

INFINITIVE.

Pres. cǎ' pē rē, to take
Perf. cē pis' sē, to have taken
Fut. Sing. Nom. cap tū' rūis, -ā, -ūm es' sē
" Acc. cap tū' rūim, -ām, -ūm es' sē
Plur. Nom. cap tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē
" Acc. cap tū' rūis, -ās, -ā es' sē } to be about to take

PARTICIPLES.

Present. cǎ' pīens, -tīs, taking
Future. cap tū' rūis, -ā, -ūm, about to take

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	că pī en' dī, <i>of taking</i>
Dat.	că pī en' dō, <i>for taking</i>
Acc.	că pī en' dūm, <i>taking</i>
Abl.	că pī en' dō, <i>by taking</i>

cap' tūm	} <i>to take</i>
cap' tū	

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I am taken

I may be taken

că' pī ōr
că' pē rīs
că' pī tūr
că' pī mūr
că pī' mī nī
că pī un' tūr

că' pī ār
că pī ā' rīs
că pī ā' tūr
că pī ā' mūr
că pī ā' mī nī
că pī an' tūr

Imperfect.

I was taken

I might be taken

că pī ē' bār
că pī ē bā' rīs
că pī ē bā' tūr
că pī ē bā' mūr
că pī ē bā' mī nī
că pī ē ban' tūr

că' pē rēr
că pē rē' rīs
că pē rē' tūr
că pē rē' mūr
că pē rē' mī nī
că pē ren' tūr

Future.

I shall be taken

că' pī ār
că pī ē' rīs
că pī ē' tūr
că pī ē' mūr
că pī ē' mī nī
că pī en' tūr

(wanting)

Perfect.

I was or have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm sūm, &c.

I may have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm sīm, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm ē' rām, &c.

I might have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm es' sēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been taken
cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm ē' rō, &c.

(wanting)

	Singular.	IMPERATIVE.	Plural.
Pres.	că' pē rē, <i>be thou taken</i>		că pī' mī nī, <i>be ye taken</i>
Fut.	că' pī tōr, <i>thou shalt be taken</i>		
	că' pī tōr, <i>he shall be taken</i>		că pī un' tōr, <i>they shall be taken</i>

	INFINITIVE.	
Pres.	că' pī, <i>to be taken</i>	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm es' sē	} <i>to have been taken</i>
" Acc.	cap' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	cap' tī, -ae, -ă es' sē	
" Acc.	cap' tōs, -ās, -ă es' sē	
Fut.	cap' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be taken</i>	

	PARTICIPLES.
Perfect.	cap' tūs, -ă, -ūm, <i>taken</i>
Gerundive.	că pī en' dūs, că pī en' dā, că pī en' dūm, <i>to be taken</i>

332. Verbs of the **Third Conjugation** ending in **īō, īōr**, are the following:

Active Verbs.

căpīō, -ērē, <i>to take</i>	jăcīō, -ērē, <i>to throw</i>
cūpīō, -ērē, <i>to desire</i>	pārīō, -ērē, <i>to bring forth</i>
făcīō, -ērē, <i>to make</i>	quătīō, -ērē, <i>to shake</i>
fōdīō, -ērē, <i>to dig</i>	răpīō, -ērē, <i>to seize</i>
fūgīō, -ērē, <i>to flee</i>	săpīō, -ērē, <i>to be wise</i>

and Compounds of the obsolete

[lăcīō, *I entice*]

[spēcīō, *I see*]

Deponent Verbs.

grădīōr, -ī, *to go*
mōrīōr, -ī, *to die*

pătīōr, -ī, *to suffer*

[137. 138.]

For their Principal Parts see **368**.

Special Forms in Conjugation.

333. The following **Special Forms** are found in many verbs:

Perfects in **āvī, ēvī, ivī**, and the tenses derived from them, drop the **v** before **s** or **r**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **ivī**, which do not admit the contraction of **i-e** before **r**. In like manner **nōvī**, *I know*, and its compounds are contracted.

	āvi		Perfect.	ēvi	
IND.	āmāvistī	āmāstī		dēlēvistī	dēlēstī
	āmāvistīs	āmāstīs		dēlēvistīs	dēlēstīs
	āmāvērunt	āmārunt		dēlēvērunt	dēlērunt
SUBJ.	āmāvērīm	āmārīm, &c.		dēlēvērīm	dēlērīm, &c.
INF.	āmāvissē	āmāssē		dēlēvissē	dēlēssē
Pluperfect.					
IND.	āmāvērām	āmārām, &c.		dēlēvērām	dēlērām, &c.
SUBJ.	āmāvissēm	āmāssēm, &c.		dēlēvissēm	dēlēssēm, &c.
Future Perfect.					
IND.	āmāvērō	āmārō, &c.		dēlēvērō	dēlērō, &c.

	īvi		Perfect.	ōvi	
IND.	audīvistī	audīstī		nōvistī	nōstī
	audīvistīs	audīstīs		nōvistīs	nōstīs
	audīvērunt	audīērunt		nōvērunt	nōrunt
SUBJ.	audīvērīm	audīērīm, &c.		nōvērīm	nōrīm, &c.
INF.	audīvissē	audīssē		nōvissē	nōssē
Pluperfect.					
IND.	audīvērām	audīērām, &c.		nōvērām	nōrām, &c.
SUBJ.	audīvissēm	audīssēm, &c.		nōvissēm	nōssēm, &c.

	Future Perfect.	
IND.	audīvērō	audīērō, &c. nōvērō

Mark that the Future Perfect of nōvi is nōvērō uncontracted.

334. In the Perfect Ind. Act. (3rd pers. plur.) ērē for ērunt is often found, thus:

āmāvērē for āmāvērunt, *they (have) loved*
 mōnūērē “ mōnūērunt, *they (have) advised*
 lēgērē “ lēgērunt, *they (have) read*
 audīvērē “ audīērunt, *they (have) heard*

335. In the second person of the **Passive** we often find **rē** for **ris**, thus:

āmērē for āmērīs, *thou mayest be loved*
 āmābārē " āmābārīs, *thou wast loved*
 āmārērē " āmārērīs, *thou mightest be loved*
 āmābērē " āmābērīs, *thou wilt be loved*

This ending, however, is rarely used in the Present Indicative, but almost exclusively in the Future.

336. The **Imperatives** of dīcērē, *to say*; dūcērē, *to lead*; fācērē, *to make*, and ferrē, *to bear*, are: dīc, dūc, fāc, fēr, respectively. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of fāciō which change ā into ī, as: perficē, *achieve thou* (see 368.).

337. The **Gerund** and **Gerundive** of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of endī, endūs, may end in undī and undūs, especially after ī, as:

cāpiundūs, *to be taken*; rēpētundūs, *to be reclaimed*.

338. For the **Imperative** of scīō, *I know*, the future form scītō is always used in the singular, and scītōtē in the plural.

[169. 170.]

Formation of the Principal Parts.

339. In forming the principal parts of any verb, we take for a starting point its stem, which is either a **Vowel-stem** or a **Consonant-stem**, according as it ends either in a vowel or a consonant.

340. The **First Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in ā, as: āmā-rē, **Stem:** āmā.

341. The **Second Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in ē, as: mōnē-rē, **Stem:** mōnē.

342. The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in ī, as: audī-rē, **Stem:** audī.

343. The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, as: lēg-ērē, **Stem:** lēg; or in u (v), as: stātī-ērē, **Stem:** stātū. Stems in u follow the Consonant-conjugation.

344. As a rule, **Vowel-stems** undergo no change except in some cases the contracting of the final

vowel with the termination, as: *āmō* contracted from *āmā-ō*; they form the Perfect and Supine by adding respectively *vī*, *tūm*, to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
I. <i>āmā-rē</i> , to love	<i>āmā-vī</i>	<i>āmā-tūm</i>
II. <i>dēlē-rē</i> , to destroy	<i>dēlē-vī</i>	<i>dēlē-tūm</i>
IV. <i>audī-rē</i> , to hear	<i>audī-vī</i>	<i>audī-tūm</i>

345. Consonant-stems are liable to various changes which will be considered below under Third Conjugation.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

346. As already explained, the **First Conjugation** contains all the vowel-stems in *ā*, and forms the **Perfect** and **Supine** by adding respectively *vī*, *tūm*, to the stem. Or, in other words, in the First Conjugation the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ō -ārē	-āvī	-ātūm
<i>āmō</i> <i>āmārē</i> , to love	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmātūm</i>

Those **Verbs** of the **First Conjugation** which form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently are the following:

347. Perfect in *ūī*, Supine in *ītūm* (*tūm*).

<i>crēpō</i> , -ārē, to creak	<i>crēpūī</i>	<i>crēpītūm</i>
<i>incrēpō</i> , -ārē, to scold	<i>incrēpūī</i>	<i>incrēpītūm</i>
<i>discrēpō</i> , -ārē, to disagree	<i>discrēpūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>cūbō</i> , -ārē, to lie down	<i>cūbūī</i>	<i>cūbītūm</i>
<i>incūbō</i> , -ārē, to lie upon	<i>incūbūī</i>	<i>incūbītūm</i>
<i>accūbō</i> , -ārē, to lie near	<i>accūbūī</i>	<i>accūbītūm</i>

Some Compounds insert *m*, and are of the **Third Conjugation**.

<i>dōmō</i> , -ārē, to tame	<i>dōmūī</i>	<i>dōmītūm</i>
<i>sōnō</i> , -ārē, to sound	<i>sōnūī</i>	<i>sōnītūm</i> , <i>sōnātūrūs</i>
<i>rēsōnō</i> , -ārē, to resound	<i>rēsōnāvī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>tōnō</i> , -ārē, to thunder	<i>tōnūī</i>	<i>tōnītūm</i>
<i>vētō</i> , -ārē, to forbid	<i>vētūī</i>	<i>vētītūm</i>
<i>fricō</i> , -ārē, to rub	<i>fricūī</i>	<i>fricātūm</i> , <i>frictūm</i>
<i>mīcō</i> , -ārē, to shine	<i>mīcūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēmīcō</i> , -ārē, to shine forth	<i>ēmīcūī</i>	<i>ēmīcātūm</i>
<i>dīmīcō</i> , -ārē, to fight	<i>dīmīcāvī</i>	<i>dīmīcātūm</i>

[plicō, *I fold*] *

applicō, -ārē, to apply	{ applicāvī applicūī	applicātūm applicītūm
explicō, -ārē, to unfold	{ explicāvī explicūī	explicātūm explicītūm
implicō, -ārē, to involve	{ implicāvī implicūī	implicātūm implicītūm

Compounds in -plicō from nouns in -plex are regular, as: multiplicō, -ārē, to multiply, from multiplex.

pōtō, -ārē, to drink	pōtāvī	pōtūm
sēcō, -ārē, to cut	sēcūī	sectūm, sēcātūrūs
dēsēcō, -ārē, to cut down	dēsēcūī	dēsectūm
ēnēcō, -ārē, to slay	{ ēnēcāvī ēnēcūī	ēnēcātūm ēnectūm

348. Perfect in I, Supine in tūm

with lengthened stem-vowel.

jūvō, -ārē	{	jūvī	jūtūm
adjūvō, -ārē	{ to assist	adjūvī	adjūtūm
Fut. Participles: jūvātūrūs, but adjūtūrūs or adjūvātūrūs			
lāvō, -ārē, to wash		lāvī	lāvātūm (lautūm, lōtūm)

349. With Reduplicated Perfect.

Some Verbs of the *First, Second and Third Conjugations* repeat in the *Perfect* the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it, or with ē. Compound Verbs omit the reduplication, but Compounds of dō, *I give*; stō, *I stand*; discō, *I learn*; poscō, *I demand*, and some of those of currō, *I run*, retain it.

dō, -ārē, to give	dēdī	dātūm
circumdō, -ārē, to surround	circumdēdī	circumdātūm
pessumdō, -ārē, to ruin	pessumdēdī	pessumdātūm
sātisdō, -ārē, to give bail	sātisdēdī	sātisdātūm
vēnumdō, -ārē, to sell	vēnumdēdī	vēnumdātūm

a is everywhere short, except in dās, thou givest; dā, give thou.

Like dō, are conjugated the Compounds with words of *two syllables*, as: circumdō, *I surround*. The Compounds with words of *one syllable* pass over into the *3d Conjugation*.

* Obsolete forms are inclosed within brackets [].

stō, stārē, to stand	stētī	stētūm
antistō, -ārē, to excel	antistētī	wanting
circumstō, -ārē, to stand around	circumstētī	wanting
constō, -ārē, to consist	constītī	wanting
praestō, -ārē, to afford	praestītī	wanting
distō, -ārē, to be distant	wanting	wanting
exstō, -ārē, to exist	wanting	wanting

Like **antistō**, all Compounds of **stārē** with prepositions of two syllables have **stētī** in the Perfect, but no Supine. Those compounded with prepositions of one syllable have **stītī** in the Perfect, and likewise no Supine. **distō** and **exstō** have neither Perfect nor Supine. [123. 124.]

350. More than half of all Deponents in the language are of the First Conjugation, and all of these are regular (see 327).

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

351. The Second Conjugation, as we have seen, includes all verbs whose stem ends in ē. In these the Perfect and Supine regularly add **vī**, **tūm** to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
dēlē-rē, to destroy	dēlē-vī	dēlē-tūm

352. However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the stem-vowel ē in the Perfect, **vī** becomes **ūī**, and in the Supine **i** is inserted before **tūm**; thus:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ēō -ērē	-ūī	-ītūm
mōnēō mōnērē, to advise	mōnūī	mōnītūm

This is considered the Regular formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

353. Many verbs with a regular Perfect in **ūī** want the Supine. Such are:

arcēō, -ērē, to keep off	horrēō, -ērē, to shudder
ārēō, -ērē, to be dry	languēō, -ērē, to be weary
callēō, -ērē, to be versed	lātēō, -ērē, to be hid
candēō, -ērē, to shine	liquēō, -ērē, to be fluid
ēgēō, -ērē	mādēō, -ērē, to be wet
indīgēō, -ērē } to be in want	nītēō, -ērē, to glitter
ēmīnēō, -ērē, to be prominent	ōlēō, -ērē, to smell
flōrēō, -ērē, to blossom	pallēō, -ērē, to look pale

pātēō, -ērē, to stand open	stūdēō, -ērē, to busy one's self
rīgēō, -ērē, to be stiff	stūpēō, -ērē, to be amazed
rūbēō, -ērē, to be red	succensēō, -ērē, to be angry
silēō, -ērē, to be silent	tīmēō, -ērē, to fear
sorbēō, -ērē, to sip	torpēō, -ērē, to be numb
sordēō, -ērē, to be dirty	tūmēō, -ērē, to swell
splendēō, -ērē, to gleam	vīgēō, -ērē, to be vigorous
vīrēō, -ērē, to be green	

354. Some verbs, derived mostly from Adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine:

albēō, -ērē, to be white	flāvēō, -ērē, to be golden yellow
āvēō, -ērē, to long for	hēbēō, -ērē, to be blunt
calvēō, -ērē, to be bald	pollēō, -ērē, to be powerful
hūmēō, -ērē, to be moist	maerēō, -ērē, to grieve
imminēō, -ērē, to threaten	rēnīdēō, -ērē, to shine
livēō, -ērē, to be pale	scātēō, -ērē, to gush
cānēō, -ērē, to be gray	squālēō, -ērē, to be filthy

[125. 126.]

355. A great many Verbs of the Second Conjugation deviate from the regular formation mentioned in 352.

356. Perfect in ēvī, Supine in ētūm (ītūm, tūm):

dēlēō, -ērē, to destroy	dēlēvī	dēlētūm
flēō, -ērē, to weep	flēvī	flētūm
nēō, -ērē, to spin	nēvī	nētūm
[plēō, I fill]		
complēō, -ērē	complēvī	complētūm
implēō, -ērē	implēvī	implētūm
rēplēō, -ērē	rēplēvī	rēplētūm
[ōlēō, I grow]		
obsōlēō, -ērē, to go out of use	obsōlēvī	obsōlētūm
ābōlēō, -ērē, to abolish	ābōlēvī	ābōlītūm
ādōlēō, -ērē, to grow up	ādōlēvī	ādultūm

357. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm:

cāvēō, -ērē, to be on one's guard	cāvī	cautūm
fāvēō, -ērē, to favor	fāvī	fautūm
fōvēō, -ērē, to cherish	fōvī	fōtūm
mōvēō, -ērē, to move, trouble	mōvī	mōtūm
vōvēō, -ērē	vōvī	vōtūm
dēvōvēō, -ērē	dēvōvī	dēvōtūm

pāvēō, -ērē, to quake for fear	pāvī	wanting
fervēō, -ērē, to glow	{ fervī ferbūī }	wanting
cōnīvēō, -ērē, to shut the eyes	{ cōnīvī cōnīxī }	wanting

358. Dropping the I of the Supine:

dōcēō, -ērē, to teach	dōcūī	doctūm
tēnēō, -ērē, to hold	tēnūī	(tentūm)
obtīnēō, -ērē, to occupy	obtīnūī	obtentūm
attīnēō, -ērē, to belong	attīnūī	wanting
pertīnēō, -ērē, to pertain	pertīnūī	wanting
abstīnēō, -ērē, to abstain	abstīnūī	wanting
contīnēō, -ērē, to hold together	contīnūī	wanting
miscēō, -ērē, to mix, mingle	miscūī	{ mixtūm mistūm }
torrēō, -ērē, to roast	torrūī	tostūm
censēō, -ērē, to value, think	censūī	censūm
rēcensēō, -ērē, to review	rēcensūī	{ rēcensūm rēcensītūm }
percensēō, -ērē, to survey	percensūī	wanting

359. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

augēō, -ērē, to increase	auxī	auctūm
indulgēō, -ērē, to indulge	indulsī	indultūm
torquēō, -ērē, to torture	torsī	tortūm
lūcēō, -ērē, to shine	luxī	wanting
lūgēō, -ērē, to mourn	luxī	wanting
frīgēō, -ērē, to be cold	frīxī	wanting

[129. 130.]

360. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:

ardēō, -ērē, to burn	arsī	arsūm
haerēō, -ērē, to hang	haesī	haesūm
adhærēō, -ērē	adhæsī	adhæsūm
cōhaerēō, -ērē	cōhaesī	cōhaesūm
jūbēō, -ērē, to order	jussī	jussūm
mānēō, -ērē, to stay, remain	mansī	mansūm
rēmānēō, -ērē, to remain	rēmansī	rēmansūm
mulcēō, -ērē, to soothe	mulsi	mulsūm
permulcēō, -ērē, to appease	permulsi	permulsūm
mulgēō, -ērē, to milk	mulsi	mulsūm

ridĕō, -ĕrĕ, to laugh	risī	risūm
arridĕō, -ĕrĕ, to smile upon	arrisī	arrisūm
dĕridĕō, -ĕrĕ, to laugh at	dĕrisī	dĕrisūm
suādĕō, -ĕrĕ, to advise	suāsī	suāsūm
dissuādĕō, -ĕrĕ, to dissuade	dissuāsī	dissuāsūm
persuādĕō, -ĕrĕ, to persuade	persuāsī	persuāsūm
tergĕō, -ĕrĕ	tersī	tersūm
tergō, -ĕrĕ		
abstergĕō, -ĕrĕ, to wipe off	abstersī	abstersūm

Compounds only take the *Second Conjugation*.

algĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be cold	alsī	<i>wanting</i>
fulgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to shine	fulsī	<i>wanting</i>
turgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to swell	tursī	<i>wanting</i>
urgĕō, -ĕrĕ, to urge	ursī	<i>wanting</i>

361. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm:

prandĕō, -ĕrĕ, to breakfast	prandī	pransūm
Participle pransūs, in an active sense, <i>having breakfasted</i>		
sĕdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to sit	sĕdī	sessūm
circumsĕdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to sit around	circumsĕdī	circumsessūm
sūpersĕdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to forbear	sūpersĕdī	sūpersessūm
assīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to sit by	assĕdī	assessūm
insīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to sit upon	insĕdī	insestūm
obsīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to besiege	obsĕdī	obsestūm
possīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to possess	possĕdī	possessūm
dissīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to disagree	dissĕdī	<i>wanting</i>
praesīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to preside	praesĕdī	<i>wanting</i>
rĕsīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to remain behind	rĕsĕdī	<i>wanting</i>
vidĕō, -ĕrĕ, to see	vidī	vīsūm
invidĕō, -ĕrĕ, to envy	invidī	invisūm
prōvidĕō, -ĕrĕ, to provide	prōvidī	prōvisūm
strīdĕō, -ĕrĕ, to whiz, creak	stridī	<i>wanting</i>

With Reduplication:

mordĕō, -ĕrĕ, to bite	mōmordī	morsūm
pendĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hang	pĕpendī	pensūm
dĕpendĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hang down	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
impĕndĕō, -ĕrĕ, to hang over	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
spondĕō, -ĕrĕ, to pledge	spōpondī	sponsūm
respondĕō, -ĕrĕ, to answer	respondī	responsūm
despondĕō, -ĕrĕ, to promise	despondī	desponsūm
tondĕō, -ĕrĕ, to shear	tōtondī	tonsūm

Reduplication, or the repetition of the initial consonant with the following vowel, is generally dropped in Compounds, as: re-spondi.

362. Mark the solitary verb:

cīĕō, -ĕrĕ	} <i>to rouse</i>	cīvī	cītūm	} 4th Conjugation.
cīō, -īrĕ		cīvī	cītūm	
accīō, -īrĕ, <i>to call in</i>	accīvī	accītūm		
conclō, -īrĕ, <i>to call together</i>	conclīvī	conclītūm		

363. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation form the tenses of completed action like the Passive; they are called **Semi-Deponents** (see 277):

andĕō, -ĕrĕ, to dare	ausūs sūm, I dared
gaudĕō, -ĕrĕ, to rejoice	gāvisūs sūm, I rejoiced
sōlĕō, -ĕrĕ, to be wont	sōlītūs sūm, I was wont

[131. 132.]

364. Deponent Verbs.

Pres. Ind. & Inf.	Perfect.
fātĕōr, -ĕrī, to confess	fassūs sūm
confītĕōr, -ĕrī, to confess	confessūs sūm
diffītĕōr, -ĕrī, to disavow	diffessūs sūm
mĕdĕōr, -ĕrī, to cure	wanting
mīsĕrĕōr, -ĕrī, to have pity	mīsĕrītūs, mīsĕrtūs sūm
rĕōr, -ĕrī, to think	rātūs sūm

[163. 164.]

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

365. The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs with stems ending in **u (v)**, or one of the consonants. The **Regular Forms** of the Third Conjugation are seen in the following:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
ācū-ĕrĕ, to sharpen	ācū-ī	ācū-tūm
ĕd-ĕrĕ, to eat	ĕd-ī	ĕ-sūm
carp-ĕrĕ, to pluck	carp-sī	carp-tūm

Stems in **u** take **ī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*. Consonant-stems take in the *Perfect* partly **ī**, partly **sī**; and in the *Supine* partly **tūm**, partly **sūm**.

A few verbs in **ūō** belong to the *First Conjugation*, as: fluctū-ō, -ārĕ, to wave.

STEMS in u (v).

366. Perfect in I, Supine in tūm:

ācūō, -ērē, to sharpen	ācūī	ācūtūm
Perf. Part. wanting; ācūtūs, sharp, is adjective only.		
argūō, -ērē, to accuse	argūī	(argūtūm)
cōargūō, -ērē, to convict	cōargūī	wanting
rēdargūō, -ērē, to refute	rēdargūī	wanting
imbūō, -ērē, to dip, dye	imbūī	imbūtūm
indūō, -ērē, to put on	indūī	indūtūm
exūō, -ērē, to put off	exūī	exūtūm
lūō, -ērē, to atone for	lūī	(lūtūm)
lūō, -ērē, to wash	lūī	lūtūm
ablūō, -ērē, to wash (off)	ablūī	ablūtūm
mīnūō, -ērē	mīnūī	mīnūtūm
imminūō, -ērē	imminūī	imminūtūm
[nūō, I nod]		
abnūō, -ērē, to dissent	abnūī	wanting
adnūō, -ērē, to nod assent	adnūī	wanting
rūō, -ērē, to rush forth	rūī	rūtūm
corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground	corrūī	wanting
dirūō, -ērē, to destroy	dirūī	dirūtūm
ērūō, -ērē, to dig out	ērūī	ērūtūm
obrūō, -ērē, to cover	obrūī	obrūtūm
spūō, -ērē, to spit	spūī	spūtūm
stātūō, -ērē, to set, place	stātūī	stātūtūm
restītūō, -ērē, to restore	restītūī	restītūtūm
sūō, -ērē, to sew	sūī	sūtūm
tribūō, -ērē, to give, confer on	tribūī	tribūtūm
contribūō, -ērē, to contribute	contribūī	contribūtūm
distribūō, -ērē, to distribute	distribūī	distribūtūm
solvō, -ērē, to loose	solvī	sōlūtūm
absolvō, -ērē, to acquit	absolvī	absōlūtūm
volvō, -ērē, to roll, turn	volvī	vōlūtūm
[grūō or rūō ?]		
ingrūō, -ērē, to rush	ingrūī	wanting
congrūō, -ērē, to agree	congrūī	wanting
mētūō, -ērē, to fear	mētūī	wanting
plūō, -ērē, to rain	plūī	wanting
sternūō, -ērē, to sneeze	sternūī	wanting

367. The following stems in *u, v* form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently:

vivō, -ērē, to live	vixī	victūm
struō, -ērē, to build	struxī	structūm
construō, -ērē, to construct	construxī	constructūm
instruō, -ērē, to instruct	instruxī	instructūm
fluō, -ērē, to flow	fluxī	fluxūm
refluō, -ērē, to flow back	refluxī	refluxūm

[135. 136.]

VERBS in IŌ.

368. Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert **I** before the ending of the Present, as: cāpērē, to take; cāpīō, I take. This **I** appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another **I** or ē, except in the third person of the future active: capīēt, he will take (see 331).

cāpīō, -ērē, to take	cēpī	captūm
accēpīō, -ērē, to receive	accēpī	acceptūm
dēcēpīō, -ērē, to deceive	dēcēpī	dēceptūm
incēpīō, -ērē, to begin	incēpī	inceptūm
fācīō, -ērē, to do, make	fēcī	factūm
pātēfācīō, -ērē, to open	pātēfēcī	pātēfactūm
conficīō, -ērē, to make	confēcī	confectūm
interficīō, -ērē, to kill	interfēcī	interfectūm
perficīō, -ērē, to finish	perfēcī	perfectūm

The verb **fācērē, to do, make**, deserves special notice:

It has for its **Passive** fīō, factūs sūm, fīērī, to be made, become (see 411). Its **Imperative** is fāc, do.

The same rule applies to those Compounds of fācīō, which retain ā, as: pātēfācīō, I open; **Pass.** pātēfīō, I am opened; **Imperat.** pātēfāc, open. The Compounds of fācīō with **Prepositions** change ā to I, and are inflected regularly, as: interficīō, I kill; **Pass.** interficīōr; **Imperat.** interficē.

jācīō, -ērē, to throw, cast	jēcī	jactūm
objicīō, -ērē, to throw to	objēcī	objectūm
subjicīō, -ērē, to subject	subjēcī	subjectūm
[lācīō, I entice]		
allicīō, -ērē } to allure,	allexī	(allectūm)
pellicīō, -ērē } entice	pellexī	pellectūm
ēlicīō, -ērē, to entice out	ēlicī	ēlicītūm

[spēcīō, *I see*]

aspīcīō, -ērē, *to look*
despīcīō, -ērē, *to despise*
respīcīō, -ērē, *to consider*
cūpīō, -ērē, *to wish, desire*
fōdīō, -ērē, *to dig*
confōdīō, -ērē, *to pick out*
effōdīō, -ērē, *to dig out*
fūgīō, -ērē, *to flee or fly*
pārīō, -ērē, *to bring forth*

quātīō, -ērē, *to shake*
concūtīō, -ērē, *to shake*
rāpīō, -ērē, *to snatch away*
arrīpīō, -ērē, *to seize*
sāpīō, -ērē, *to be wise*
dēsīpīō, -ērē, *to be foolish*

asperi
desperi
resperi
cūpīvi
fōdī
confōdī
effōdī
fūgī
pēperi
aspectum
despectum
respectum
cūpītum
fossūm
confossūm
effossūm
fūgītum
partūm

Fut. Part.

parītūrū
quassūm
concussūm
raptūm
arreptūm
wanting
concussī
rāpūī
arrīpūī
sāpīvi, sāpūī
wanting
wanting

[137. 138.]

STEMS in d, t.

369. As a rule, stems in **d, t** have **sī** in the Perfect, **sūm** in the Supine. Before the **s** of the Perfect and Supine, **d** and **t** are dropped or become by assimilation **ss**.

370. The repetition of the initial consonant with the vowel following it or with **ē** (**Reduplication**) is especially common in the formation of the Perfect of the 3d Conjugation; as:

pendō, *I weigh*, pēpendī; cādō, *I fall*, cēcīdī.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in **ī**.

Compound verbs omit the reduplication, but the Compounds of dō, *I give*; stō, *I stand*; discō, *I learn*; poscō, *I demand*, and some of those of currō, *I run*, retain it.

371. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm.

claudō, -ērē, *to shut, close*
conclūdō, -ērē, *to shut up*
dīvidō, -ērē, *to divide, separate*
laedō, -ērē, *to violate, hurt*
allīdō, -ērē, *to dash against*
collīdō, -ērē, *to dash together*
ēlīdō, -ērē, *to strike out*

clausī
conclūsī
dīvisī
laesī
allīsī
collīsī
ēlīsī
clausūm
conclūsūm
dīvisūm
laesūm
allīsūm
collīsūm
ēlīsūm

lūdō, -ērē, to play	lūsī	lūsūm
illūdō, -ērē, to mock	illūsī	illūsūm
plaudō, -ērē, to applaud	plausī	plausūm
applaudō, -ērē, to applaud	applausī	applausūm
explōdō, -ērē, to hiss off	explōsī	explōsūm
rādō, -ērē, to scrape	rāsī	rāsūm
rōdō, -ērē, to gnaw	rōsī	rōsūm
trūdō, -ērē, to thrust	trūsī	trūsūm
vādō, -ērē, to go	wanting	wanting
evādō, -ērē, to turn out	evāsī	evāsūm

With Reduplication:

cādō, -ērē, to fall	cēcīdī	cāsūm
occīdō, -ērē, to set	occīdī	occāsūm
incīdō, -ērē, to fall into	incīdī	wanting

Other Compounds of cādō want the *Supine*.

caedō, -ērē, to fell	cēcīdī	caesūm
dēcidō, -ērē, to cut down	dēcīdī	dēcīsūm
excīdō, -ērē, to hew out	excīdī	excīsūm
incīdō, -ērē, to engrave	incīdī	incīsūm
occīdō, -ērē, to kill	occīdī	occīsūm
pendō, -ērē, to weigh	pēpendī	pensūm
suspendō, -ērē, to hang	suspendī	suspensūm
tendō, -ērē, to spread	tētendī	tensūm & tentūm
attendō, -ērē, to attend to	attendī	attendūm
contendō, -ērē, to exert	contendī	contentūm
extendō, -ērē, to stretch out	extendī	extensūm & extentūm
ostendō, -ērē, to show	ostendī	ostensūm
tundō, -ērē, to thump	tūtūdī	tūsūm & tunsūm
contundō, -ērē, to break down	contūdī	contūsūm
obtundō, -ērē, to stun	obtūdī	obtūsūm

372. Compounds of *dārē* with *monosyllabic* words pass over into the *Third Conjugation*:

crēdō, -ērē, to believe	crēdīdī	crēdītūm
vendō, -ērē, to sell	vendīdī	vendītūm
condō, -ērē, to build	condīdī	condītūm

abscondō, -ērē, <i>to hide</i>	abscondī	absconditūm
edō, -ērē, <i>to give out</i>	edidī	editūm
perdō, -ērē, <i>to ruin</i>	perdidī	perditūm
reddō, -ērē, <i>to give back</i>	reddidī	redditūm
trādō, -ērē, <i>to deliver</i>	trādidī	trāditūm

[139. 140.]

373. Perfect in I, Supine in sūm.

The Stem of many verbs of this class appears in the *Present* strengthened by *n*, as: fundō, Stem fūd. Stems in *nd* take *i* in the *Perfect*.

[candō, <i>I burn</i>]		
accendō, -ērē, <i>to kindle</i>	accendī	accensūm
cūdō, -ērē, <i>to forge</i>	cūdī	cūsūm
edō, -ērē, <i>to eat</i>	edī	esūm
[fendō, <i>I fend</i>]		
dēfendō, -ērē, <i>to defend</i>	dēfendī	dēfensūm
offendō, -ērē, <i>to offend</i>	offendī	offensūm
mandō, -ērē, <i>to chew</i>	mandī	mansūm
prēhendō, -ērē, <i>to seize</i>	prēhendī	prēhensūm
scandō, -ērē, <i>to climb</i>	scandī	scansūm
ascendō, -ērē, <i>to ascend</i>	ascendī	ascensūm
fundō, -ērē, <i>to pour</i>	fūdī	fūsūm
circumfundō, -ērē, <i>to surround</i>	circumfūdī	circumfūsūm
diffundō, -ērē, <i>to pour forth</i>	diffūdī	diffūsūm
effundō, -ērē, <i>to pour out</i>	effūdī	effūsūm
vertō, -ērē, <i>to turn</i>	vertī	versūm
ēvertō, -ērē, <i>to overthrow</i>	ēvertī	ēversūm
stertō, -ērē, <i>to snore</i>	stertūī	wanting

The only **Semi-Deponent** Verb of the Third Conjugation belongs to this class:

fīdō, -ērē	} <i>to trust, confide</i>	fīsūs sūm
confīdō, -ērē		confīsūs sūm

374. Various Irregularities:

cēdō, -ērē, <i>to yield</i>	cessī	cessūm
accēdō, -ērē, <i>to approach</i>	accessī	accessūm
fīndō, -ērē, <i>to split, cleave</i>	fīdī	fīssūm

scindō, -ērē, to cut	scīdī	scissūm
discindō, -ērē, to split	discīdī	discissūm
excindō, -ērē, to destroy	excīdī	excisūm
abscindō, -ērē, to tear off	abscīdī	abscisūm
excindō takes <i>Perfect</i> and <i>Supine</i> from caedō, abscindō the <i>Supine</i> .		
mētō, -ērē, to reap	messūī	messūm
mittō, -ērē, to send	misī	missūm
āmītō, -ērē, to lose	āmīsī	āmissūm
admittō, -ērē, to admit	admisī	admissūm
committō, -ērē, to commit	commīsī	commissūm
permittō, -ērē, to permit	permīsī	permissūm
prōmittō, -ērē, to promise	prōmisī	prōmissūm
pandō, -ērē, to spread	pandī	passūm
pētō, -ērē, to seek	pētīvī, pētīī	pētītūm
rēpētō, -ērē, to repeat	rēpētīvī	rēpētītūm
sīdō, -ērē, to sit down	sēdī	wanting
assīdō, -ērē, to sit down	assēdī	assessūm
consīdō, -ērē, to settle	consēdī	consessūm
sistō, -ērē, to stop	stītī	stātūm
obsistō, -ērē, to oppose	obstītī	obstītūm

Other Compounds want *Supine*:

absistō, -ērē, to cease	abstītī	wanting
adsistō, -ērē, to stand by	adstītī	wanting
exsistō, -ērē, to come forth	exstītī	wanting

[141. 142.]

STEMS in b, p.

375. Stems in **b**, **p** take **sī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*; at the same time **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**, as: nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm. The stem of many verbs appears in the *Present* strengthened by **m**, as: rumpō, rūpī.

glūbō, -ērē, to peel	(glupsī)	gluptūm
dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin	(dēglupsī)	dēgluptūm
nūbō, -ērē, to marry	nupsī	nuptūm
scribō, -ērē, to write	scripsī	scriptūm
conscribō, -ērē, to frame	conscripsī	conscriptūm
describō, -ērē, to describe	descripsī	descriptūm
praescribō, -ērē, to prescribe	praescripsī	praescriptūm
carpō, -ērē, to pluck	carpsī	carptūm
dēcerpō, -ērē, to pluck	dēcerpsī	dēcerptūm
discerpō, -ērē, to tear asunder	discerpsī	discerptūm

rēpō, -ērē, to creep, crawl	repsī	reptūm
irrepō, -ērē, to creep into	irrepsī	irreptūm
scalpō, -ērē, to carve	scalpsī	scalptūm
sculpō, -ērē, to chisel	sculpsī	sculptūm
serpō, -ērē, to creep	serpsī	(serptūm)

376.

Irregular:

accumbō, -ērē, to recline at table	accūbūī	accūbītūm
bībō, -ērē, to drink	bībī	bībītūm
rumpō, -ērē, to break	rūpī	ruptūm
corrupō, -ērē, to corrupt	corrūpī	corruptūm
ērumpō, -ērē, to break out	ērūpī	eruptūm
perrumpō, -ērē, to break through	perrūpī	perruptūm
strēpō, -ērē, to make a noise	strēpūī	strēpītūm
lambō, -ērē, to lick	lambī	(lambītūm)
scābō, -ērē, to scratch	scābī	wanting

[143. 144.]

STEMS in c, g, q, h, ct.

377. c, g, q, and h with s become x
g, h, and q before t become c.

dūc-ō — duxī = ducsi	rēg-ō — rectūm = regtūm
rēg-ō — rexī = regsi	trāh-ō — tractūm = trahtūm
cōqu-ō — coxī = coqsi	coqu-ō — coctūm = coqtūm
trāh-ō — traxī = trahsi	

378.

Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

cingō, -ērē, to gird	cinxī	cinctūm
[flīgō, -ērē, to strike	fixī	flictūm]
affligō, -ērē, to dash	afflixī	afflictūm
confligō, -ērē, to fight	conflixī	conflictūm
profligō, -ārē, to strike down	profligāvi	profligātūm
jungō, -ērē, to join	junxī	junctūm
adjungō, -ērē, to join (to)	adjunxī	adjunctūm
plangō, -ērē, to beat, lament	planxī	planctūm
rēgō, -ērē, to rule, govern	rexī	rectūm
corrīgō, -ērē, to correct	correxī	correctūm
dīrīgō, -ērē, to direct	direxī	directūm
(surrīgō) surgō, -ērē, to rise	surrexī	surrectūm
(perrīgō) pergō, -ērē, to go on	perrexī	perrectūm
sūgō, -ērē, to suck	suxī	suctūm
tēgō, -ērē, to cover	texī	tectūm
dētēgō, -ērē, to discover	dētexī	detectūm
prōtēgō, -ērē, to protect	prōtexī	protectūm

tingō (tingūō), -ērē, to stain	tinxi	tinctum
ungō (ungūō), -ērē, to anoint	unxi	unctum
[stingūō, I put out]		
exstingūō, -ērē, to put out	extinxi	exstinctum
distingūō, -ērē, to distinguish	distinxi	distinctum
trāhō, -ērē, to draw	traxi	tractum
contrāhō, -ērē, to contract	contraxi	contractum
vēhō, -ērē, to carry	vexi	vectum
dīcō, -ērē, to say, tell	dixi	dictum
praedicō, -ērē, to predict	praedixi	praedictum
indīcō, -ērē, to declare	indixi	indictum
dūcō, -ērē, to lead	duxi	ductum
ēducō, -ērē, to lead forth	ēdixi	eductum

The Imperatives of dīcērē, to say, dūcērē, to lead, are: dīc, dūc; compounds follow the simple verbs: ēduc, praedic.

cōquō, -ērē, to cook, bake	coxi	coctum
----------------------------	------	--------

379. The Supine is irregular:

fingō, -ērē, to fashion	finxi	fictum
pingō, -ērē, to paint	pinxi	pictum
stringō, -ērē, to bind	strinxi	strictum
figō, -ērē, to fix	fixi	fixum

380. Present strengthened by t:

flectō, -ērē, to bend	flexi	flexum
nectō, -ērē, to tie	nexi-nexūi	nexum
pectō, -ērē, to comb	pexi	pexum
plectō, -ērē, to beat (only Passive)	wanting	wanting

381. The Supine is wanting:

angō, -ērē, to torment, vex	anxi	—
ningō, -ērē, to snow	ninxi	—
clangō, -ērē, to clang	wanting	—

382. With Reduplication:

parcō, -ērē, to spare	pēperci	parsum
pungō, -ērē, to pierce, sting	pūpūgi	punctum
tangō, -ērē, to touch	tētigi	tactum
attingō, -ērē, to touch	attigi	attactum
pangō, -ērē, to strike, drive	panxi	panctum
pangō, -ērē, to bargain	pēpigī	pactum
compingō, -ērē, to drive tight	compēgi	compactum

383. With lengthened Stem-vowel.

Many Consonant-stems with short stem-syllable take **i** in the Perfect, before which the stem-vowel is lengthened, and **ā** becomes **ē**.

āgō , -ērē, to drive, do	ēgī	actūm
pērāgō , -ērē, to accomplish	pērēgī	pēractūm
ābīgō , -ērē, to drive away	ābēgī	ābactūm
sūbīgō , -ērē, to subdue	sūbēgī	sūbactūm
cōgō , -ērē, to force (cō-āgō)	cōēgī	cōactūm
dēgō , -ērē, to spend (dē-āgō)	dēgī	wanting
ambīgō , -ērē, to contend	wanting	wanting
frangō , -ērē, to break	frēgī	fractūm
confringō , -ērē, to break in two	confrēgī	confractūm
effringō , -ērē, to break open	effrēgī	effractūm
lēgō , -ērē, to read	lēgī	lectūm
allēgō , -ērē, to choose	allēgī	allectūm
perlēgō , -ērē, to read through	perlēgī	perlectūm
rēlēgō , -ērē, to read over	rēlēgī	rēlectūm
collīgō , -ērē, to collect	collēgī	collectūm
dellīgō , -ērē, to choose	dellēgī	dēlectūm
ēlīgō , -ērē, to elect	ēlēgī	ēlectūm
dillīgō , -ērē, to love	dilexī	dīlectūm
intellēgō , -ērē, to understand	intellexī	intellectūm
neglēgō , -ērē, to neglect	neglexī	neglectūm
icō , -ērē, to strike	icī	ictūm
vincō , -ērē, to conquer	vici	victūm
linquō , -ērē, to leave	liquī	wanting
rēlinquō , -ērē, to leave (behind)	rēliquī	rēlictūm

384. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:

mergō , -ērē, to dip in, plunge	mersī	mersūm
spargō , -ērē, to scatter	sparsī	sparsūm
conspergō , -ērē, to sprinkle	conspersī	conspersūm
tergō , -ērē, to wipe	tersī	tersūm
vergō , -ērē, to verge	wanting	wanting

[145. 146.]

STEMS in l, m, n, r.

385. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm.

m is sometimes strengthened with **p**, as : **sūmō**, **sumpsi**.

cōmō , -ērē, to adorn	compsi	comptūm
dēmō , -ērē, to take away	dempsi	demptūm

prōmō, -ērē, <i>to take out</i>	prompsī	promptūm
sūmō, -ērē, <i>to take</i>	sumpsī	sumptūm
absūmō, -ērē, <i>to use up</i>	absumpsī	absumptūm
consūmō, -ērē, <i>to consume</i>	consumpsī	consumptūm
[temnō, <i>I despise</i>]		
contemnō, -ērē, <i>to despise</i>	contempsī	contemptūm

386. According to the Analogy of the 2d Conjugation:

ālō, -ērē, <i>to nourish</i>	ālīī	{ altūm ālītūm
cōlō, -ērē, <i>to cultivate</i>	cōlīī	cultūm
incōlō, -ērē, <i>to inhabit</i>	incōlīī	incultūm
consūlō, -ērē, <i>to counsel</i>	consūlīī	consultūm
mōlō, -ērē, <i>to grind</i>	mōlīī	molītūm
occūlō, -ērē, <i>to conceal</i>	occūlīī	occultūm
frēmō, -ērē, <i>to growl</i>	frēmīī	frēmītūm
gēmō, -ērē, <i>to groan</i>	gēmīī	gēmītūm
trēmō, -ērē, <i>to tremble</i>	trēmīī	wanting
vōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit</i>	vōmīī	vōmītūm
ēvōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit up</i>	ēvōmīī	ēvōmītūm
gignō, -ērē, <i>to beget</i>	gēnīī	gēnītūm
pōnō, -ērē, <i>to place</i>	pōsīī	pōsītūm
antēpōnō, -ērē, <i>to prefer</i>	antēpōsīī	antēpōsītūm
oppōnō, -ērē, <i>to oppose</i>	oppōsīī	oppōsītūm
[cellō, <i>I impel</i>]		
percellō, -ērē, <i>to beat down</i>	percūlī	perculsūm
antēcellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting
praecellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting
excellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting

387.

With Reduplication:

cānō, -ērē, <i>to sing</i>	cēcīnī	cantūm
concīnō, -ērē, <i>to sound together</i>	concīnīī	wanting
praecinō, -ērē, <i>to sing to one</i>	praecinīī	wanting
currō, -ērē, <i>to run</i>	cūcurrī	cursūm
accurrō, -ērē, <i>to run to</i>	{ accūcurrī }	accursūm
	{ accurrī }	
concurrō, -ērē, <i>to run together</i>	{ concūcurrī }	conkursūm
	{ concurrī }	
occurrō, -ērē, <i>to meet</i>	occurrī	occursūm

rēcurrō, -ērē, to run back	rēcurre	rēcursūm
succurrō, -ērē, to succor	succurre	succursūm
fallō, -ērē, to cheat	fēfelli	falsūm
rēfellō, -ērē, to refute	rēfelli	wanting
pellō, -ērē, to drive (away)	pēpūli	pulsūm
dēpellō, -ērē, to dispel	dēpūli	dēpulsūm
rēpellō, -ērē, to repel	rēpūli	rēpulsūm

[147. 148.]

388.

Perfect in vī:

cernō, -ērē, to see, discern	(crēvī)	(crētūm)
dēcernō, -ērē, to determine	dēcēvī	dēcētūm
discernō, -ērē, to distinguish	discrēvī	discrētūm
līnō, -ērē, to smear	lēvī (livī)	lītūm
allīnō, -ērē, to besmear	allēvī	allītūm
illīnō, -ērē, to bedaub	illēvī	illītūm
sīnō, -ērē, to let	sīvī	sītūm
dēsīnō, -ērē, to leave off	dēsīvī, dēsī	dēsītūm
spernō, -ērē, to despise	sprēvī	sprētūm
sternō, -ērē, to strew	strāvī	strātūm
prosternō, -ērē, to overthrow	prostrāvī	prostrātūm
sērō, -ērē, to sow	sēvī	sātūm
consērō, -ērē, to plant	consēvī	consītūm
insērō, -ērē, to plant in	insēvī	insītūm
sērō, -ērē, to join	sērūi	sertūm
dēsērō, -ērē, to forsake	dēsērūi	dēsertūm
dissērō, -ērē, to discourse	dissērūi	dissertūm
insērō, -ērē, to insert	insērūi	insertūm
tērō, -ērē, to rub, wear out	trīvī	tritūm
contērō, -ērē, to rub off	contrīvī	contrītūm
dētērō, -ērē, to wear away	dētrīvī	dētritūm

389.

Various Irregularities:

vellō, -ērē, to pluck, pull	vellī (vulsī)	vulsūm
āvellō, -ērē, to pull down	āvellī	āvulsūm
prēmō, -ērē, to press	pressī	pressūm
comprimō, -ērē, to press together	compressī	compressūm
exprimō, -ērē, to press out	expressī	expressūm
supprimō, -ērē, to keep back	suppressī	suppressūm
psallō, -ērē, to play on the cithern	psallī	wanting
ēmō, -ērē, to buy	ēmī	emptūm
cōēmō, -ērē, to buy together	cōēmī	cōemptūm

rēdīmō, -ērē, to buy back	rēdēmī	rēdemptūm
ādīmō, -ērē, to take away	ādēmī	ādemptūm
pērimō, -ērē, to slay	pēremī	pēremptūm
gērō, -ērē, to carry on	gessī	gestūm
congērō, -ērē, to bring together	congressī	congestūm
ūrō, -ērē, to burn	ussī	ustūm
combūrō, -ērē, to burn (wholly)	combussī	combustūm
verrō, -ērē, to sweep	verrī	versūm
quaerō, -ērē, to seek, desire	quaesivī	quaesitūm
acquirō, -ērē, to acquire	acquisivī	acquisitūm
anquirō, -ērē, to search after	anquisivī	anquisitūm
inquirō, -ērē, to inquire	inquisivī	inquisitūm
fērō, ferrē, to bear (403)	tūlī	lātūm
fūrō, -ērē, to rage	wanting	wanting
tollō, -ērē, to lift, take away	sustūlī	sublātūm

[149. 150.]

STEMS in s, x (cs).

390. There is only one stem in *s* preceded by a *Vowel*, viz. *visō*; all the rest are in *s* preceded by a *Consonant*.

visō, -ērē, to visit	visī	wanting
depsō, -ērē, to knead	depsūī	depstūm
pinsō, -ērē, to pound	{ pinsūī	pinsitūm
	{ pinsī	pistūm
texō, -ērē, to weave	texūī	textūm

According to the Analogy of the 4th Conjugation:

arcessō, -ērē, to summon	arcessivī	arcessitūm
cāpessō, -ērē, to lay hold of	cāpessivī	cāpessitūm
fācessō, -ērē, to accomplish	fācessivī	fācessitūm
lācessō, -ērē, to excite	lācessivī	lācessitūm
incessō, -ērē, to fall upon	incessivī (-ī)	wanting

STEMS in sc.

391. Stems strengthened by *sc* have generally an inchoative meaning, i. e., they denote the beginning of an action — **Inchoative** or **Inceptive Verbs**. When formed from verbs (by adding *sc* to *Vowel*-stems, and *isc* to *Consonant*-stems) they are called *Verbal Inceptives*; when from substantives and adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

Verbal Inceptives.

392. Verbal Inceptives take the **Perfect** and **Supine** of their *Primitives*, if such **Perfect** and **Supine** *actually* exist.

393. Many Verbs in *scō* are no longer used as *Inchoatives*, but in the sense of their *Primitives* which have been disused:

<i>crescō, -ērē, to grow</i>	<i>crēvī</i>	<i>crētūm</i>
<i>noscō, -ērē, to (learn to) know</i>	<i>nōvī</i>	<i>nōtūm</i>
<i>agnoscō, -ērē, to acknowledge</i>	<i>agnōvī</i>	<i>agnītūm</i>
<i>cognoscō, -ērē, to know</i>	<i>cognōvī</i>	<i>cognītūm</i>
<i>pascō, -ērē, to graze</i>	<i>pāvī</i>	<i>pastūm</i>
<i>quiescō, -ērē</i>	<i>quīēvī</i>	<i>quīētūm</i>
<i>rēquiescō, -ērē</i> } <i>to rest</i>	<i>rēquīēvī</i>	<i>rēquīētūm</i>
<i>suescō, -ērē, to become used</i>	<i>suēvī</i>	<i>suētūm</i>
<i>assuescō, -ērē</i> } <i>to be accus-</i>	<i>assuēvī</i>	<i>assuētūm</i>
<i>consuescō, -ērē</i> } <i>tomed</i>	<i>consuēvī</i>	<i>consuētūm</i>
<i>compescō, -ērē, to restrain</i>	<i>compescūī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>discō, -ērē, to learn</i>	<i>dīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>dēdiscō, -ērē, to unlearn</i>	<i>dēdīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>ēdiscō, -ērē, to learn by heart</i>	<i>ēdīdīcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>poscō, -ērē, to demand</i>	<i>pōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>dēposcō, -ērē, to request</i>	<i>dēpōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>exposcō, -ērē, to request earnestly</i>	<i>expōposcī</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>rēposcō, -ērē, to demand back</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>gliscō, -ērē, to grow up</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>wanting</i>

[151, 159]

394. But the great majority of Verbal Inceptives are from *Primitives* which actually exist.

With the Perfect and Supine of their *Primitives*:

<i>ābōlescō, -ērē, to disappear</i>	<i>ābōlēvī</i>	<i>ābōlītūm</i>
<i>ābōlēō</i>		
<i>ādōlescō, -ērē, to grow up</i>	<i>ādōlēvī</i>	<i>ādultūm</i>
<i>ādōlēō</i>		
<i>obsōlescō, -ērē, to become obsolete</i>	<i>obsōlēvī</i>	<i>obsōlētūm</i>
<i>obsōlēō</i>		
<i>cōālescō, -ērē, to grow together</i>	<i>cōālūī</i>	<i>cōālītūm</i>
<i>ālō</i>		
<i>concūpiscō, -ērē, to covet</i>	<i>concūpīvī</i>	<i>concūpītūm</i>
<i>cūpīō</i>		
<i>convālescō, -ērē, to recover</i>	<i>convālūī</i>	<i>convālītūm</i>
<i>vālō</i>		
<i>exardescō, -ērē, to take fire</i>	<i>exarsī</i>	<i>exarsūm</i>
<i>ardēō</i>		
<i>obdormiscō, -ērē, to fall asleep</i>	<i>obdormīvī</i>	<i>obdormītūm</i>
<i>dormīō</i>		

rēviviscō, -ērē, to revive	rēvivī	rēvictūm
vivō		
sciscō, -ērē, to decree	scivī	scītūm
consciscō, -ērē, to bring upon	conscivī	conscītūm
sciō		
condōlescō, -ērē, } to feel pain	condōlitūi	condōlītūm
indōlescō, -ērē, }	indōlitūi	indōlītūm
dōlēō		
invētēlescō, -ērē, to grow old	invētērāvī	invētērātūm
invētērō		

With the Perfect of their Primitives:

ācescō, -ērē, to turn sour	ācūi
ācēō	
ārescō, -ērē, to become dry	ārūi
ārēō	
cālescō, -ērē, to become warm	cālūi
cālēō	
contīcescō, -ērē, to become still	conticūi
tācēō	
dēlītescō, -ērē, to hide away	dēlītūi
lātēō	
effervescō, -ērē, to boil up	effervūi & efferbūi
fervēō	
efflōrescō, -ērē, to begin to bloom	efflōrūi
flōrēō	
extīmescō, -ērē, to fear	extīmūi
tīmēō	
ērūbescō, -ērē, to turn red	ērūbūi
rūbēō	
horrescō, -ērē, to stand on end	horrūi
horrēō	
illūcescō, -ērē, to grow light	illuxī
lūcēō	
intūmescō, -ērē, to swell	intūmūi
tūmēō	
pallelescō, -ērē, to turn pale	pallūi
pallēō	
pūtrescō, -ērē, to rot	pūtrūi
pātrēō	
sēnescō, -ērē, to grow old	sēnūi
sēnēō	

rēsīpiscō, -ērē, to come to one's	rēsīpūī
sāpīō	[senses]
ingēmiscō, -ērē, to groan	ingēmūī
gēmō	
contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble	contrēmūī
trēmō	

Wanting Perfect and Supine.

hiscō, -ērē, to yawn	flāvescō, -ērē, to become yellow
hīō	flāvēō
augescō, -ērē, to augment	hēbescō, -ērē, to grow dull
augēō	hēbēō

Denominative Inceptives.

395. Most Denominative Inceptives want both **Perfect** and **Supine**; some have the **Perfect** in **ūī**.

Wanting Perfect and Supine.

aegrescō, -ērē, to fall sick	plūmescō, -ērē, to get feathers
aegēr, sick	plūmā, a feather
dītescō, -ērē, to grow rich	pūērascō, -ērē, to become a
dīvēs, rich	pūēr, a child [child]
dulcescō, -ērē, to become sweet	jūvenescō, -ērē, to grow young
dulcīs, sweet	jūvenīs, young
grandescō, -ērē, to grow large	grāvescō, -ērē, to grow heavy
grandīs, large	grāvīs, heavy
mītescō, -ērē, to become mild	intēgrascō, -ērē, to begin anew
mītīs, mild	intēgēr, fresh
pinguescō, -ērē, to grow fat	tēnērescō, -ērē, to grow tender
pinguis, fat	tēnēr, tender

With the Perfect in ūī.

crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent (crēbēr, frequent)	crēbrūī
dūrescō, -ērē, to grow hard (dūrūs, hard)	dūrūī
ēvānescō, -ērē, to vanish (vānūs, empty)	ēvānūī
innōtescō, -ērē, to become known (nōtūs, known)	innōtūī
mācrescō, -ērē, to grow meager (mācēr, meager)	mācrūī
mātūrescō, -ērē, to ripen (mātūrūs, ripe)	mātūrūī
nīgrescō, -ērē, to become black (nīgēr, black)	nīgrūī
obmūtescō, -ērē, to become dumb (mūtūs, dumb)	obmūtūī
rēcŕūdescō, -ērē, to break open afresh (crūdūs, fresh)	rēcŕūdūī
vīlescō, -ērē, to become vile (vīlīs, vile)	vīlūī

396.

Deponent Verbs.

frūðr, -ī, to enjoy
 perfrūðr, -ī, to enjoy fully
 fungðr, -ī, to discharge
 dēfungðr, -ī, to discharge
 grādīðr, -ī, to step
 aggrēdīðr, -ī, to attack
 lābðr, -ī, to glide, roll on
 dilābðr, -ī, to fall asunder
 lōquðr, -ī, to speak
 allōquðr, -ī, to address
 mōrīðr, -ī, to die
 nīðr, -ī, to stay one's self on
 pātīðr, -ī, to suffer
 perpētīðr, -ī, to endure
 [plectðr]
 amplectðr, -ī, to embrace
 quērðr, -ī, to complain
 séquðr, -ī, to follow
 asséquðr, -ī, to pursue
 ūðr, -ī, to use
 ābūtðr, -ī, to use, abuse
 rēvertðr, -ī, to turn back

frūtūs & fructūs sūm
 perfructūs sūm
 functūs sūm
 dēfunctūs sūm
 gressūs sūm
 aggressūs sūm
 lapsūs sūm
 dilapsūs sūm
 lōcūtūs sūm
 allōcūtūs sūm
 mortūtūs sūm—F. Part. mōrītūrūs
 nīstūs & nixtūs sūm
 passūs sūm
 perpassūs sūm
 amplexūs sūm
 questūs sūm
 sēcūtūs sūm
 assēcūtūs sūm
 ūstūs sūm
 ābustūs sūm
 rēvertī, active — Part. rēversūs

With stems in sc.

[āpiscðr, -ī, to reach after
 ādīpiscðr, -ī, to obtain
 dēfētiscðr, -ī, to be worn out
 expērgiscðr, -ī, to awake
 īrascðr, -ī, to grow angry
 [mīniscðr, I recollect]
 commīniscðr, -ī, to devise
 rēmīniscðr, -ī, to remember
 nanciscðr, -ī, to get
 nascðr, -ī, to be born
 oblīviscðr, -ī, to forget
 pāciscðr, -ī, to strike a bargain
 pascðr, -ī, to feed
 prōfīciscðr, -ī, to set out, start
 ulciscðr, -ī, to avenge
 vescðr, -ī, to feed upon, eat

aptūs sūm]
 ādeptūs sūm
 dēfessūs sūm
 experrectūs sūm
 (īrātūs sūm) — īrātūs, angry
 commentūs sūm
 wantīng
 nactūs & nantūs sūm
 nātūs sūm—Fut. Part. nascītūrūs
 oblītūs sūm
 pactūs sūm
 pastūs sūm
 prōfectūs sūm
 ultūs sūm
 wantīng

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

397. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs with vowel-stems in *i*. Their Perfect and Supine are formed by adding respectively *vi*, *tūm*, according to the rule already given (344). Or, in other words, in the Fourth Conjugation the Regular Forms of the Principal Parts are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-iō -irē	-ivī	-itūm
audīō audirē, to hear	audivī	auditūm

398. The following Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation vary from the usual mode of formation:

farcīō, -irē, to stuff	farsī	fartūm
rēfercīō, -irē, to cram	rēfersī	rēfertūm
fulcīō, -irē, to support	fulsī	fultūm
haurīō, -irē, to draw	hausī	haustūm
exaurīō, -irē, to exhaust	exhausī	exhaustūm
saepīō, -irē, to hedge in	saepsī	saeptūm
sālīō, -irē, to leap	sālīī	saltūm
dissīlīō, -irē, to burst asunder	dissīlīī	wanting
sancīō, -irē, to sanction	sanxī	sanctūm, sancitūm
sarcīō, -irē, to mend	sarsī	sartūm
sentīō, -irē, to feel, perceive	sensī	sensūm
sēpeliō, -irē, to bury	sēpeliivī	sēpultūm
vēnīō, -irē, to come	vēnī	ventūm
invēnīō, -irē, to find out	invēnī	inventūm
vincīō, -irē	vinxī	vinctūm
dēvincīō, -irē } to bind	dēvinxī	dēvinctūm
āmīcīō, -irē, to clothe	wanting	āmictūm
pārīō, -irē, to bring forth (3d Conjugation)		
āpērīō, -irē, to open	āpērtīī	āpērtūm
rēpērīō, -irē, to find	rēpērtīī	rēpērtūm

Wanting Perfect and Supine:

fērīō, -irē, to strike, beat	and Desideratives
fērōcīō, -irē, to be unruly	in ūrīō, as:
sūperbīō, -irē, to be proud	ēsūrīō, -irē, to want to eat

[159. 160.]

399. Deponent Verbs.

assentīōr, -irī, to assent	assensūs sūm
mētīōr, -irī, to measure	mensūs sūm

ordīōr, -īrī, *to begin*
 expērīōr, -īrī, *to try, exercise*
 oppērīōr, -īrī, *to await*
 ōrīōr, -īrī, *to rise, appear*

Pres. Ind. { ōrīōr ōrēris
 { ōrīmūr ōrīmīnī

Imperf. Subj. ōrīrēr or ōrērēr

Fut. Part. orītūrūs, -ā, -ūm

ādōrīōr, -īrī, *to attack*

orsūs sūm
 expertūs sūm
 oppertūs sūm
 ortūs sūm

ōrītūr ōrīuntūr } 3d Conjugation.

Gerundive. ōrīundūs, -ā, -ūm

ādortūs sūm

The **Compounds** of ōrīōr follow the conjugation of the simple verb, except ādōrīrī, *to rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout. [167. 168.]

Irregular Conjugation.

400. A few verbs are **irregular** in the Conjugation of the **Present** and the forms derived from it. These are:

sūm, *I am*, and its **Compounds**.

The conjugation of sūm has already been given (**303**); its **Compounds** are conjugated in the same way except possē, *to be able*.

401. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf. Perfect. Supine.
 possūm possē, *to be able* pōtūī —

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

pos' sūm, *I can*
 pō' tēs, *thou canst*
 pō' test, *he can*
 pos' sū mūs, *we can*
 pō te' stīs, *you can*
 pos' sunt, *they can*

pos' sīm, *I may be able*
 pos' sīs, *thou mayest be able*
 pos' sīt, *he may be able*
 pos sī' mūs, *we may be able*
 pos sī' tīs, *you may be able*
 pos' sint, *they may be able*

Imperfect.

pō' tē rām, *I could, was able*
 pō' tē rās, *thou couldst*
 pō' tē rāt, *he could*
 pō tē rā' mūs, *we could*
 pō tē rā' tīs, *you could*
 pō' tē rant, *they could*

pos' sēm, *I might be able*
 pos' sēs, *thou mightest be able*
 pos' sēt, *he might be able*
 pos sē' mūs, *we might be able*
 pos sē' tīs, *you might be able*
 pos' sent, *they might be able*

INDICATIVE.

põ' të rō, *I shall be able*
 põ' të rīs, *thou wilt be able*
 põ' të rīt, *he will be able*
 põ të' rī mūs, *we shall be able*
 põ të' rī tīs, *you will be able*
 põ' të runt, *they will be able*

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

Perfect.

põ' tū ī, *I have been able*
 põ tū ī' stī
 põ' tū īt
 põ tū ī mūs
 põ tū ī' stīs
 põ tū ē' runt

põ tū' ē rīm, *I may have been able*
 põ tū' ē rīs
 põ tū' ē rīt
 põ tū ē rī mūs
 põ tū ē rī tīs
 põ tū' ē rint

Pluperfect.

põ tū' ē rām, *I had been able*
 põ tū' ē rās
 põ tū' ē rāt
 põ tū ē rā' mūs
 põ tū ē rā' tīs
 põ tū' ē rant

põ tū is' sēm, *I might have been able*
 põ tū is' sēs
 põ tū is' sēt
 põ tū is sē' mūs
 põ tū is sē' tīs
 põ tū is' sent

Future Perfect.

põ tū' ē rō, *I shall have been able*
 põ tū' ē rīs
 põ tū' ē rīt
 põ tū ē rī mūs
 põ tū ē rī tīs
 põ tū' ē rint

(wanting)

INFINITIVE.

Present. pos' sē, *to be able*

Perfect. põ tū is' sē, *to have been able*

402. The verb sūm is joined with the adjective pōtīs, *able*, making the compound (pot-sūm) possūm, *I can, am able*. This is conjugated like sūm, but observe:

that the t of pōt is assimilated before s, thus: possūm instead of potsūm;

that the f is dropped in fūī, fūērām, etc., thus: pōtūī for potfūī;

that pōtessē and pōtessēm are contracted into possē, possēm.

Participle, Imperative, and Gerund are wanting; pōtens, *mighty*, is simply an adjective. [115. 116.]

403.	Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect	Supine.
	fērŭ ferrĕ, to bear	tŭlī	lātŭm

Active.

INDICATIVE

fērŭ, *I bear*
fers
fert
fēr rī mŭs
fer' tīs
fēr runt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present.

fēr rām, *I may bear*
fēr rās
fēr rāt
fēr rā' mŭs
fēr rā' tīs
fēr rant

Imperfect.

fēr rē' bām, <i>I was bearing</i>	fer' rēm, <i>I should bear</i>
fēr rē' bās	fer' rēs
fēr rē' bāt	fer' rēt
fēr rē' bā' mŭs	fer rē' mŭs
fēr rē' bā' tīs	fer rē' tīs
fēr rē' bant	fer' rent

Future.

fēr rām, <i>I shall bear</i>	lā tŭ'rŭs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{may be} \\ \text{about} \\ \text{to bear} \end{array} \right\}$
fēr rēs	-ā, -ŭm		
fēr rēt			
fēr rē' mŭs	lā tŭ' rī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mŭs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right\}$	
fēr rē' tīs	-ae, -ā		
fēr rent			

Perfect.

tŭ' lī, <i>I bore or have borne</i>	tŭ' lē rīn, <i>I may have borne</i>
tŭ' lī' stī	tŭ' lē rīs
tŭ' līt	tŭ' lē rīt
tŭ' lī mŭs	tŭ' lē rī mŭs
tŭ' lī' stīs	tŭ' lē rī tīs
tŭ' lē' runt	tŭ' lē rint

Pluperfect.

tŭ' lē rām, <i>I had borne</i>	tŭ' lis' sēm, <i>I should have borne</i>
tŭ' lē rās	tŭ' lis' sēs
tŭ' lē rāt	tŭ' lis' sēt
tŭ' lē rā' mŭs	tŭ' lis' sē' mŭs
tŭ' lē rā' tīs	tŭ' lis' sē' tīs
tŭ' lē rant	tŭ' lis' sent

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

tū' lē rō, *I shall have borne*

(wanting)

tū' lē rīs

tū' lē rīt

tū lē rī mūs

tū lē rī tīs

tū' lē rint

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. fēr, *bear thou*

Plur. fer' tē, *bear ye*

Fut. " fer' tō, *thou shalt bear*

" fer tō' tē, *ye shall bear*

" fer' tō, *he shall bear*

" fē run' tō, *they shall bear*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rē, *to bear*

Perf. tū lis' sē, *to have borne*

Fut. lā tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē, &c., *to be about to bear*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. fē' rens, fē ren' tīs, *bearing*

Fut. lā tū' rūš, lā tū' rā, lā tū' rūm, *about to bear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. fē ren' dī, *of bearing*

Dat. fē ren' dō, *for bearing*

Acc. fē ren' dūm, *bearing*

Abl. fē ren' dō, *by bearing*

lā' tūm } *to bear*
lā' tū }

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fē' rōr, *I am borne*

fē' rār, *I may be borne*

fer' rīs

fē rā' rīs

fer' tūr

fē rā' tūr

fē' rī mūr

fē rā' mūr

fē rī' mī nī

fē rā' mīnī

fē run' tūr

fē ran' tūr

Imperfect.

fē rē' bār, *I was borne*

fer' rēr, *I might be borne*

fē rē bā' rīs

fer rē' rīs

fē rē bā' tūr

fer rē' tūr

fē rē bā' mūr

fer rē' mūr

fē rē bā' mī nī

fer rē' mī nī

fē rē ban' tūr

fer ren' tūr

INDICATIVE.

Futura.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fē' rār, *I shall be borne*

(wanting)

fē rē' rīs

fē rē' tūr

fē rē' mūr

fē rē' mī nī

fē ren' tūr

Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, *I was or have been borne*

SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm sīm, *I may have been borne*

Pluperfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm ērām, *I had been borne*

SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm eassēm, *I might have been borne*

Future Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm ērō, *I shall have been borne*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. fer' rē, *be thou borne*

fē rī' mī nī, *be ye borne*

Fut. fer' tōr, *thou shalt be borne*

fer' tōr, *he shall be borne*

fē run' tōr, *they shall be borne*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rī, *to be borne*

Perf. lā' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē, &c., *to have been borne*

Fut. lā' tūm ī' rī, *to be about to be borne*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. lā' tūs, lā' tā, lā' tūm, *borne*

Gerundive. fē ren' dūs, fē ren' dā, fē ren' dūm, *to be borne*

Care should be taken not to confound the two verbs:

ferrē, *to bear*, and fērīrē, *to beat*.

404. Compounds of fērō are conjugated like the simple verb:

adfērō adferrē, *to afford*

attūlī

adlātūm

aufērō auferrē, *to carry away*

abstūlī

ablātūm

confērō conferrē, *to bring together*

contūlī

collātūm

diffērō differrē, *to defer*

distūlī

dilātūm

effērō efferrē, *to carry out*

extūlī

elātūm

infērō inferrē, *to carry into*

intūlī

illātūm

praeferō praeferre, *to prefer*

praeūlī

praelātūm

refērō referrē, *to bring back*

retūlī, rettūlī

relātūm

[173. 174.]

405. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

võlõ	vellõ, to be willing
nõlõ	nollõ, to be unwilling
mälõ	mallõ, to be more willing

Perfect.

võlũĩ	—
nõlũĩ	—
mälũĩ	—

INDICATIVE.

Present.

I am willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lõ	nõ' lõ	mälõ
vĩs	nõn vĩa	mã' vĩa
vult	nõn vult	mã' vult
võ' lũ mũs	nõ' lũ mũs	mã' lũ mũs
vul' tĩa	nõn vul' tĩa	mã vul' tĩa
võ' lunt	nõ' lunt	mã' lunt

Imperfect.

I was willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lõ' bãm	nõ lõ' bãm	mã lõ' bãm
võ lõ' bãs	nõ lõ' bãs	mã lõ' bãs
võ lõ' băt	nõ lõ' băt	mã lõ' băt
võ lõ bĩa' mũs	nõ lõ bĩa' mũs	mã lõ bĩa' mũs
võ lõ bĩa' tĩa	nõ lõ bĩa' tĩa	mã lõ bĩa' tĩa
võ lõ' bant	nõ lõ' bant	mã lõ' bant

Future.

I shall be willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lãm	nõ' lãm	mã' lãm
võ' lēs	nõ' lēs	mã' lēs
võ' lēt	nõ' lēt	mã' lēt
võ lõ' mũs	nõ lõ' mũs	mã lõ' mũs
võ lõ' tĩa	nõ lõ' tĩa	mã lõ' tĩa
võ' lent	nõ' lent	mã' lent

Perfect.

I was or have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lũ i	nõ' lũ i	mã' lũ i
võ lũ i' stĩ	nõ lũ i' stĩ	mã lũ i' stĩ
võ' lũ ỹt	nõ' lũ ỹt	mã' lũ ỹt
võ lũ' i mũs	nõ lũ' i mũs	mã lũ' i mũs
võ lũ i' stĩa	nõ lũ i' stĩa	mã lũ i' stĩa
võ lũ ẽ' runt	nõ lũ ẽ' runt	mã lũ ẽ' runt

INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

I had been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ' ẽ rãm	nõ lữ' ẽ rãm	mã lữ' ẽ rãm
võ lữ' ẽ rās	nõ lữ' ẽ rās	mã lữ' ẽ rās
võ lữ' ẽ răt	nõ lữ' ẽ răt	mã lữ' ẽ răt
võ lữ' ẽ rã' mūs	nõ lữ' ẽ rã' mūs	mã lữ' ẽ rã' mūs
võ lữ' ẽ rã' tīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rã' tīs	mã lữ' ẽ rã' tīs
võ lữ' ẽ rant	nõ lữ' ẽ rant	mã lữ' ẽ rant

Future Perfect.

I shall have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ' ẽ rō	nõ lữ' ẽ rō	mã lữ' ẽ rō
võ lữ' ẽ rīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rīs	mã lữ' ẽ rīs
võ lữ' ẽ rīt	nõ lữ' ẽ rīt	mã lữ' ẽ rīt
võ lữ' ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lữ' ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lữ' ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lữ' ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lữ' ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lữ' ẽ rint	nõ lữ' ẽ rint	mã lữ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I may be willing, unwilling, more willing

vẽ' lĩm	nõ' lĩm	mã' lĩm
vẽ' līs	nõ' līs	mã' līs
vẽ' līt	nõ' līt	mã' līt
vẽ' lĩ' mūs	nõ' lĩ' mūs	mã' lĩ' mūs
vẽ' lĩ' tīs	nõ' lĩ' tīs	mã' lĩ' tīs
vẽ' lint	nõ' lint	mã' lint

Imperfect.

I should be willing, unwilling, more willing

vel' lēm	nol' lēm	mal' lēm
vel' lēs	nol' lēs	mal' lēs
vel' lēt	nol' lēt	mal' lēt
vel' lē' mūs	nol' lē' mūs	mal' lē' mūs
vel' lē' tīs	nol' lē' tīs	mal' lē' tīs
vel' lent	nol' lent	mal' lent

Perfect.

I may have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ' ẽ rĩm	nõ lữ' ẽ rĩm	mã lữ' ẽ rĩm
võ lữ' ẽ rīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rīs	mã lữ' ẽ rīs
võ lữ' ẽ rīt	nõ lữ' ẽ rīt	mã lữ' ẽ rīt
võ lữ' ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lữ' ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lữ' ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lữ' ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lữ' ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lữ' ẽ rint	nõ lữ' ẽ rint	mã lữ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

I should have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ is' sēm	nō lữ is' sēm	mā lữ is' sēm
võ lữ is' sēs	nō lữ is' sēs	mā lữ is' sēs
võ lữ is' sēt	nō lữ is' sēt	mā lữ is' sēt
võ lữ is sē' mūs	nō lữ is sē' mūs	mā lữ is sē' mūs
võ lữ is sē' tīs	nō lữ is sē' tīs	mā lữ is sē' tīs
võ lữ is' sent	nō lữ is' sent	mā lữ is' sent

IMPERATIVE.

be unwilling, &c.

wanting	Pres. S. nō' lĩ	Pl. nō lĩ' tē	wanting
	Fut. " nō lĩ' tō	" nō lĩ tō' tē	
	nō lĩ' tō	nō lun' tō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. vel' lē, nol' lē, mal' lē, *to be willing, &c.*

Perf. võ lữ is' sē, nō lữ is' sē, mā lữ is' sē, *to have been willing, &c.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. võ' lens, willing	nō' lens, unwilling	wanting
-------------------------	---------------------	---------

GERUND.

Gen. võ len' dī	nō len' dī	wanting
Dat. võ len' dō		[175, 176.]

406. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
ēō, irē, *to go*

Perfect. Ivĩ
Supine. Itũm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ē' ō, <i>I go</i>	ē' ăm, <i>I may go</i>
is	ē' ăs
it	ē' ăt
ĩ' mūs	ē' ă' mūs
ĩ' tīs	ē' ă' tīs
ē' unt	ē' ant

Imperfect.

ĩ' băm, <i>I was going</i>	ĩ' rēm, <i>I should go</i>
ĩ' bās	ĩ' rēs
ĩ' băt	ĩ' rēt
ĩ' bā' mūs	ĩ' rē' mūs
ĩ' bā' tīs	ĩ' rē' tīs
ĩ' bant	ĩ' rent

INDICATIVE.

I shall go

I' bō
I' bīs
I' bīt
I' bī mūs
I' bī tīs
I' bunt

I went or have gone

I' vī (I' ī)
I' vī' stī (I' ī' stī)
I' vīt (I' īt)
I' vī mūs (I' ī mūs)
I' vī' stīs (I' ī' stīs)
I' vē' runt (I' ē' runt)

I had gone

I' vē rām (I' ē rām)
I' vē rās, (I' ē rās)
I' vē rāt, (I' ē rāt)
I' vē rā' mūs (I' ē rā' mūs)
I' vē rā' tīs (I' ē rā' tīs)
I' vē rant (I' ē rant)

I shall have gone

I' vē rō (I' ē rō)
I' vē rīs (I' ē rīs)
I' vē rīt, (I' ē rīt)
I' vē rī mūs (I' ē rī mūs)
I' vē rī tīs (I' ē rī tīs)
I' vē rint (I' ē rint)

Singular.

Pres. I, go
Fut. I' tō, thou shalt go
I' tō, he shall go

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

I may be about to go

I tū' rūš, { sīm
-ā, -ūm { sīs
sīt
I tū' rī, { sī' mūs
-ae, -ā { sī' tīs
sint

Perfect.

I may have gone

I' vē rīm (I' ē rīm)
I' vē rīs (I' ē rīs)
I' vē rīt (I' ē rīt)
I' vē rī mūs (I' ē rī mūs)
I' vē rī tīs (I' ē rī tīs)
I' vē rint (I' ē rint)

Pluperfect.

I should have gone

I vis' sēm (Is' sēm)
I vis' sēs (Is' sēs)
I vis' sēt (Is' sēt)
I vis' sē' mūs (Is' sē' mūs)
I vis' sē' tīs (Is' sē' tīs)
I vis' sent (Is' sent)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Plural.

I' tē, go ye
I tō' tē, ye shall go
ē un' tō, they shall go

INFINITIVE.

Pres. I' rē, to go
Perf. I vis' sē (Is' sē), to have gone
Fut. I tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē, &c., to be about to go

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. I' ens, Gen. Š un' tīs, *going*

Fut. I tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm, *being about to go*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. Š un' dī, *of going*

Dat. Š un' dō, *for going*

Acc. Š un' dūm, *going*

Abl. Š un' dō, *by going*

I' tūm }
I' tū } *to go*

[177. 178]

407. The Compounds of ēō are conjugated in the same way. But usually they drop the *v* of the **Perfect** as: rēdī for rēdivī, &c., and contract the *i i* of the **Perfect Infinitive** and of the **Pluperfect Subjunctive** into *ī*, as: rēdīssē for rēdī(v)issē, &c., e. g.:

ābēō, -īrē, *to go away*

praetērēō, -īrē, *to pass by*

inēō, -īrē, *to go into, begin*

rēdēō, -īrē, *to return*

intērēō, -īrē, *to perish*

sūbēō, -īrē, *to come or go under*

ōbēō, -īrē, *to meet*

transēō, -īrē, *to pass over*

408. The Compounds vēnēō, *I am for sale*, and pērēō, *I perish*, serve as **Passives** to vendō, *I sell*, and perdō, *I ruin*. The Compound ambīō, *I go about, seek*, is regular of the Fourth Conjugation.

409. quēō quīrē, *to be able*

quīvī quītūm

nēquēō nēquīrē, *not to be able* nēquīvī nēquītūm

are conjugated like Irē, *to go* (**406**); they are, however, usual only in the Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

410. **Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.**

Perfect.

Supine.

ēdō, -ērē, *to eat*

ēdī

ēsūm

(regular of the 3d conjugation, **373**) has also some contracted forms, similar to those of the corresponding tenses of essē, *to be*, but always with *e* long before *s*, viz.:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ēdis ēs, *thou eatest*

ēdērēm ēssēm, *I should eat*

ēdit ēst, *he eats*

ēdērēs ēssēs, *thou wouldst eat*

ēdit ēstis, *you eat*

ēdērēt ēssēt, *he would eat*

ēdērēmūs ēssēmūs, *we should eat*

ēdērētīs ēssētīs, *you would eat*

ēdērent ēssent, *they would eat*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. ēdē ēs, *eat thou*

ēditē ēstē, *eat ye*

Fut. ēditō ēstō, *thou shalt eat*

ēditōtē ēstōtē, *ye shall eat*

ēditō ēstō, *he shall eat*

INFINITIVE.

ēdērē ēssē, to eat

PASSIVE. ēdītūr ēstūr, is eaten—ēdērētūr ēssētūr, should be eaten

411. Pres. Ind & Pres. Inf.
fīō, fīērī, to become

Perfect.
factūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fī' ō, I become

fī' ām, I may become

fīs

fī' ās

fīt

fī' āt

fī' mūs

fī' ā' mūs

fī' tīs

fī' ā' tīs

fī' unt

fī' ant

Imperfect.

fī' ē' bāni, I became

fī' ē' rēm, I should become

fī' ē' bās

fī' ē' rēs

fī' ē' bāt

fī' ē' rēt

fī' ē' bā' mūs

fī' ē' rē' mūs

fī' ē' bā' tīs

fī' ē' rē' tīs

fī' ē' bant

fī' ē' rent

Future.

fī' ām, I shall become

(wanting)

fī' ēs

fī' ēt

fī' ē' mūs

fī' ē' tīs

fī' ent

Perfect.

I became or have become

I may have become

factūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, &c.

factūs, -ā, -ūm sīm, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had become

I should have become

factūs, -ā, -ūm ērām, &c.

factūs, -ā, -ūm essēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have become

factūs, -ā, -ūm ērō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. fī, become thou

Plur. fī' tē, become ye

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	fī' ē rī, to become	
Perf. Sing.	Nom. factūs, -ā, -ūm essē	} to have become
"	Acc. fac' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur.	Nom. fac' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
"	Acc. fac' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē	
Fut.	factūm irī, to be about to become	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. factūs, -ā, -ūm, become; Gerundive. faciendūs, -ā, -ūm, to be made

412. The verb *fīō* is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future according to the Fourth Conjugation, but takes an *ē* in the Infinitive and Subjunctive Imperfect, viz.: *fīērī, fīērēm*. In these forms the *ī* is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel. It is originally an intransitive verb meaning *to become, to happen*, but is also treated as *Passive* to *faciō, I make*. Examples are :

nīhil fīt, nothing happens
consūl fīt, he is made consul
dīvēs factūs est, he has become rich
nīhil factūm est, nothing has happened

413. The Compounds of *faciō* with Prepositions change *ā* into *ī*, and form the *Passive* regularly, as:

interficiō, I kill *interficiōr, I am killed*

But when compounded with words other than prepositions, *faciō* retains its *ā*, and uses *fīō* as its *Passive*, as:

mansuēficiō, I tame *mansuēfīō, I become tame*
liquēficiō, I make liquid *liquēfīō, I melt*

The accent remains the same as in the simple verbs, thus:
mansuēfā'cis, thou tamest. [179. 180]

Defective Verbs.

414. Defective Verbs want certain parts.

415. *coepī, I have begun* *mēmīnī, I remember* *odī, I hate* are in use only in the *Perfect* and the tenses derived from it. To *coepī, I have begun*, *incipīō, I begin*, serves as a *Present*. *mēmīnī, I remember*, and *odī, I hate*, are present in sense; hence in the *Pluperfect* and *Future Perfect* they have the sense of the *Imperfect* and *Future*. *nōvī, I know* (Perf. of *noscō, I learn to know*), and *consuevī, I am wont* (Perf. of *consuescō, I accustom myself*), are also present in sense.

INDICATIVE.			
Perf.	<i>I have begun</i>	<i>I remember</i>	<i>I hate</i>
	coe' pī	mě' mī nī	ō' dī
	coe pi' stī	mě mī ni' stī	ō di' stī
	coe' pīt	mě' mī nīt	ō' dīt
	coe' pī mūs	mě mī' nī mūs	ō' dī mūs
	coe pi' stīs	mě mī ni' stīs	ō di' stīs
	coe pē' runt	mě mī nē' runt	ō dē' runt
Pluperf.	coe' pē rām, &c.	mě mī' nē rām, &c.	ō' dē rām, &c.
Fut. Perf.	coe' pē rō, &c.	mě mī' nē rō, &c.	ō' dē rō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.			
Perf.	coe' pē rīm, &c.	mě mī' nē rīm, &c.	ō' dē rīm, &c.
Pluperf.	coe pis' sēm, &c.	mě mī nis' sēm, &c.	ō dis' sēm, &c.

IMPERATIVE.		
(wanting)	mě men' tō	(wanting)
	mě men tō' tē	

INFINITIVE.			
Perf.	coe pis' sē	mě mī nis' sē	ō dis' sē
Fut.	coop tū' rūš es' sē	(wanting)	ō sū' rūš es' sē

PARTICIPLES.			
Perf.	coop' tūs, -ā, -ūm	(wanting)	(ō' sūs, -ā, -ūm)
Fut.	coop tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	(wanting)	ō sū' rūš, -ā, -ūm
PASSIVE.	coop' tūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, <i>I have begun</i> (used with the		
	Pass. Infinit.)		
	ō' sūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, <i>I hate</i>		

416. ājō, *I say, say yes, affirm* — inquām, *I say, quoth I* —
fārī, *to speak*

PRES. IND.	ā' jō	PRES. SUBJ.	—	IMP. IND.	ā jē' bām
	ā' is		ā' jās		ā jē' bās
	ā' it		ā' jāt		ā jē' bāt
	—		—		ā jē bā' mūs
	—		—		ā jē bā' tīs
	ā' junt		ā' jant		ā jē' bant

PERF. IND. — — — ā' it — — —

PARTICIPLE. ā' jens, *affirmative*

Pres. IND.	in' quām in' quīs in' quīt in' quī mūs in' quī tīs in' quī unt	Pres. SUBJ.	— in' quī ās in' quī āt — in' quī ā' tīs in' quī ant
Imp. IND.	in' quī ē' bām in' quī ē' bās in' quī ē' bāt in' quī ē bā' mūs in' quī ē bā' tīs in' quī ē' bant	Fut. IND.	— in' quī ēs in' quī ēt
Perf. IND.	— in' qui' stī in' quīt — in' qui' stīs	Imperat.	in' quē in' quī tē in' quī tō

inquām, say, is used only in direct quotations, as the English *quoth*.

Besides the Infinitive *fārī*, to speak, mark:

Pres. fātūr, <i>he speaks</i>	Imperat. fārē, <i>speak thou</i>
Fut. fābōr, <i>I shall speak</i>	Gerund. fandī, <i>of speaking</i>
fābītūr, <i>he will speak</i>	fandō, <i>for speaking</i>
Perf. fātūs sūm, <i>I have spoken, &c.</i>	Supine. fātū, <i>to speak</i>
Participle. (fantīs, fantī) infans, <i>speechless</i>	
Gerundive. fandūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>to be spoken of</i>	

417.	ā' vē	sal' vē	sal vē' bīs, <i>hail thou!</i>	vā' lē	} fare- well come give
	ā vē' tē	sal vē' tē	<i>hail ye!</i>	vā lē' tē	
	ā' gē	ā' gī tē		ā' pā gē, <i>be gone</i>	
	cē' dō	ce't' tē			

418. To these may be added:

quae' sō, <i>I beseech</i>	fō' rēm, <i>I should be</i>
quae' sū mūs, <i>we beseech</i>	fō' rēs, <i>thou shouldst be</i>
	fō' rēt, <i>he should be</i>
	fō' rent, <i>they should be</i>
	fō' rē, <i>to be about to be</i>

Impersonal Verbs.

419. Many Verbs appear only in the *third person singular* and in the *Infinitive* to express an action or condition without reference to any actor. These are called **Impersonal Verbs**.

420. The following Verbs signifying *personal conditions* are **absolutely impersonal**:

Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.
dēcēt, <i>it becomes</i>	dēcērē	dēcūit
dēdēcēt, <i>it is unbecoming</i>	dēdēcērē	dēdēcūit
libēt, <i>it pleases</i>	libērē	libūit or libitūm est
licēt, <i>it is lawful, allowed</i>	licērē	licūit or licitūm est
liquēt, <i>it is clear</i>	liquērē	licūit
mīsērēt, <i>it excites pity</i>	mīsērērē	{ mīsērītūm } { mīsertūm } est
oportēt, <i>it is needful</i>	oportērē	oportūit
pīgēt, <i>it grieves</i>	pīgērē	pīgūit or pigitūm est
paenītēt, <i>it causes sorrow</i>	paenītērē	paenītūit
pūdēt, <i>it shames</i>	pūdērē	pūdūit or pudītūm est
taedēt, <i>it wearies</i>	taedērē	pertaesūm est

421. The Impersonals dēcēt, dēdēcēt, libēt, licēt can have a subject, but only a neuter pronoun or adjective.

libēt, licēt and liquēt govern the **Dative**, as mīhī licēt, *it is lawful for me*; mīhī libēt, *it pleases me*. All the other verbs mentioned in **420** govern the **Accusative**, the persons being expressed as follows:

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.
paenītēt mē, <i>I repent</i>	paenītēāt mē, <i>I may repent</i>
paenītēt tē	paenītēāt tē
paenītēt eūm	paenītēāt eūm
paenītēt nōs	paenītēāt nōs
paenītēt vōs	paenītēāt vōs
paenītēt eos	paenītēāt eos
	Imperfect.
<i>I was repenting</i> paenītēbāt mē, &c.	<i>I should repent</i> paenītērēt mē, &c.
	Future.
<i>I shall repent</i> paenītēbīt mē, &c.	(wanting)

INDICATIVE.

I (have) repented
paenītūlt mē, &c.

I had repented
paenītūērāt mē, &c.

I shall have repented
paenītūērīt mē, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I may have repented
paenītūērīt mē, &c.

Pluperfect.

I should have repented
paenītūissēt mē, &c.

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

422. Verbs describing *phenomena of nature* are almost invariably impersonal in virtue of their meaning:

plūit, *it rains*

ningit, *it snows*

grandināt, *it hails*

tōnāt, *it thunders*

fulgūrāt } *it lightens*
fulmināt }

lūcescīt, *it becomes light*

vespēascīt, *evening comes on*

423. Verbs impersonally used:

accēdīt

fit

evēnīt

contingīt

constāt, *it is evident, agreed*

expēdīt, *it is useful*

convēnīt, *it is fit*

dēlectāt, *it delights*

intērest, *it concerns, it matters*

jūvāt, *it delights*

pātēt, *it is plain*

plācēt, *it pleases*

praestāt, *it is better*

rēfert, *it concerns, it matters*

restāt, *it remains*

vācāt, *there is leisure*

The **Passive** of intransitive Verbs is often used *impersonally*, thus:

vivītūr, *people live*

sic vivītūr, *such is life*

pugnātūr, *there is fighting*

itūr, *some one goes*

[183. 184.]

ADVERBS.

424. **Adverbs** are words qualifying verbs and adjectives, as also other adverbs. In respect to form, they are **Primitive**, i. e. such as cannot be traced to simpler forms, or **Derivative**.

425. The majority of **Derivative Adverbs** are formed from adjectives in the following manner: Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** (ending in ūs, and ēr) form the adverb by changing the genitive ending ī into ē. Examples are:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
lentūs, <i>slow</i>	lentī	lentē, <i>slowly, leisurely</i>
rectūs, <i>right</i>	rectī	rectē, <i>rightly, correctly</i>
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libērē, <i>freely</i>
pulchēr, <i>fine</i>	pulchrī	pulchrē, <i>finely</i>
bōnūs, <i>good</i> , makes bēnē, <i>well</i> ; mālūs, <i>bad</i> , makes mālē, <i>badly</i> .		

426. Adjectives of the **Third Declension** form their adverbs in **tēr**, changing the genitive ending **īs** into **itēr**; but those in **ns** and **rs** change the genitive ending **īs** into **ēr**:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
cēlēr, <i>fast</i>	cēlērīs	cēlērītēr, <i>fast</i>
fēlix, <i>happy</i>	fēlicīs	fēlicītēr, <i>happily</i>
fortīs, <i>brave</i>	fortīs	fortītēr, <i>bravely</i>
libēns, <i>willing</i>	libentīs	libentēr, <i>willingly</i>
pātēns, <i>patient</i>	pātientīs	pātientēr, <i>patiently</i>
diligēns, <i>careful</i>	diligentīs	diligentēr, <i>carefully</i>
elēgāns, <i>elegant</i>	elēgantīs	elēgantēr, <i>elegantly</i>
sollers, <i>skillful</i>	sollertīs	sollertēr, <i>skillfully</i>

[97. 98.]

427. Some Adverbs from Adjectives of the **First and Second Declensions** have *both* forms, as:

firmūs, <i>strong</i>	firmē, firmītēr, <i>strongly</i>
hūmānūs, <i>human</i>	hūmānē, hūmānītēr, <i>humanly</i>
largūs, <i>large</i>	largē, largītēr, <i>largely</i>
ōpulentūs, <i>rich</i>	ōpulentēr only, <i>richly</i>
viōlentūs, <i>violent</i>	viōlentēr “, <i>violently</i>

428. A few Adverbs differ in meaning from their adjectives, as:

sānē, <i>certainly</i>	from sānūs, <i>sound</i>
valdē, <i>very</i>	from vālīdūs, <i>strong</i>

429. The **Neuter Accusative** of some Adjectives of the 3d declension is used as an adverb, as:

fācilē, <i>easily</i>	impūnē, <i>with impunity</i>
difficilē, <i>with difficulty</i>	rēcens, <i>recently</i>

430. Certain **Cases** of Adjectives, Nouns and Pronouns are often used as Adverbs:

rārō, <i>rarely</i>	continūō, <i>forthwith</i>
tūtō, <i>safely</i>	falsō, <i>falsely</i>
cītō, <i>quickly, soon</i>	fortūtō, <i>by chance</i>
consultō, <i>purposely</i>	grātūtō, <i>gratuitously</i>

sēcrētō, *secretly*
 sērō, *late*
 vērō, *in truth*
 vēre, *truly*
 hāc, *this way*
 spontē, *of one's own accord*
 grātis, *gratis*
 cēterūm, *for the rest*
 nīmīs, nīmīum, *too much*
 prīmūm, *first*
 tantūm, *only*

mānifestō, *clearly*
 mērītō, *deservedly*
 immērītō, *undeservedly*
 nēcessārīō, *necessarily*
 perpētūō, *perpetually*
 sūbitō, *suddenly*
 certō, *in fact*
 certē, *assuredly*
 crēbrō, *frequently*
 quō, *whither*
 fortē, *by chance*

noctū, *by night*

431. Some **Phrases** or **Clauses** have grown into **Adverbs**, as:

antēā, *before*
 intērēā, *meanwhile*
 proptērēā, *therefore*
 hōdiē (= hōc diē), *to-day*
 magnōpērē, *particularly*
 obviām, *towards*

quōdammōdō, *in a certain man-*
 quōtannis, *every year* [ner
 videlicēt = vidērē licēt } *viz.*
 scilicēt = scirē licēt }
 nūdiūs tertiūs = nunc diēs ter-
 tiūs, *the day before yesterday*

432. **Adverbs** in **īm** are formed from **Supines**, as:

certātīm, *emulously*
 nōmīnātīm, *expressly*
 privātīm, *in private*
 stātīm, *steadily*

sensīm, *little by little*
 carptīm, *by pieces*
 cursīm, *speedily*
 passīm, *here and there*

raptīm, *hastily*

433. Similar **Adverbs** (in **ātīm**, **itīm**) are formed from **Nouns**, as:

grādātīm, *step by step*
 trībūtīm, *by tribes*

vīcissīm, *by turns*
 vīrītīm, *man by man*

434. A number of **Adverbs** come from **Nouns** by changing the **Genitive**-ending into **itūs**:

antiquitūs, *of old*
 divīnitūs, *divinely*
 caelitūs, *from heaven*

rādīcītūs, *by the roots*
 fundītūs, *from the foundation*
 pēnitūs, *thoroughly*

435. In respect to **Meaning**, **Adverbs** may be divided into several classes:

Adverbs of Place and Motion,
Adverbs of Time and Succession,
Adverbs of Manner and Quality.

436. Adverbs of Place are those which answer to the question *where? ūbī? whither? quō? whence? undē?*

ūbī, <i>where?</i>	alicūbī, <i>somewhere</i>	obviām, <i>toward</i>
ībī, <i>there</i>	ūbiquē, <i>everywhere</i>	ālībī, <i>elsewhere</i>
hic, <i>here</i>	quā? <i>by what way?</i>	foris, <i>outside</i>
illīc, <i>there</i>	nusquām, <i>nowhere</i>	prōcūl, <i>far</i>
quō, <i>whither?</i>	hūc, <i>hither</i>	retrō, <i>backward</i>
ēō, <i>thither</i>	illūc, <i>thither</i>	fōrās, <i>out</i>
undē, <i>whence</i>	istinc, <i>thence</i>	undiquē, <i>from all</i>
indē, <i>thence</i>	illinc, <i>then</i>	sides
hinc, <i>hence</i>		dēsūpēr, <i>from above</i>

The following are also used as **Prepositions**:

circā, <i>around, about</i>	intrā, <i>inside</i>	pōnē, pōst, <i>behind</i>
contrā, <i>opposite</i>	suprā, <i>above</i>	prōpē, <i>near</i>
extrā, <i>outside</i>	infērā, <i>below</i>	cōrām, <i>personally</i>

437. Adverbs of Time are those which answer to the question *when? quāndō? how long? quamdiū? how often? quōtīens?*

quāndō? <i>when?</i>	hērī, <i>yesterday</i>
ālīquāndō, <i>once</i>	nūdiūs tertīūs, <i>the day before</i>
interdūm, <i>sometimes</i>	yesterday
intērīm, <i>meanwhile</i>	postridīē, <i>the day after</i>
intērēā, <i>in the meantime</i>	crās, <i>to-morrow</i>
illicō, <i>on the spot</i>	pērendīē, <i>the day after to-mor-</i>
sīmūl, <i>at the same time</i>	unquām, <i>ever</i> [row
jām, <i>already</i>	nunquām, <i>never</i>
tandēm, <i>at last</i>	sempēr, <i>always</i>
dēmūm, <i>not until</i>	plērumquē, <i>commonly</i>
ālīās, <i>at other times</i>	propēdiēm, <i>one of these days</i>
nunc, <i>now</i>	posthāc, <i>hereafter</i>
hōdīē, <i>to-day</i>	postēā, <i>afterwards</i>
mōdō, <i>just now</i>	mox, <i>soon</i>
nūpēr, <i>lately</i>	mānē, <i>early in the morning</i>
prīdēm, <i>long since</i>	interdiū, <i>by day</i>
quondām, <i>once</i>	vespērī, <i>in the evening</i>
antēā, <i>before</i>	noctū, <i>by night</i>
tunc, <i>at that time</i>	dēindē, <i>afterwards</i>
tūm, <i>then</i>	sūbindē, <i>presently</i>
prīdīē, <i>the day before</i>	dēinceps, <i>in turn</i>
praetērēā, <i>besides</i>	ābhīnc, <i>hereafter</i>

antē, *before*, also used as a **Preposition**.

quamdiū? *how long?*
 tamdiū, *so long*
 aliquamdiū, *some time*
 dudū, *a short time ago*
 quotiens? *how often?*
 totiens, *so often*
 aliquotiens, *some times*
 iterū, *a second time*
 rursum, *again*
 denūo, *anew*

usquē, *right on*
 parump̄r } *for a short time*
 paulisp̄r }
 tantisp̄r, *so long*
 saep̄, *often*
 quotidie, *every day*
 quotannis, *every year*
 semel, *once*
 bis, *twice*, and all the other
Numeral Adverbs, 241.

438. Adverbs of manner are those which answer to the question *how?* quomōdō? To this class belong all Adverbs derived from Adjectives, 425. Besides these regular Adverbs of manner mark the following:

quomōdō } *how*
 quemadmōdū }
 ut, uti, *as*
 sic } *so*
 ita }
 adēo, *so, to that degree*
 quā, *how, how much*
 tam, *so, so much*
 aliter } *otherwise*
 secus }
 satis, *enough*
 satius, *rather*
 valde } *very*
 admōdū }
 quantop̄rē, *how greatly*
 tantop̄rē, *so greatly*
 nimis, nimium, *too much*
 praecipue, *especially*
 frustra, *in vain*
 temere, *at random*
 vix, *hardly*
 mōdō, *only*
 idēo }
 propterea } *therefore*
 idcirco }
 itē, *just so, also*
 porro, *moreover, then*

ferē, ferme, *almost*
 saltē, *at least*
 paenē, *nearly*
 fortassē, *perhaps*
 palām, *publicly*
 rep̄ntē, *suddenly*
 nemp̄ } *to wit*
 scilicet }
 paulatim, *by degrees*
 penitus, *wholly*
 planē, *quite*
 omnino, *at all*
 nae }
 utique } *at any rate*
 sanē, *certainly*
 nimirū, *to be sure*
 nōn } *no*
 haud }
 haudquāquam } *by no means*
 nequāquam }
 ne-quidē, *not even*
 neutiquām, *not at all*
 immō, *on the contrary*
 cū } *why*
 quare }
 prop̄, *near* } *also prep.*
 clam, *secretly* }

439. The following Adverbs are called **Correlatives**, because they answer to each other.

Interrogative.	Demonstrative.	Relative.
I. Of Place:		
ūbī? <i>where?</i>	ībī, <i>there</i>	ūbī, <i>where</i>
quā? <i>which way?</i>	hāc, <i>this way</i>	quā, <i>which way</i>
undē? <i>whence?</i>	indē, <i>thence</i>	undē, <i>whence</i>
	hinc, <i>hence</i>	
	illinc, <i>thence</i>	
	istinc, <i>thence</i>	
quō? <i>whither?</i>	ēō, <i>thither</i>	quō, <i>whither</i>
	hūc, <i>hither</i>	
	illūc, <i>thither</i>	
	istūc, <i>thither</i>	
II. Of Time:		
quandō? <i>when?</i>	tūm, <i>then</i>	cūm, <i>when</i>
	tunc, <i>at that time</i>	
quōtīens? <i>how often?</i>	tōtīens, <i>so often</i>	quōtīens, <i>as often as</i>
III. Of Manner:		
quōmōdō? <i>how?</i>	ītā, sic, <i>so, thus</i>	ūt, ūtī, <i>as</i>
quā? <i>how much?</i>	tām, <i>so much</i>	quām, <i>as</i>

[185. 186.]

Comparison of Adverbs.

440. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. Their comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing ūs into ē.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
clārē, <i>brightly</i>	clārīūs, <i>more brightly</i>	clārissimē, <i>most brightly</i>
fācilē, <i>easily</i>	fāciliūs, <i>more easily</i>	fācillimē, <i>most easily</i>
diligentēr, <i>carefully</i>	diligentiūs, <i>more carefully</i>	diligentissimē, <i>most carefully</i>
pātientēr, <i>patiently</i>	pātientiūs, <i>more patiently</i>	pātientissimē, <i>most patiently</i>

441. The following are **Irregular**:

bēnē, <i>well</i>	mēliūs, <i>better</i>	optīmē, <i>best</i>
mālē, <i>badly</i>	pējūs, <i>worse</i>	pešsīmē, <i>worst</i>
multūm, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimūm, <i>most</i>
nōn multūm, <i>little</i>	mīnūs, <i>less</i>	mīnīmē, <i>least</i>
magnōpērē, <i>greatly</i>	māgīs, <i>more</i>	maxīmē, <i>most</i>
dīū, <i>for a long time</i>	dīūtīūs, <i>longer</i>	dīūtissīmē, <i>very long</i>
saepē, <i>often</i>	saepīūs, <i>oftener</i>	saepissīmē, <i>oftenest</i>
prōpē, <i>near</i>	prōpiūs, <i>nearer</i>	proxīmē, <i>nearest</i>

442. The following are **Defective**:

—	dētēriūs, <i>worse</i>	dētērrīmē, <i>worst</i>
—	ōciūs, <i>more quickly</i>	ōcissīmē, <i>most quickly</i>
—	pōtīūs, <i>rather</i>	pōtissimūm, <i>most of all</i>
—	prīūs, <i>sooner</i>	prīmūm, <i>first</i>
mēritō, <i>deservedly</i>	—	mēritissimō, <i>most deservedly</i>
nūpēr, <i>lately</i>	—	nūperrīmē, <i>very lately</i>
sātīs, <i>enough</i>	sātīūs, <i>better</i>	—
sēcūs, <i>otherwise</i>	sēquiūs, <i>less</i>	—

[97. 98.]

PREPOSITIONS.

443. The Latin Prepositions are regularly used with some special case of a noun or pronoun, either the **Accusative** or **Ablative**.

444. The following are used with the **Accusative**:

ād, <i>to, at, toward</i>	ōb, <i>for, on account of</i>
adversūs, <i>adversum, against,</i> <i>toward</i>	pēnēs, <i>in the power of</i>
antē, <i>before</i>	pēr, <i>through, by, during</i>
āpūd, <i>at, with, near</i>	pōnē, <i>behind</i>
circā, <i>circum, around</i>	post, <i>after, behind</i>
circitēr, <i>about, near</i>	praetēr, <i>past, beside, except</i>
cīs, <i>citra, on this side of</i>	prōpē, <i>near</i>
contrā, <i>against, opposite to</i>	proptēr, <i>on account of, close by</i>
ergā, <i>toward, unto</i>	sēcundūm, <i>after, next to, accord-</i> <i>ing to, along</i>
extrā, <i>without, beyond</i>	sūprā, <i>above</i>
infrā, <i>under, beneath</i>	trans, <i>across, over, beyond</i>
intēr, <i>between, among</i>	ultrā, <i>beyond, on the further</i> <i>side of, past</i>
intrā, <i>within</i>	versūs, <i>toward</i>
juxtā, <i>near, beside</i>	

[91. 92. 937. 938.]

445. The following are used with the **Ablative**:

ā	} from, away from	dē, from, down from, of=about
āh		ē, ex, from, out of
abs		prae, for, before, in comparison with
absquē, without, but for		prō, for, instead of
clām, without the knowledge of		sīnē, without
cōrām, in presence of		tēnūs, as far as, up to
cūm, with		

446. Prepositions with the **Accusative** and **Ablative**, but strictly with a difference of meaning:

In, into, in; **sūb**, under; **subtēr**, beneath; **sūpēr**, above.

In and **sūb**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion to*, when by the **Ablative** *rest in*, a place.

[93. 94. 95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

CONJUNCTIONS.

447. **Conjunctions** connect words and sentences. According to their use, they are divided into **Co-ordinating** and **Subordinating** Conjunctions.

Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

448. **Co-ordinating** Conjunctions are those that join together sentences of equal order or rank.

449.

Copulative.

ēt	} and	ētīām	} also
-quē		quōquē	
atquē		nēc	} and not
āc		nēquē	
ēt..ēt, both..and		nēquē..nēquē	} neither..nor
cūm..tūm, both..and especially		nēc..nēc	
mōdō..mōdō	} now..now	nēquē..-quē, on the one hand	} not..and on the other
nunc..nunc		ēt..nēquē, on the one hand..	
tūm..tūm, then..then		and on the other hand not	
tām..quām, both..and			
nōn sōlūm..sēd ētīām	} not only..but also		
nōn mōdō..sēd ētīām			
nōn tantūm..sēd ētīām			

450.

aut }
vél } *or*
-vê }
sivê }

451.

autēm }
sēd } *but*
vērūm }
vērō }
āt }
attāmēn, *but yet*

452.

nām, namquē, *for*

453.

itāquē }
igitūr } *therefore*
ergō }
ēō }
idēō } *on that account*
ideircō }

Disjunctive.

aut...aut }
vél...vél } *either...or*
sivē...sivē, *whether...or*

Adversative.

atquī, *but for all that*
tāmēn, *nevertheless*
cētērūm, *for the rest*
āt vērō, *but in truth*
vērūm ēnīm vērō, *but in truth*
vērumtāmēn, *but yet*

Causal.

ēnīm, ētēnīm, *for*

Illative.

prōindē, *accordingly*
proptērcā, *therefore*
quārē }
quām ōb rēm } *wherefore*
quāproptēr }
quōcircā }

[99. 100. 189. 190. 295-300.]

Subordinating Conjunctions.

454. Subordinating Conjunctions are those which join a subordinate sentence to that on which it depends.

455.

Temporal.

postquām, *after that, after*
ūt, *as*
ūbī, *when*
sīmūlāc }
sīmūlatquē } *as soon as*
ūt prīmūm } *the first moment*
cūm prīmūm } *that*

cūm, *when*
dūm }
dōnēc } *while, until*
quōdā, *up to*
quamdiū, *as long as*
antēquām } *before that, before*
priusquām }

[257. 258.]

456.

quā } *because*
quod }
cū, *as, since*

Causal.

quoniam } *since, in as*
quandō } *much as*
quandōquidē }
siquidē } [259. 260.]

457.

sī, *if*
nisi, *unless*
sī nōn, *if not*
dummōdō } *if only, provided*
dūm }
mōdō }

Conditional.

sī mōdō, *if only*
sīn, *if not, but if*
quodsī, *but if*
dummōdō nē } *provided only not*
dūm nē } [261. 262.]
mōdō nē }

458.

etsī } *although*
tāmetī }
ētīamsī }
quamquām }

Concessive.

licēt } *though, suppose,*
quamvis } *whereas*
cū }
ūt }

459.

ūt, *that, in order that*
nē, *that not, lest*
nēvē (nēū), *and (that) not*

Final.

quō (= ut ēō), *in order that*
quōmīnūs, *that not*

460.

ūt, *so that*

Consecutive.

ūt nōn } *so that not*
quīn } [253-256.]

461.

ūt } *as, like as*
sīcūt }
vēlūt }
quām }
ūt...itā } *as...so*
quēmadmōdūm...itā }

Comparative.

tanquām } *as if*
quāsī }
ūt sī }
āc sī }
prōindē āc sī }

462.

-nē } *whether*
nūm }
utrūm }
ān }

Interrogative.

nonnē, *whether not*
annōn } *or not*
necnē }

INTERJECTIONS.

463. An **Interjection** is not in the proper sense a part of speech, since it is not in grammatical construction with a sentence, but is *thrown in* as a direct intimation of feeling or of will.

464. The **Interjections** most commonly used are:

Of painful feeling or suffering:

hēi, hēu, ah, alas! ō, oh! vae, alas, woe!

Of surprise or astonishment:

eccē, en, behold! hēm, ohō! ō, oh!

Of calling attention:

hēus, ho! ō, lo! ōhē, holloa! prō, hollo!

WORD-FORMATION.

465. There are two modes of forming words, viz.:

Derivation, or the formation of words by derivative endings (suffixes), and **Composition**, or the combination of two words expressing distinct ideas so as to form one word expressing one idea.

466. With reference to *derivation*, words are distinguished as **primitive** or **stem-words**, and **derivative**; with reference to *composition*, as **simple** and **compound**. The derived and compounded words greatly outnumber the so-called stem-words.

DERIVATION.

467. All words which may be grouped into one family so as to associate their meaning are said to have a common ground-form or **Root**. Thus:

ācūō, -ērē, to whet

ācūs, -ūs, a needle

ācūtūs, -ā, -ūm, sharp

ācēr, -rīs, -rē, sharp

ācūmēn, -īnīs, acuteness

ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, sharp

āciēs, -ēī, an edge

ācidūs, -ā, -ūm, sour

may all be retraced to the ROOT AC.

468. The **Stem** must be distinguished from the **Root**. The stem is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Inflections*, as: *ācū-ērē*, to *whet*, stem *ācū*.. Again, the root is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Suffix*; thus the verb-stem *ācū* belongs to the root *AC*.

469. As a rule, **Derivatives** are formed by means of **Suffixes**, or significant endings which are added to the stem-word to define or modify its meaning.

Derivation of Verbs.

470. Primitive Verbs. Most verbs of the Third Conjugation, the Irregular Verbs and a few vowel-stems, namely: *dārē*, *stārē*, *flērē*, *nārē*, *nērē*, *rērē*, are to be regarded as **Primitives**.

Verbs derived from Verbs.

471. Frequentatives end in *ārē* or *itārē*, and denote a *forcible or repeated action*; they are derived either from Supines in *sūm* or *tūm*, as:

<i>dicō</i> , I say	<i>dictūm</i>	<i>dictārē</i> , to dictate
<i>hābēō</i> , I have	<i>hābitūm</i>	<i>hābitārē</i> , to have frequently
<i>currō</i> , I run	<i>cursūm</i>	<i>cursārē</i> , to run about

or from the Present of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Conjugations, as:

<i>clāmō</i> , I cry	<i>clāmārē</i>	<i>clamītārē</i> , to cry out aloud
<i>lātēō</i> , I am hid	<i>lātērē</i>	<i>lātītārē</i> , to lie hid
<i>āgō</i> , I do	<i>āgērē</i>	<i>āgītārē</i> , to drive

472. Inceptives (Inchoatives) denote the *beginning* of an action. They are formed from vowel-stems (1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations) by adding *sc*, and from consonant-stems (3d Conjugation) by adding *isc*. The great majority of Inchoatives in *ascō* and *escō* come from Substantives and Adjectives, as:

<i>pūēascō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , from <i>pūēr</i> , to attain the age of boyhood
<i>silvescō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , from <i>silvā</i> , to grow wild
<i>mītescō</i> , - <i>ērē</i> , from <i>mītīs</i> , to become mild

473. Desideratives denote *desire* or *tendency*. They are formed by changing *ūrūs* of the Future Participle into *ūrīō*, and are of the 4th Conjugation. Only a few are in common use:

<i>ēsūrīō</i> , - <i>irē</i> , to be hungry, from <i>ēdō</i> , <i>ēsūrūs</i>
<i>mōritūrīō</i> , - <i>irē</i> , to wish to die, from <i>mōrīor</i> , <i>mōritūrūs</i> .

474. Diminutives denoting a feeble or petty action end in *illārē*, and are of the First Conjugation, as:

cantillārē, to chirp

scribillārē, to scribble.

Verbs derived from Substantives and Adjectives.

475. Verbs from *Substantives* and *Adjectives* are commonly called **Denominatives**. They belong to the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations. Verbs from Substantives signify either to supply with that which the Substantive denotes, or to use or apply it. Verbs from Adjectives usually signify, either as intransitives, to be in or to pass into the condition denoted by the Adjective, or else, as transitives, to reduce something to that state; for examples see below.

476. Active Verbs of the First Conjugation (transitive):

signū – *signārē*, to mark

vulnū – *vulnerārē*, to wound

curvū – *curvārē*, to bend

nūdū – *nūdārē*, to strip

māculā – *māculārē*, to spot

sānū – *sānārē*, to heal

nōmen – *nōminārē*, to name

aptū – *aptārē*, to fit

vox – *vocārē*, to call

liber – *liberārē*, to free

477. Active Verbs of the Second Conjugation (intransitive):

flōs – *flōrērē*, to bloom

albū – *albērē*, to be white

frons – *frondērē*, to be in leaf

calvū – *calvērē*, to be bald

lux – *lūcērē*, to shine

flāvū – *flāvērē*, to be yellow

478. Active Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation (either intransitive or transitive):

finis – *finīrē*, to finish

mollis – *mollīrē*, to soften

poenā – *pūnīrē*, to punish

stābilis – *stābilīrē*, to establish

vestis – *vestīrē*, to clothe

lēnis – *lēnīrē*, to assuage

sītis – *sītīrē*, to be thirsty

saevūs – *saevīrē*, to rage

tussis – *tussīrē*, to cough

sūperbūs – *sūperbīrē*, to be proud

servūs – *servīrē*, to serve

fērox – *fērōcīrē*, to be furious

479. Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation, signifying condition, employment:

dōmīnūs – *dōmīnārī*, to be master

auceps – *aucūpārī*, to catch birds

fāmūlūs – *fāmūlārī*, to serve

convīvā – *convīvārī*, to banquet

aemūlūs – *aemūlārī*, to emulate

cōmēs – *cōmītārī*, to accompany

fūr – *fūrārī*, to steal

āquā – *āquārī*, to fetch water

Derivation of Substantives.

Substantives derived from Substantives.

480. Diminutives generally end in:

ūlūs, ūlā, ūlūm; cūlūs, cūlā, cūlūm,

and regularly take the gender-ending of their Primitives:

nīdūs, a nest
rīvūs, a brook
mensā, a table
saxūm, a rock
frātēr, a brother
passēr, a sparrow
arbōr, a tree
mūnūs, a gift

nīdūlūs, a little nest
rīvūlūs, a streamlet
mensūlā, a little table
saxūlūm, a little rock
frātercūlūs, a little brother
passercūlūs, a little sparrow
arbusculā, a small tree
mūnuscūlūm, a little gift

481. After a vowel, **ōlūs, ōlā, ōlūm** are used. Some nouns form Diminutives in **ellūs, ellā, ellūm**; rarely **illūs, illā, illūm**.

filīūs, a son
glādiūs, a sword
filīā, a daughter
ātrīūm, a hall
libēr, a book
tābulā, a table
lāpis, a stone
signūm, a mark

filīōlūs, a little son
glādiōlūs, a small sword
filīōlā, a little daughter
ātrīōlūm, a small hall
libellūs, a little book
tābellā, a tablet
lāpillūs, a little stone
sīgillūm, a seal

482. The Suffix **ārīūm** designates the place where any thing is kept, as:

cōlumbārīūm, dove-cot
herbārīūm, herbarium
grānārīūm, a granary
pōmārīūm, an orchard
sēmīnārīūm, a seed-plot

from **cōlumbā**
 “ **herbā**
 “ **grānūm**
 “ **pōmūm**
 “ **sēmēn**

483. The Suffix **ētūm** used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they grow in abundance:

frūtīcētūm, a copse
myrtētūm, a myrtle grove
quercētūm, a forest of oaks
vinētūm, a vineyard

from **frūtex**
 “ **myrtūs**
 “ **quercūs**
 “ **vinūm**

484. The Suffix **ilē** annexed to names of animals designates their *stall* or *fold*:

bōvilē, <i>stall for cattle</i>	from bōs
ēquilē, <i>a stable for horses</i>	“ ēquūs
ōvilē, <i>a sheepfold</i>	“ ōvis
cāprilē, <i>a stall for goats</i>	“ cāpēr

485. The Suffix **inā** indicates especially the *state, condition, or occupation* of a person; sometimes also the *place* where an occupation is carried on:

mēdicinā, <i>the medical art</i>	from mēdicūs
sūtrīnā, <i>a shoemaker's shop</i>	“ sūlōr
tonstrīnā, <i>a barber's shop</i>	“ tonsōr

486. The Suffix **iūm** added to names of persons forms **Abstracts** signifying *character, rank, &c.*, and **Collectives**, as:

servitūm, <i>servitude</i>	from servūs
sācerdotiūm, <i>priesthood</i>	“ sācerdōs
mīnisteriūm, <i>ministry</i>	“ mīnistēr
exsiliūm, <i>banishment</i>	“ exsūl

487. **Patronymics**, denoting *parentage*, generally end in:

Idēs, idēs, iādēs, ādēs (*Masculine*); **Is, ēis, iās** (*Feminine*):

Prīāmīdēs, <i>son of Priam</i>	from Prīāmūs
Ātrīdēs, <i>son of Atreus</i>	“ Ātreus
Thestīādēs, <i>son of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs
Aenēādēs, <i>son of Aeneas</i>	“ Aenēās
Tantālīs, <i>daughter of Tantalus</i>	“ Tantālūs
Nērēis, <i>daughter of Nereus</i>	“ Nērēus
Thestīās, <i>daughter of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs

Substantives derived from Adjectives.

488. From **Adjectives** are formed various **Abstract Nouns** with the Suffixes:

iā, (i)tiā, itiēs, (i)tās, (i)tūdō, mōniā.

grātīā, <i>favor</i>	from grātūs
mālitiā, <i>badness</i>	“ mālūs
segnitiā, <i>segnitiēs, sloth</i>	“ segnis
cēlērītās, <i>swiftness</i>	“ cēlēr
libertās, <i>liberty</i>	“ libēr
sōlītūdō, <i>solitude</i>	“ sōlūs
ācrimōniā, <i>sharpness</i>	“ ācēr

Substantives derived from Verbs.

489. Derivatives in **ör**, **üm** and **ělä** from verb-stems signify, in general, the *act or state expressed by the verb*:

āmör , <i>love</i>	from āmārē
tīmör , <i>fear</i>	" timērē
fūrör , <i>rage</i>	" fürērē
gaudiüm , <i>joy</i>	" gaudērē
ödīüm , <i>hatred</i>	" ödissē
quērēlä , <i>a complaint</i>	" quēri
cautēlä , <i>a caution</i>	" cävērē
tütēlä , <i>protection</i>	" tütäri

490. Derivatives in **tör** and **sör** from Supines denote the *personal agent*:

mönitör , <i>a monitor</i>	from mönēō , -itüm
lectör , <i>a reader</i>	" lēgō , lectüm
auditör , <i>a hearer</i>	" audīō , -itüm
messör , <i>a reaper</i>	" mētō , messüm
cursör , <i>a runner</i>	" currō , cursüm

491. A few Derivatives in **tör** are formed in imitation of these, from Substantives, as:

viätör, *a traveler*, from **viä**; **jänitör**, *a doorkeeper*, from **jänüä**.

492. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*, but is less common than the masculine:

adjütör , <i>adjütrix</i> , <i>an assistant</i>	from adjüvārē
fautör , <i>fautrix</i> , <i>a promoter</i>	" fävērē
praeceptör , <i>praeceprix</i> , <i>a teacher</i>	" praeçipērē
victör , <i>victrix</i> , <i>a conqueror</i>	" vincērē

493. The Suffixes **tīō**, **tūs** and **sūs** (*gen. tūs*), **tūrā** and **sūrā** form *abstract nouns* from Supines and denote the *act itself*:

actiō , <i>an action</i>	from ägō - actüm
inventiō , <i>an invention</i>	" invēniō - inventüm
mōtūs , <i>a motion</i>	" mōvēō - mōtüm
cursūs , <i>a running</i>	" currō - cursüm
consensūs , <i>consensīō</i> , <i>agreement</i>	" consentiō - consensüm
armätürä , <i>equipment</i>	" armō - armätüm
conjectürä , <i>a conjecture</i>	" conjiçiō - conjectüm
pictürä , <i>a painting</i>	" pingō - pictüm
censürä , <i>a judging</i>	" censēō - censüm

Of these only a few become *Concrete nouns*:

accūsātīḥ , <i>a bill of indictment</i>	from accūsō – accūsātūm
commentātīḥ , <i>a treatise</i>	“ commentōr , – ātūm
ōrātīḥ , <i>a speech</i>	“ ōrō – ōrātūm
possessiōnēs , <i>an estate</i>	“ possidēsō – possessūm
vēnātīḥ , <i>game</i>	“ vēnōr – vēnātūm

494. Derivatives in **mēn**, **mentūm**, **ūlūm**, **būlūm**, **cūlūm** denote an *instrument* for performing the act expressed by the verb or a *place* for its performance:

lēvāmēn , <i>alleviation</i>	from lēvārē
agmēn , <i>a train</i>	“ āgērē
flūmēn , <i>a river</i>	“ flūērē
vōlūmēn , <i>a roll</i>	“ volvērē
ālimentūm , <i>nourishment</i>	“ ālērē
jācūlūm , <i>a javelin</i>	“ jācūlārī
pābūlūm , <i>fodder</i>	“ pascērē
vēnābūlūm , <i>a hunting spear</i>	“ vēnārī
stābūlūm , <i>a stable</i>	“ stārē
cūbīcūlūm , <i>a bedroom</i>	“ cūbārē

495. Derivatives in **crūm** and **trūm** denote *instrument* or *locality*:

fulcrūm , <i>a prop</i>	from fulcīrē
sēpulcrūm , <i>a grave</i>	“ sēpēlīrē
ārātrūm , <i>a plow</i>	“ ārārē
claustrūm , <i>a bar</i>	“ claudērē
rostrūm , <i>a beak</i>	“ rōdērē
lāvācrūm , <i>a bath</i>	“ lāvārē

Derivation of Adjectives.

Adjectives derived from Verbs.

496. The Suffixes **bundūs** and **cundūs** have the general meaning of the *Present Participle*; in many the meaning is somewhat strengthened.

mīrābundūs , <i>wondering</i>	from mīrārī
vērēcundūs , <i>bashful</i>	“ vērērī
vēnērābundūs , <i>revering</i>	“ vēnērārī
fūrībundūs , <i>raging</i>	“ fūrērē
jūcundūs , <i>pleasing</i>	“ jūvārē
vāgābundūs , <i>vagrant</i>	“ vāgārī

497. The Suffix **idūs** denotes the *quality* or *state* expressed by the verb:

turbidūs, <i>troubled</i>	from turbāre	vālidūs, <i>strong</i>	from vālērē
cālidūs, <i>warm</i>	“ cālērē	rāpidūs, <i>rapid</i>	“ rāpērē

498. The Suffixes **ilis** and **bilis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense:

dōcīlis, <i>docile</i>	from dōcērē	āmābilis, <i>amiable</i>	from āmārē
fācīlis, <i>easy to do</i>	“ fācērē	mōbilis, <i>moveable</i>	“ mōvērē

499. The Suffixes **ax** and **ūlus** denote *inclination*, generally a faulty one:

audax, <i>daring</i>	from audērē	crēdūlus, <i>credulous</i>	from crēdērē
fallax, <i>fallacious</i>	“ fallērē	garrūlus, <i>chattering</i>	“ garrīrē

Adjectives derived from Substantives.

FROM COMMON NOUNS.

500. The Suffix **ēus** expresses the material of which any thing is made:

aurēus, <i>golden</i>	from aurūm	ferrēus, <i>iron</i>	from ferrūm
argentēus, <i>silver</i>	“ argentūm	lignēus, <i>wooden</i>	“ lignūm

501. The Suffixes: **iūs**, **icūs**, **icīūs**, **ilis**, **ālis**, **āris**, **nūs**, **ivūs**, **ensīs**, **āriūs** denote *belonging to*:

ōrātōriūs, <i>of an orator</i>	from ōrātōr
bellīcūs, <i>warlike</i>	“ bellūm
lātēricīūs, <i>of brick</i>	“ lātēr
vīrilīs, <i>manly</i>	“ vīr
nāvālīs, <i>naval</i>	“ nāvīs
mīlītārīs, <i>military</i>	“ mīlēs
pāternūs, <i>paternal</i>	“ pātēr
aestīvūs, <i>belonging to summer</i>	“ aestās
fōrensīs, <i>belonging to the forum</i>	“ fōrūm
grēgārīūs, <i>belonging to a flock</i>	“ grex

502. The Suffixes **ōsus** and **entūs** denote *fulness*:

pēriculōsus, <i>full of danger</i>	from pēriculūm
fructūōsus, <i>abounding in fruit</i>	“ fructūs
turbulētūs, <i>full of trouble</i>	“ turbā
somnūlentūs, <i>sleepy</i>	“ somnūs

503. The Suffixes **ātūs**, **itūs**, **ūtūs** denote *provided with*:

ālātūs, <i>winged</i>	from ālā	barbātūs, <i>bearded</i>	from barbā
pellītūs, <i>clad in skins</i>	“ pellīs	cornūtūs, <i>horned</i>	“ cornū

504. The Suffixes **ānūs** and **īnūs** denote *belonging to or coming from*:

urbānūs, <i>belonging to the city</i>	from urbs
montānūs, <i>belonging to the mountain</i>	" mons
āsīnīnūs, <i>produced by the ass</i>	" āsīnūs
ēquīnūs, <i>belonging to horses</i>	" ēquūs

FROM PROPER NAMES:

505. Adjectives with the Suffixes **īānūs**, and more rarely **ānūs** and **īnūs** are formed from names of persons:

Caesārīānūs, <i>belonging to Caesar</i>	from Caesār
Sullānī, <i>Sulla's veterans</i>	" Sullā
Verrīnūs, <i>belonging to Verres</i>	" Verrēs

506. The Suffixes **ēūs** and **īcūs** are used with *Greek* names:

Pŷthāgōrēūs, <i>Pythagorean</i>	from Pŷthāgōrās
Sōcrātīcūs, <i>Socratic</i>	" Sōcrātēs

507. Patrial or Gentile Adjectives (derived from the names of places or peoples) generally end in **ānūs**, **īnūs**, **ensīs**, **ās** (**Gen. ātīs**), and are also used substantively:

Rōmānūs, <i>a Roman</i>	from Rōmā
Āmērīnūs, <i>of Ameria</i>	" Āmērīā
Cannensīs, <i>of Cannae</i>	" Cannā
Arpīnās (-ātīs), <i>of Arpinum</i>	" Arpīnūm

508. Greek names of places form Patrials in **īūs** and **aeūs**; as:

Cōrīnthīūs, *of Corinth*, from Cōrīnthūs; Smyrnaeūs, *of Smyrna*, from Smyrnā.

509. From many names of *peoples*, Adjectives are formed in **īcūs** and sometimes **īūs**:

Gallīcūs, <i>Gallic</i>	from Gallūs	Thrācīcūs, <i>Thracian</i>	from Thrāx
Persīcūs, <i>Persian</i>	" Persā	Sŷrīūs, <i>Syrian</i>	" Sŷrīā

Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

510. From Adjectives are formed Diminutives in **ūlūs**, **ōlūs**, **ellūs** and **cūlūs** in the same manner as from nouns. **cūlūs** is sometimes added to Comparatives:

parvūlūs, <i>very small</i>	from parvūs
aurēōlūs, <i>gilded</i>	" aurēūs
pulchellūs, <i>beautiful little</i>	" pulchēr
paupercūlūs, <i>poorly</i>	" paupēr
mājuscūlūs, <i>somewhat larger</i>	" mājōr

Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

511. A few Adjectives are formed from *Adverbs*:

crastinūs, of to-morrow	from crās
dīūtīnūs, lasting	“ dīū
pristīnūs, former	“ priūs
mātūtīnūs, belonging to the morning	“ mănē
rēpentīnūs, sudden	“ rēpentē
hesternūs, of yesterday	“ hērī
hōdiernūs, of to-day	“ hōdiē
diurnūs, daily	“ dīū
nocturnūs, belonging to night	“ noctū

COMPOSITION.

512. Every **Compound** may be regarded as consisting of two parts. The second part of the composition expresses the *principal idea* (**Principal term**) and the first a **Modification** thereof. The principal term may be a Verb, an Adjective, or a Substantive.

Compound Verbs.

513. The *second part* of a compound verb is *always a Verb*; also the *first part* may be a Verb, but this only takes place when the second part is *făciō* or *fīō*:

assuēfăcērē, to accustom	from assuescērē & făcērē
călēfăcērē, to warm	“ călērē “ “
commōnēfăcērē, to remind	“ commōnērē “ “
pătēfăcērē, to open	“ pătērē “ “

514. The *first part* of a compound verb may be a **Noun**, as:

ănimadvertērē, to notice	from ănimūs & vertērē
mănūmittērē, to set free	“ mănūs “ mittērē
ūsūcăpērē, to acquire by use	“ ūsūs “ căpērē

515. The *first part* of a compound verb may be an **Adverb**:

bēnēfăcērē, to do good	from bēnē & făcērē
mălēdicērē, to curse	“ mălē “ dicērē
bēnēdicērē, to bless	“ bēnē “ “
sătisfăcērē, to satisfy	“ sătīs “ făcērē
sătăgērē, to have one's hands full	“ sătīs “ ăgērē

516. The *majority* of Compound Verbs are made with separable or inseparable **Prepositions** having the value of an adverb, as:

ā, āb	<i>away</i>	āvōlārē, to fly away
ād	<i>to, towards</i>	adjicērē, to throw to
antē	<i>before</i>	antēpōnērē, to set before
circūm	<i>around</i>	circumdārē, to surround
cōm, cōn	<i>together</i>	colligērē, to bring together
dē	<i>down</i>	dēcēdērē, to go down
ē, ex	<i>out</i>	expōnērē, to set out
in	<i>in, into</i>	īnirē, to go into
intēr	<i>between</i>	intēressē, to be between
ōb	<i>toward, against</i>	obstārē, to stand opposed
pēr	<i>through</i>	perlēgērē, to read through
post	<i>after, inferior</i>	postpōnērē, to put below
prae	<i>before</i>	praevidērē, to foresee
praetēr	<i>past, beyond</i>	praetērīrē, to pass by
prō	<i>before</i>	prōpōnērē, to place before
sūb	<i>under</i>	sūbirē, to come under
subtēr	<i>underneath, secretly</i>	subtērfūgērē, to flee secretly
amb	<i>around</i>	ambīrē, to go around
dis	<i>asunder, apart</i>	discēdērē, to depart
rē	<i>back, again</i>	rēficērē, to make again
sē	<i>apart</i>	sēcernērē, to separate

517. In composition with **Prepositions**, the vowels **ā** and **ē** of the simple verb are changed into **ī**, and the diphthong **ae** into **ī**; **au** generally becomes **ō** or **ū**; before two consonants **ā** becomes **ē**, but **e** is retained:

fācērē, to make	conficērē, to accomplish
ēmērē, to buy	rēdīmērē, to redeem
quaerērē, to seek	conquīrērē, to search out
plaudērē, to clap	explōdērē, to hiss off
claudērē, to shut	conclūdērē, to close up
fācērē, to make	confectūs, accomplished
pellērē, to drive	compellērē, to force

For *Irregularities* compare the **Index of Verbs** (pag. 277) with reference from each to the paragraph where its conjugation is described.

518. Prepositions in Composition often undergo a change of their final consonant which is called **Assimilation**. The Rules of this assimilation may be seen in the following:

519.

ā, āb, abs.

a before **m** and **v**, and in **āfūl**: **āmīttērē, āvellērē, āfūl, āfūērām**;

ab before vowels and **j, h, b, d, l, n, r, s**:

ābirē, ābundārē, ābbreviārē, ābnūērē, ābhorrērē, ābjūrārē;

as before **p**: **asportārē, aspernārī**;

au before **f**: **aufūgērē, auferērē**;

abs before **c, t**: **abscēdērē, abstīnērē, abstrāhērē**.

520.

ād.

ad before vowels, **j, h, b, d, f, m, n, q, v**:

ādāmārē, ādferērē, ādquīrērē, ādvōlārē, ādjūvārē, ādnuntīārē;

ac before **c** (not so good before **q**): **accīrē, ādquīrērē (acquirērē)**;

ag & ad before **g**: **aggērērē & adgērērē, aggrēdī & adgrēdī**;

a & ad before **gn, sp, sc, st**:

agnoscērē, ādgnoscērē, āspicērē, ādspicērē, āspirārē;

ad & al before **l**: **ādlēvārē, allēvārē; adlōqui, allōqui**;

ap before **p**: **appārērē, appellārē, appōnērē, applicārē**;

ad & ar before **r**: **adrīpērē & arrīpērē; adridērē & arridērē**;

ad & as before **s**: **adsignārē & assignārē; adsērērē & assērērē**;

at before **t**: **attendērē, attrībūrē, attingērē, attrāhērē**.

521. antē becomes **anti** in: **antistārē, antīcipārē**.

522. circūm may drop its final **m** before **ēō, lrē**:
circūmēō, circūēō, commonly **circūītūs, circūītō**.

523.

com (= cūm).

com before **b, p, m**: **combībērē, comparārē, committērē**;

con before **c, d, f, g, j, n, q, s, t, v**:

conclūdērē, condērē, congrēdī, conjungērē, continērē;

con & col before **l**: **conlābī & collābī; conlōcārē & collōcārē**;

cor before **r**: **corrīgērē, corripērē, corrōdērē, corrupērē**;

co before vowels and **h** (except **cōmēdō**):

cōirē, cōhaerērē, cōgērē (= cōāgērē), cōēmērē;

co before **gn**, and in a few words before **n**:

cognoscō, cōnectō, cōnīvō, cōnītōr, cōnūbīum.

524.

ē, ex.

ex before vowels and **h, c, p, q, s, t**:

exlrē, excipērē, exhibērē, existērē; Exception ēpōtārē;

e before **b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v**:

ēligērē, ējicērē, ēvādērē, ērumpērē, ēbībērē, ēdicērē;

ef before **f**: **effērē, efficērē, effūgērē, effōdērē**;

525.

in.

in before vowels and **h, c, d, f, g** (but not before **gn**), **j, n, q, s, t, v**:

inirë, inhîbërë, ingërërë, inquirërë, inficërë, invêhërë;

in, sometimes **il** before **l**; **in** & **ir** before **r**:

inlidërë & illidërë; inrumpërë & irrumpërë, irrüërë;

im before **m, b, p**: **immittërë, imbüërë, impônërë, impêrârë;**

i before **gn**: **ignôrârë, ignoscërë.**

526.

ob.

ob before vowels, **j, h, b, d, l, m, n, r, s, t, v**:

oboedirë, objicërë, oblivisci, obrêpërë, obstâre, obtingërë;

oc before **c**; **of** before **f**; **og** before **g**; **op** before **p**:

occurrërë, offerrë, oggërërë, oppônërë, opprimërë;

b is dropped in **ômittërë, ôpêrirë, ostendërë (= obs-tendere).**

527.

pêr.

per unchanged, except before **l**, as:

pellêgërë = perlêgërë; pellicërë = perlicërë.

In derivatives of **jûrârë**, the **r** is dropped, as: **pêjêrârë = perjûrârë.**

528.

sûb.

sub before vowels, **h, j, b, d, l, n, s, t, v**:

sûbigërë, subjungërë, subtrâhërë, subvertërë, subhastârë;

suc before **c**; **suf** before **f**; **sug** before **g**:

succêdërë, succumbërë, suffôcârë, sufficërë, suggërërë;

sum & **sub** before **m**; **sup** before **p**; **sur** & **sub** before **r**:

summittërë & submittërë; supponërë; surripërë & subripërë;

sus (= **subs**) occurs in:

suscipërë, suscîtârë, suspendërë, sustinërë, sustentârë, sustîll;

su before **sp**: **suspîcërë, suspîrârë, suspectârë.**

529.

trans.

trans before vowels and **b, c, f, g, p, r, t, v**:

transîgërë, transîgërë, transpônërë, transgrêdi, transvêhërë;

tran before **s**, and always before **sc**:

transîllirë, transcribërë, transcendërë, transêrërë, transüërë;

trans and often **tra** before **j, d, l, m, n**:

trâdërë, trâjicërë, transmîtterë & trâmîtterë, trâducërë;

Compound Substantives.

530. Compound Substantives are made up:

1. Of a *substantive* and a following *verbal stem*; the vowel connecting the two parts is *i*. as:

agricolā, <i>a farmer</i>	from	āgēr	&	cōlērē
armīgēr, <i>an armor-bearer</i>	"	armā	"	gērērē
artífex, <i>an artist</i>	"	ars	"	fācērē
parricidā, <i>a parricide</i>	"	pātēr	"	caedērē

2. Of two *substantives* or a *substantive* and an *adjective*:

solstitiūm, <i>solstice</i>	from	sōl	&	stātīō
rūpicāprā, <i>a wild goat</i>	"	rūpēs	"	cāprā
lēgislātōr, <i>a law-giver</i>	"	lex	"	lātōr
jūsūrāndūm, <i>an oath</i>	"	jūs	"	jūrāndūm
aequinoctiūm, <i>equinox</i>	"	aequūs	"	nox

3. Of a *substantive* and a preceding *particle*, as:

incūrā, <i>want of care</i>	from	in	&	cūrā
prōverbīūm, <i>a proverb</i>	"	prō	"	verbūm
sūperficiēs, <i>a surface</i>	"	sūpēr	"	fāciēs
nēmō, <i>no one</i>	"	nē	"	hōmō

Compound Adjectives.

531. Compound Adjectives are made up:

1. Of two *nouns* (including under this term *adjective* and *substantive*), as:

ignicolōr, <i>fire-colored</i>	from	ignīs	&	cōlōr
mīsēricōr, <i>tender-hearted</i>	"	mīsēr	"	cōr
magnānīmūs, <i>great-hearted</i>	"	magnūs	"	ānīmūs
ālīpēs, <i>wing-footed</i>	"	ālā	"	pēs

2. Of a *preposition* with a *substantive*. In this combination the prepositions *ā*, *dē*, *ex*, *in*, *sē* have negative power:

concor, <i>harmonious</i>	from	con	&	cōr
āmens	"	ā	"	mens
dēmens	"	dē	"	mens
īners, <i>unskilled</i>	"	īn	"	ars
sēcūrūs, <i>free from care</i>	"	sē	"	cūrā

3. Of a *preposition* with an *adjective*. The prepositions used in this way are: *pēr*, *prae*, *very*; *sūb*, *somewhat*; *in*, *not*:

perdifficilis, <i>very difficult</i>	from	pēr	&	difficilis
praepotens, <i>very powerful</i>	"	prae	"	pōtens
subrusticūs, <i>somewhat clownish</i>	"	sūb	"	rusticūs
indignūs, <i>unworthy</i>	"	in	"	dignūs

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE.

532. Syntax treats of the *Agreement, Government,* and *Disposition* of words in sentences. Sentences are of three kinds:

Assertions, or Statements, as: *consuetudo est altera natura; custom is second nature.*

Questions, as: *quid est levius pluma? what is lighter than a feather?*

Commands (demands, wishes), as: *divide et impera; divide and rule.*

533. The **Assertive Sentence**, as it is called, is the *main type* of all sentences, and the other two will be treated as variations of it.

Subject and Predicate.

534. Every simple sentence is composed of two parts: **Subject and Predicate.**

The **Subject** signifies that about which the assertion is made; the **Predicate** signifies that which is asserted of the Subject. In the sentence:

aurum splendet gold glitters
aurum is the subject; splendet the predicate.

535. The **Subject** of the sentence is in the **Nominative Case**, or so considered.

The **Subject** must be either a Noun, or some word or phrase standing for a noun, but it may be contained in the termination of the verb itself:

arbor floret	<i>the tree is blossoming</i>
hic laetatur, ille maeret	<i>this one rejoices, that one is sad</i>
errare humanum est	<i>to err is human</i>
veni, vidi, vici	<i>I came, I saw, I conquered.</i>

536. The **Predicate** must be either a Verb (**Verbal Predicate**), or an Adjective or what stands for an adjective with the verb *essē* (**Adjective Predicate**), or a Substantive with the verb *essē* (**Substantive Predicate**).

The **Verbal Predicate** agrees in **Person** and **Number** with its subject.

The **Adjective Predicate** (Adjective, Adjective Pronoun, Participle) agrees in **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case** with its subject.

The **Substantive Predicate** agrees in **Case** with its subject.

ego valēo, si vos valētis	<i>I am well if you are well</i>
arbor est procēra	<i>the tree is tall</i>
usus est tyrannus	<i>custom is a tyrant.</i>

537. When the predicate is a substantive with different terminations for the gender, such as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgīstēr	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēgīnā	<i>a king, queen</i>

it agrees with its subject also in number and gender.

usus est optimus magister	<i>experience is the best teacher</i>
vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est	<i>a country life is the teacher of frugality.</i>

538. When referring to a subject of the neuter gender, a predicate substantive with different terminations for the gender is always in the masculine gender.

tempus est vitae magister	<i>time is the teacher of life.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------

539. When the predicate substantive is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the subject.

bona conscientia est tutissima	<i>a good conscience is the safest</i>
comes hominum	<i>companion of men.</i>

540. Like *essē*, to *be*, several other verbs take **two Nominatives**, one of the **Subject** and the other of the **Predicate**. These are:

<i>fiērī</i> , to become, be made	<i>crēārī</i> , to be created
<i>evādērē</i> , to turn out	<i>cōrōnārī</i> , to be crowned
<i>existērē</i> , to become	<i>dīcī</i> , to be said, called
<i>mānērē</i> , to remain	<i>vōcārī</i> }
<i>vidērī</i> , to seem	<i>appellārī</i> } to be called
<i>appārērē</i> , to appear	<i>pūtārī</i> }
<i>nascī</i> , to be born	<i>hābērī</i> } to be thought, considered
<i>mōrī</i> , to die	<i>crēdī</i> , to be believed
<i>iudicārī</i> , to be considered	<i>existimārī</i> , to be regarded
<i>rosa pulcherrīmus flos habētur</i>	<i>the rose is considered the most beautiful flower.</i>

541. The **Predicate** of **two or more Subjects** is put in the **Plural Number**.

<i>Romūlus et Remus urbem Romam condidērunt</i>	<i>Romulus and Remus founded the city of Rome.</i>
---	--

542. Two or more singular nouns taken conjointly as a single idea may have a singular verb. Sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest.

<i>ratio et oratio societātis humanae vinculum est</i>	<i>reason and speech are the bond of human society</i>
<i>naves et praesidium excessit</i>	<i>the fleet and garrison departed.</i>

543. A collective noun may take a plural verb, as: *pars urbes petiērunt finitimas*, a part made for the neighboring towns.

544. In regard to the **Gender** of an **Adjective Predicate** referring to **two or more Subjects** mark the following:

When the subjects are of the same gender, the adjective predicate is of that gender; as:

<i>mater et soror mortuae sunt</i>	<i>mother and sister are dead.</i>
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

When the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes the masculine gender if the subjects are things **with life**, and the neuter if they are things **without life**; as:

<i>pater et mater mortui sunt</i>	<i>father and mother are dead</i>
<i>divitiae et honores incerta sunt</i>	<i>riches and honors are uncertain.</i>

When things with life and things without life are combined, the predicate adjective takes either the gender of the things with life, or is neuter, as:

rex regīaque classis profecti	<i>the king and the king's fleet</i>
sunt	<i>set out</i>
natūra inimica sunt libēra civitas	<i>a free state and a king are</i>
et rex	<i>natural enemies.</i>

545. When the Subjects are of **Different Persons**, the verb will be in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third.

In Latin the speaker generally mentions himself first.

ego et tu vicissitudinem fortunae	<i>you and I have experienced the</i>
expertī sumus	<i>vicissitude of fortune.</i>

[301. 302.]

Attribute and Apposition.

546. The most usual **Attribute** of a Substantive is an **Adjective** (including under this term the Adjective Pronouns and Participles); it agrees with its Substantive in **Number, Gender, and Case**.

	Gender.	Number.
<i>a white flower</i>	flōs albū	flōrēs albī
<i>a dark cloud</i>	nūbēs ōpācā	nūbēs ōpācae
<i>a golden vessel</i>	vās aurēū	vāsā aurēā

Case.

Gen. flōrīs albī	<i>of a white flower</i>
“ nūbīs ōpācae	<i>of a dark cloud</i>
“ vāsīs aurēī	<i>of a golden vessel</i>

547. The **Common Attribute** of two or more Substantives of different gender is either repeated or agrees with the nearest.

agri omnes et marīa	} <i>all lands and (all) seas</i>
omnes agri omniāque marīa	
agri et marīa omnia	
omnes (et) agri et marīa	

548. One Substantive placed after another to explain it, is by **Apposition** put in the same Case, and, when practicable, in the same Gender and Number.

Socrātes, sapientissimū vir
philosophia, vitae magistra
Athenae, omnium doctrinarum
inventrices

*Socrates, the wisest of men
philosophy, the teacher of life
Athens, the inventor of all
learning.*

549. Nouns in Apposition are sometimes used to express the time, condition, etc. of the action.

Hercūles juvenis leōnem inter-
fecit

*Hercules, when a young man,
slew a lion.*

550. In like manner the Latin Adjective is used appositively where the English idiom employs an adverb. Adjectives thus used are those expressive of joy, knowledge and their opposites, of order and position, of time and season, etc., as:

libens, with pleasure

solus, alone

ultimus, last

volens, willing(ly)

totus, wholly

medius, in the middle

nolens, unwilling(ly)

primus } first

frequens, frequent(ly)

invitus, against one's will

prior }

sciens, knowing(ly)

nemo saltat sobrius, no one dances when sober;

Socrātes primus hoc docuit, Socrates was the first who taught this.

[203. 204.]

Agreement of Pronouns.

551. A Relative or Demonstrative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number and Person, but the Case depends on the clause in which it stands.

animal, quod sanguinem habet,
sine corde esse non potest

*an animal which has blood can-
not be without a heart.*

When the Relative refers to a sentence, *Id quod* is commonly used.

gloria invidiam vicisti, id quod
est difficillimum

*you have overcome envy with
glory, which is most difficult.*

With antecedents of different gender the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives. (See 544.)

pueri et mulieres, qui capti
erant...

*the boys and women who had
been taken prisoners...*

With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third. (See 545.)

ego et tu, qui eodem anno nati
sumus...

*you and I who were born in
the same year...*

552. Sometimes a **Relative** or **Demonstrative Pronoun** agrees with a word in apposition or with a predicate rather than with its antecedent:

ama justam gloriam, qui est	<i>love real glory which is the</i>
fructus verae virtutis	<i>fruit of true virtue</i>
rerum caput hoc erat, hic fons	<i>this was the head of things, this the source.</i>

553. **Is**, **he**, and **idēm**, *the same*, are the **Antecedents** of **Relatives**:

(is) qui	{ <i>he who</i> <i>such as</i> <i>such that</i>	idem qui	{ <i>the same who</i> <i>the same as</i>
----------	---	----------	---

but **Is**, when Antecedent, is often suppressed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

quem dii diligunt adulescens	<i>(he) whom the gods love dies</i>
moritur	<i>young.</i>

554. An **Adjective** or **Apposition** belonging in sense to the Antecedent, sometimes appears in the relative clause in agreement with the relative.

Themistocles de servis suis	<i>Themistocles sent the most</i>
quem habuit fidelissimum ad	<i>faithful of the slaves which</i>
Xerxem misit	<i>he had to Xerxes</i>
omnes gentes regibus paruerunt,	<i>all nations obeyed kings, a kind</i>
quod genus imperii...	<i>of government which...</i>

555. **qui dicitur**, **qui vocatur**, or **quem dicunt**, **quem vocant** are used in the sense of *so-called*.

vestra, quae dicitur vita, mors est, your so-called life is death.

556. The **Relative** often stands at the beginning of a sentence where in English a demonstrative is generally used.

<i>quae cum ita sint</i>	<i>and since these things are so.</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------------

557. The **Relative** is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.

<i>is sum, qui semper fui</i>	<i>I am the same man I always was.</i>
	[205. 206.]

The Order of Words.

558. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the order of words than the English. The following practical rules will be found of value:

In general, put the **Subject first**, and the **Verb last**.

The **Subject** is followed by the words which modify it.

The **Verb** is preceded by the words which depend upon it.

Subject.	Dionysius,
Adjuncts of the Subject.	tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus
Adjuncts of the Predicate.	Corinthi pueros
Predicate.	docēbat.

Dionysius, the tyrant, after he had been driven from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.

559. An **Adjective** or dependent genitive follows the word to which it belongs:

nomen bonum instar unguenti	<i>a good name is like sweet-smelling ointment</i>
fragrantis	
metus mortis musica depellitur	<i>fear of death is dispelled by music.</i>

560. When a **Substantive** is modified by an adjective and a genitive, the usual order is: **Adjective — Genitive — Substantive.**

magna frumenti vis	<i>plenty of corn.</i>
--------------------	------------------------

561. A **Numeral** adjective or one **Essential** to the meaning of the phrase, goes before its noun:

omnes homines decet	<i>it becomes all men</i>
malum vas non frangitur	<i>a useless pitcher does not get broken.</i>

562. A **Demonstrative** pronoun precedes the noun; **Relatives** or **Interrogatives** stand first in their sentence or clause; **Adverbs** are commonly put next to the word they qualify.

haec te victoria perdet	<i>this victory will ruin you</i>
qui situnt, silentio bibunt	<i>they who are thirsty drink in silence</i>
quis custodiet ipsos custodes?	<i>who is to look after the keepers?</i>
male parta male dilabuntur	<i>evil gotten, evil spent.</i>

563. **Prepositions** regularly precede their nouns except *tēnūs* and *versūs*; but monosyllabic prepositions are often placed between the **adjective** and **substantive**; as: *magna cum cura*, *with great care*.

564. **Conjunctions** generally stand at the beginning of their sentence or clause.

The **Conjunctions** *autēm*, *but*; *enī*, *for*; *vērō*, *but*; *igītūr*, *then*, follow one or more words in their clause. *quidēm*, *indeed*; *quōquē*, *also*, come after the emphatic word. *nē...quidēm* include the emphatic word or words.

565. Words of *kindred* or *opposite* meaning are generally placed near each other for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*:

manus manum lavat

one hand washes the other.

[202.]

Construction of Cases.

GENITIVE CASE.

With Substantives.

566. The **Genitive** is especially the **Case** of a **Substantive** that is added to another Substantive in order to limit or define the meaning.

1. If the qualified noun signifies some action or condition of which, if it were expressed by a verb, the noun in the **Genitive** would be the **Subject**, the case is called the **Subjective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *the love of God* (= *God loves*).

2. If the **Genitive** would be the **Object** of the action expressed by the other noun in verb-form, we call it an **Objective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *love of (toward) God* (= *we love God*).

3. The **Genitive** of the **Personal Pronouns** is commonly **Objective**; exceptions are *nostrū* and *vestrū* which are used as partitive Genitives (see below 6). Mark the following examples:

studium nostri

sympathy for us

multi nostrū

many of us

mellior pars nostri

the better part of us

major pars nostrū

the greater part of us.

4. The **Possessive Pronoun** is generally used as the **Subjective Genitive**, as: *amicus meus*, *a friend of mine*. Additional Attributes are put in the **Genitive**: *tua ipsius soror*, *your own sister*.

5. The **Genitive** is used to denote **Quality**, but only when the quality is modified by an **Adjective**; it is joined to a **Substantive** either *attributively* or *predicatively*, as:

vir maximi consilii	a man of very great prudence
Terentius magni ingenii est	Terence is a man of great talent.

The **Genitive of Quality**, though less common than the **Ablative**, is always used when **Number**, **Measure**, **Time** or **Space** are denoted. **Parts of the body** are in the **Ablative** only (see 616).

exsilium decem annorum	an exile of ten years
Caesar fuit excelsa statura	Caesar was of tall stature.

6. The **Partitive Genitive** expressing the relation of a **Whole** to its **Parts** is used:

With Substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight, as:
 medimnum tritici a bushel of wheat;

With Pronouns, Numerals, Comparatives and Superlatives, as:
 quis vestrum? which of you? regum ultimus, the last of the
 prior horum, the former of these kings

With Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns used as Nouns, but only in the Nominative or Accusative. Such are:

tantum, so much	quantum, as much	aliquantum, somewhat
multum, much	plus, more	plurimum, most
paulum, little	minus, less	minimum, least
hoc, this	id, illud, istud, that	nil, nothing
quod, which	quid, what	idem, the same

nihil novi, nothing new	idem consilii, the same (of) advice
quid novi? what news?	quid causae? what reason?

The **Genitive** after these **Adjectives** and **Pronouns** may be a neuter adjective of the **Second Declension**, but *not* of the **Third**:

aliquid boni, something good nihil melius, nothing better.

With the Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent:

satis, enough	ubi, where	huc	} to this degree
parum, too little	nusquam, nowhere	eo	
nimis, too much	affatim, plenty		

nimis lucis, too much light; huc arrogantiae, to this degree of insolence; ubi terrarum or gentium? where in the world?

7. The **Genitive of Specification** has the force of an **Apposition**, especially with *vox*, *word*; *nōmēn*, *name*; *verbūm*, *word*, as:
vox voluptātis, the word "pleasure"
arbor abiētis, a fir-tree; *nomen regis*, the title of king.

8. The **Genitive** is used with the **Ablatives** *causā* and *grātiā*, for the sake of; also with *ergō*, on account of; *instār*, like. *causā*, *grātiā*, *ergō* commonly follow the **Genitive**. Mark the expressions:
mea, *tua*, *sua causā* (not *grātiā*) for my, thy, his sake,
honōris grātiā, for honor's sake,
instar montis equus, a horse like a mountain.

9. Frequently *aedēs* and *templūm*, temple, and sometimes other nouns are omitted, when no mistake can arise:

ad Vestae ventum erat, they had arrived at the temple of Vesta.
 [221. 222.]

With Adjectives.

567. Many **Adjectives** are followed by a **Genitive** to complete their meaning. The most common are:

1. **Adjectives** denoting *Desire*, *Knowledge*, *Recollection*, *Participation*, *Mastery*, *Fullness* and their **Opposites**:

<i>cupīdūs</i> , eager, desirous	<i>expers</i> , without share in
<i>stūdīōsūs</i> , devoted to	<i>compōs</i> , capable, master of
<i>pēritūs</i> , skillful in	<i>impōs</i> , not in possession of
<i>insciūs</i>	<i>impōtens</i> , unable or powerless
<i>nesciūs</i> } ignorant	to control
<i>ignārūs</i> }	<i>plēnūs</i> , full
<i>mēmōr</i> , mindful	<i>particeps</i> , sharing, partaker of,
<i>immēmōr</i> , unmindful	endowed with

2. **Participial Adjectives** denoting *permanent qualities* (mostly ending in *ns*), as:

<i>diligens</i> , careful, lover of	<i>pātiens</i> , capable of enduring
<i>āmans</i> , fond of	<i>impātiens</i> , that cannot bear
<i>particeps consilii</i>	a sharer in the plan
<i>compos mentis</i>	in possession of one's mind
<i>cupīdus gloriæ</i>	eager for glory
<i>amans sui virtus</i>	virtue fond of itself.

3. *prōpriūs*, own, and *commūnīs*, common, take the **Genitive** when the idea of *property* or *peculiarity* prevails.

popūli Romāni est propriā libertas, liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.
 [223. 224.]

With Verbs.

568. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, Forgetting
take the Genitive.

admōnērē	} to remind	mēmīnissē	} to remember
commōnērē		rēmīniscī	
commōnēfācērē		rēcordārī	
obliviscī, to forget			

Verbs of **Reminding**, with the Accusative of the *Person*, are followed by the Genitive of the *Person or Thing* to which the attention is called.

te vetēris amicitīae admōnēo, *I remind you of our old friendship.*

Verbs of **Remembering** and **Forgetting** take the Genitive if a *Person*, and either the Genitive or Accusative, if a *Thing* is remembered or forgotten.

memīni vivōrum	<i>I am mindful of the living</i>
ānīmus memīnit praeteritōrum	<i>the mind remembers the past</i>
oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias	<i>you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.</i>

When the Object is expressed by a **Neuter Pronoun or Adjective**, it is with all these verbs in the **Accusative**, as:

hoc te admōnēo *I warn you of this.*

mēmīni, *I remember*, when referring to a **contemporary**, always takes the **Accusative**.

meminēram Catōnem *I remembered Cato.*

569. Verbs of Valuing are joined with the **Genitive**, when the Value is expressed in a **General or Indefinite Manner**.

Such Verbs are:

aestīmārē, to value	hābērē, to hold
pūtārē, to reckon	pendērē, to weigh
dūcērē, to take	fācērē, to make, put
essē, to be (worth)	

The following are **Genitives of general value**:

magnī, much	quantī, how much
parvī, little	plūrīmī, maximī, most
tantī, so much	mīnīmī, least
plūris, more	nihilī, naught
mīnoris, less	floccl, a lock of wool, a straw

The **Complete Phrases** are, then, as follows:

parvī pendēre or aestimāre, to esteem lightly
 magnī esse, to be of great account
 pluris esse, to be of more account, to be worth more
 nihil ducere, to think nothing of
 magnī aestimāre or habere, to value highly
 pluris aestimāre, to esteem of more value
 plurimī aestimāre, to value very highly
 minimī facere, to make of very little account
 flocci facere, to care not a straw for

divitiae a me minimi putantur, riches are very little prized by me;
 operam tuam magni aestimo, your help I value highly.

570. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, take the **Genitive** of the Charge.

accusare	} to accuse, charge	coarguere	} to convict
incusare		convincere	
insimulare		damnare	} to condemn, find guilty
arguere		condemnare	
arcessere	} to summon	absolvere, to acquit	
reum facere			

honestam familiam scelēris arguis you accuse an honorable family of crime
 aliquem levitatis convincere to convict one of levity.

The **Crime** may be expressed by the **Ablative** with **dē**:

accusare aliquem de vi, de reptundis, de veneficio to accuse one of assault, of extortion, of poisoning

or by the **Genitive** with **nōminē** or **crimīnē**, as:

nomine conjurationis condemnati sunt they were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.

Verbs of **Condemning** and **Acquitting** may also take the **Ablative** of the charge and the **punishment**, and always take the **Ablative** of *fine*; *multare*, to mulct, punish, is always construed with the Ablative.

damnare capitis or capite to condemn to death
 Camillus decem milibus damnatus est Camillus was fined 10,000

Manlius virtutem filii morte multavit Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.

571. The **Subjective Genitive** may be used as a **Predicate** with the verbs *essē* and *fiērī* to denote that to which something belongs or to which something is peculiar.

In English the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, are commonly supplied. Instead of the **Genitive** of Personal Pronouns the **Neuters** of the Possessives: *mēum, tūum*, etc., are used.

<i>haec domus est Caesāris</i>	<i>this house is Caesar's</i>
<i>temeritas est florentis aetātis</i>	<i>rashness is the characteristic</i>
<i>prudētia senectūtis</i>	<i>of youth, prudence of old age</i>
<i>mentiri non est meum</i>	<i>to lie is not my way.</i>

572. With the **Impersonal** *intērest* (and sometimes also with *rēfert*), *it concerns, interests, it is the interest of, it is of importance for*, the **Genitive** is used to denote the **Person** or **Thing** concerned.

The **Genitive** seems to be governed by *causā* understood; hence instead of the **Genitive** of the personal pronoun the Ablative singular feminine of the Possessives *mēā, tūā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* is used with these verbs, as: *mēā intērest, I am concerned*; with *omniūm*, however, *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* must be used: *omniūm nostrūm intērest, it concerns all of us*.

rēfert seldom occurs with the **Genitive**, occasionally with *mēā, tūā*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a **Genitive**, as: *nihil rēfert, no matter*; *quid rēfert, what matter?*

The *thing* which is of interest or importance is expressed:

By a **Neuter Pronoun**, as: *hoc vehementer intērest reipublicae, this is of very much importance to the state*;

By an **Infinitive**, as: *intērest omniūm recte facere, to do right is the interest of all*;

By an **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**, as: *multum mēā intērest te diligētem esse, it is of great importance to me that you be diligent*;

By an **Interrogative Sentence**, as: *multum mea intērest utrum diligens sis necne, it is of great importance to me whether you are diligent or not*.

573. The *Degree* of importance is expressed by:

Adverbs: magnōpērē, māgis, maximē, pārūm, etc.

Neuter Adjectives: multūm, plūs, plurimūm, minūs, etc.

Genitives of Value: magnī, plurīs, parvī, tantī, etc.

The *Thing with reference* to which one is interested is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*: magni ad honōrem nostrum interest, *it is of great consequence to our honor.* [227. 228.]

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Direct Object.

574. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative Case.

The *Object* of a transitive verb in the *active* voice becomes *Subject* in the *passive*.

boni cives amant patriam

good citizens love their country

patria a bonis civibus amatur

their country is loved by good citizens.

575. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are both transitive and intransitive in Latin. Such are:

dolērē, *to grieve (for)*

ridērē, *to laugh (at)*

horrērē, *to shudder (at)*

sitirē, *to thirst (for).*

576. Some intransitive verbs may take an accusative of kindred meaning, as:

vitam jucundam vivere

to live a pleasant life

longam viam ire

to go a long way.

577. Many *Intransitive Verbs*, especially verbs of motion, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and accordingly take an *Accusative*. The commonest of them are *Compounds* of:

circūm, pār, praetēr, trans.

circumstārē, *to stand around*

praetērirē, *to pass by*

permearē, *to flow through*

transirē, *to cross*

triginta tyranni circumsteterunt
Socrātem

*the 30 tyrants stood around So-
crates.* [207. 208.]

Two Accusatives. Same Person.

578. Verbs of **Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing** admit **two Accusatives** of the same person or thing.

appellārē
nōminārē
vōcārē } *to name or call*

dicārē
arbitrārī
existimārē } *to regard, con- sider, think, pronounce*
hābērē
pūtārē
iudicārē, *to judge*

fācērē
efficērē
reddērē } *to make*

crēārē
ēligērē } *to elect*

designārē, *to appoint*

sē praebērē } *to show, offer*
sē praestārē } *one's self*

Nerōnem senātus hostem iudi-
cāvit

the senate declared Nero an enemy.

Many other verbs, besides their proper Accusative, take a second, denoting **purpose, time, character**. Such are:

dārē, *to give*

hābērē, *to have*

rēlinquērē, *to leave*

sūmērē, *to take*

Athenienses Miltiādem sibi im-
peratōrem sumpsērunt

the Athenians took Miltiades as their commander.

[209. 210.]

Two Accusatives. Person and Thing.

579. dōcērē, ēdōcērē, *to teach*; cēlārē, *to conceal from*, take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

Dionysius Epaminondam musi-
cam docuit

non te celāvi sermōnem

*Dionysius taught Epaminon-
das music*

*I did not conceal from you the
conversation.*

The **Passive** of dōcērē or ēdōcērē with the **Nominative** of the person and the **Accusative** of the thing is *almost never* used, but is replaced by discērē āliquid āb āliquō. Special uses worthy of note are as follows:

ēdōcērē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to inform some one of something*;

cēlārē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to keep some one ignorant of something.*

580. Verbs signifying *to ask, to demand, to request, to inquire* take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

The commonest of them are:

poscĕrĕ	} <i>to ask,</i> <i>demand</i>	ōrārĕ	} <i>to ask,</i> <i>entreat,</i> <i>beseech</i>	rōgārĕ	} <i>to ask,</i> <i>interrogārĕ</i> } <i>inquire</i>
flāgitārĕ		rōgārĕ		interrōgārĕ	
postulārĕ		pētĕrĕ		quaerĕrĕ	
posce deos venīam				ask favor of the gods	
me sententiām rogāvī				he asked me my opinion.	

But to this there are many **Exceptions**. We may also say:

poscĕre *or* flāgitāre aliquid ab aliquo.

We always say: postulāre *or* petĕre aliquid ab aliquo;
quaerĕre aliquid ab, ex, *or* de aliquo.

581. The verbs ōrārĕ, rōgārĕ, *to ask, request,* and rōgārĕ, interrōgārĕ, *to ask, inquire,* admit a double accusative only when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or adjective, as: hoc te rogo, *this I inquire of you.* Otherwise we say: interrogāre aliquem de aliqua re, *to ask some one about something.*

582. A noun as second accusative appears with the verb rōgārĕ only in the official phrase:

sententiām rogāre aliquem, *to ask one for his opinion or vote.*

[211. 212.]

Accusative with Impersonal Verbs.

583. The **Accusative** is used after the **Impersonals**:

fallīt mē	} <i>it escapes my</i> <i>notice, is un-</i> <i>known to me</i>	dēcēt, it becomes
fūgīt mē		dēdēcēt, it is unbecoming
praetērīt mē		
me fugit ad te scribĕre		<i>I forgot to write to you</i>
oratorē irasci dēdēcēt		<i>it is unbecoming in an orator</i> <i>to be angry.</i>

An **Infinitive** or a **Neuter Pronoun** or **Adjective**, rarely a **Substantive**, may be used as the **Subject** of dēcēt and dēdēcēt:

muliĕrem decet flĕre	<i>it becomes a woman to weep</i>
parvum parva decent	<i>small things become the small</i>
neglegentiā nemīnem decet	<i>carelessness becomes no one.</i>

584. Certain **Impersonal Verbs** take the Person who feels in the **Accusative**, and the Exciting Cause in the **Genitive**, or if a verb, in the **Infinitive**; viz.:

<i>miserēt, it excites pity</i>	<i>pūdet, it shames</i>
<i>paenitēt, it causes sorrow</i>	<i>taedēt</i>
<i>pigēt, it disgusts, grieves</i>	<i>pertaesūm est</i> } <i>it wearies, tires.</i>

The **Persons** are expressed as follows:

<i>miserēt mē, I pity</i>	<i>paenitēt mē, I am sorry, repent</i>
<i>miserēt tē, thou pitiest</i>	<i>pigēt mē, I am grieved at, dis-</i>
<i>miserēt eūm, he pities</i>	<i>gusted with</i>
<i>miserēt nōs, we pity</i>	<i>pūdet mē, I am ashamed</i>
<i>miserēt vōs, you pity</i>	<i>taedēt mē</i>
<i>miserēt eos, they pity</i>	<i>mē pertaesūm est</i> } <i>I am weary,</i> <i>tired</i>

me stultitiæ meae pudet
non me paenitet vixisse

I am ashamed of my folly
I am not sorry for having lived.

Idiomatic Uses.

585. The **Accusative** is used in **Exclamations**, either with or without an Interjection.

O, miseræ hominū mentes! Oh, the wretched minds of men!

586. A **Neuter Adjective** or **Pronoun** is used *adverbially* in the **Accusative**, as: *aliquid, somewhat; nihil, not at all; multū, much*, etc. The **Accusative** is also found in a few *adverbial phrases*, as: *maximam partem, mostly; id genus, of this kind; id temporis, at this time:*

<i>nihil movēor</i>	<i>I am not at all moved</i>
<i>forum id temporis omni turbæ</i>	<i>the forum was at this time free</i>
<i>vacuum erat</i>	<i>from all tumult.</i>

[213. 214.]

DATIVE CASE.

With Verbs.

587. The **Dative** is the Case of the **Indirect Object**, denoting *that for which, to the benefit or loss of which* any thing is or is done. It may be used with **transitive and intransitive Verbs**; *dativus commōdi et incommōdi*: **Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage.**

scribo vobis hunc librum, I write this book for you;
tibi seris, tibi metis, you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

588. A large number of **Transitive Verbs** take along with the **Accusative** a **Dative** as an **Indirect Object**.

The English expresses the **Dative Relation** by *to* or *for*; but where the verb implies removal, the Latin **Dative** frequently answers to the English **Objective** with *from*; *for* = *in defence of* is **prō**.

errantibus viam monstrēmus	<i>let us show the way to the erring</i>
dolor somnum mihi adīmit	<i>grief takes away my sleep from</i>
pro patria mori	<i>to die for one's country. [me</i>

589. Many **Intransitive Verbs** signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *favor* or *resist*, *trust* or *distrust*, also *indulge*, *believe*, *persuade*, *envy*, *threaten*, *spare*, and the like, take the **Dative**.

Examples are:

prōdesse, <i>to do good</i>	crēdere, <i>to believe</i>
nocere, <i>to do harm</i>	sūadere, <i>to advise, recommend</i>
blandiri, <i>to soothe</i>	mīnari, imminere, <i>to threaten</i>
fāvere, <i>to favor</i>	benedicere, <i>to bless</i>
resistere, <i>to offer resistance</i>	nubere, <i>to marry</i>
placere, <i>to please</i>	persuadere, <i>to persuade, con-</i>
displicere, <i>to displease</i>	mederi, <i>to heal</i> [vince
impērare, <i>to command</i>	supplicare, <i>to beg</i>
obediēre, parere, <i>to obey</i>	maledicere, <i>to curse</i>
fidere, <i>to trust</i>	parcere, <i>to spare</i>
diffidere, <i>to distrust</i>	studere, <i>to devote one's self</i>
irasci, <i>to be angry with</i>	obtrectare, <i>to decry</i>
indulgere, <i>to give up, to favor</i>	invidere, <i>to envy</i>

arbor resistit ventis	<i>the tree offers resistance to the winds</i>
probus invidet nemini	<i>the upright man envies no one</i>
non parcam opērae	<i>I will spare no pains.</i>

Among the most notable **Exceptions** are:

jūvare } <i>to help, assist</i>	deficere, <i>to be wanting</i>
adjūvare }	jūbere, <i>to order</i>
aequare, <i>to be equal</i>	vētare, <i>to forbid</i>

which govern the **Accusative**.

590. **Passives** are properly made only from transitive verbs. Intransitive Verbs which govern a Dative have an **Impersonal Passive** with the same Case, in the following manner:

Active. bõnũs invidet nemĩnĩ, *a good man envies no one*

Passive. mĩhĩ invidetũr, *I am envied*

tĩbĩ invidetũr, *thou art envied*

ẽĩ invidetũr, *he is envied*

nõbĩs invidetũr, *we are envied*

võbĩs invidetũr, *you are envied*

ĩis invidetũr, *they are envied*

ã bõnõ invidetũr nemĩnĩ, *no one is envied by a good man.*

591. Some Verbs take the **Dative** or **Accusative** according to their signification:

cãvẽrẽ ãlicũĩ, *to care for some one*

cãvẽrẽ ãliquẽm, *to beware of some one*

cãvẽrẽ ãb ãliquõ, *to be on one's guard*

consũlẽrẽ ãlicũĩ, *to consult the interest of some one*

consũlẽrẽ ãliquẽm, *to consult some one*

mẽtũẽrẽ ãliquẽm, *to fear some one*

mẽtũẽrẽ ãlicũĩ, *to fear for some one*

prõvidẽrẽ ãliquĩd, *to foresee something*

prõvidẽrẽ ãlicũĩ rẽĩ, *to provide for something*

mõdẽrãrĩ ãliquĩd, *to manage something*

mõdẽrãrĩ ãlicũĩ rẽĩ, *to set bounds to a matter*

tempẽrãrẽ ãliquĩd, *to rule something*

tempẽrãrẽ ãlicũĩ, *to spare some one*

tempẽrãrẽ ãb ãliquã rẽ, *to abstain from something.*

592. The **Dative** is used with many Verbs compounded with the **Prepositions**:

ãd, antẽ, cõn, ĩn, intẽr,

õb, post, prae, sũb, sũpẽr.

Examples are:

afferrẽ, *to bring to, to render*

interjicẽrẽ, *to throw in*

praecurrẽrẽ, *to precede*

impõnẽrẽ, *to place on*

ãdimẽrẽ, *to take away*

intẽressẽ, *to be present*

ĩnjicẽrẽ, *to strike into*

oppõnẽrẽ, *to oppose*

suppõnẽrẽ, *to put under*

virtus omnĩbus rebus antẽĩt

onẽra quĩbusdam animalĩbus im-

ponĩmus

virtue goes before all things

we put burdens on some ani-

mals.

[215, 216.]

593. Certain Verbs of *giving* and *putting* may take either a **Dative** with an **Accusative**, or an **Accusative** with an **Ablative**, as:

dono tibi librum, *I present you a book;*
 dono te libro, *I present you with a book;*
 circumdat urbi murum, *he puts a wall around the city;*
 circumdat urbem muro, *he surrounds the city with a wall.*

So with *adspergĕrĕ*, *to sprinkle*, and *indŭĕrĕ*, *to put on*.

594. The **Dative** is used with *essĕ* to denote the **Possessor**, the thing possessed being the subject.

When so used it is commonly translated by *to have*; *mihĭ nŏmĕn est*, means *my name is* or *I am called*; the proper name is put either in the **Nominative** or the **Dative**, as:

est mihi domi pater *I have a father at home*
 puĕro nomen est Carŏlus (Carŏlo) *the boy's name is Charles.*

595. Certain Verbs take the **Dative** to denote the **purpose** or **end**, and often at the same time another **Dative** of the person **for whom** or **to whom**. Such are:

essĕ, <i>to be</i>	mittĕrĕ, <i>to send</i>	hăbĕrĕ, <i>to hold</i>
fĭĕrĭ { <i>to become,</i>	accĭpĕrĕ, <i>to receive</i>	vertĕrĕ, <i>to interpret,</i>
<i>turn out</i>	vĕnĭrĕ, <i>to come</i>	<i>turn (against)</i>
dărĕ, <i>to put</i>	rĕlinquĕrĕ, <i>to leave</i>	dŭcĕrĕ, <i>to count</i>

exemplo est formĭca

the ant is an example

malo est hominĭbus avaritĭa

avarice is an evil to men

dono dare

to give as a present.

596. The **Dative** is used with the **Gerundive** to denote the person on whom a necessity rests, as:

adhĭbenda est nobis diligentĭa *we must use diligence*
 nobis omnĭbus moriendum est *we all must die.*

597. Verbs in the **Passive Voice** are sometimes followed by a **Dative** of the Agent — instead of *ă*, *ăb* with the **Ablative**.

res mihi tota provĭsa est *I have had the whole matter provided for*

carmină mihi scripta sunt nulla *I have no poems written.*

With Adjectives.

598. Many **Adjectives** and **Adverbs** are followed by the **Dative** denoting that to which the quality is directed.

The most common are those signifying:

useful, fit, pleasant, like,

near, easy, inclined, necessary, and their Opposites.

acceptūs, <i>acceptable</i>	jūcundūs, <i>agreeable</i>
amicūs, <i>friendly</i>	injūcundūs, <i>disagreeable</i>
inimicūs, <i>unfriendly, opposed</i>	molestūs, <i>troublesome</i>
aptūs, <i>apt, suitable</i>	necessariūs, <i>necessary</i>
cārūs, <i>dear</i>	odiosūs, <i>hateful</i>
communis, <i>common</i>	pār, <i>equal, a match for</i>
dulcis, <i>agreeable</i>	dispār, <i>unlike</i>
fācilis, <i>easy</i>	sālūtārīs, <i>beneficial</i>
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	sīmilis, <i>like</i>
grātūs, <i>pleasing</i>	dissīmilis, <i>unlike</i>
ingrātūs, <i>unpleasant</i>	turpis, <i>disgraceful</i>
grāvīs, <i>burdensome</i>	utīlis, <i>useful</i>
canis similis lupo est	<i>a dog is similar to a wolf</i>
flamma fumo est proxima	<i>fire is next akin to smoke.</i>

Many Adjectives which belong to this class become *Substantives* and as such take the **Genitive**; e. g.:

amicūs, <i>a friend</i>	aequālīs, <i>a contemporary</i>
inimicūs, <i>an enemy</i>	vicinūs, <i>a neighbor</i>
fāmilīārīs, <i>an (intimate) friend</i>	necessariūs, <i>a relation</i>

599. Adjectives of **Inclination** may take the **Accusative** with *ergā* (when *friendly* feelings are spoken of) or with *in*, *adversūs* (for *friendly and unfriendly* feelings); those signifying *useful, suitable* take oftener the **Accusative** with *ad* to denote the thing *for which*, but regularly the **Dative** of **Persons**; as: *severus in filiū, severe towards his son; homo ad nullam rem utilis, a good-for-nothing fellow.*

600. The Adjectives *prōpiōr*, *proximūs* (sometimes), and the Adverbs *prōpiūs*, *proximē* (commonly) take the **Accusative**. After *sīmilis, like*, the **Genitive** is used to denote *exact resemblance*; as: *mei, tui, nostri similis, my, your, our like*, and *verī similis, likely*.

601. A few **Derivative Substantives** take the **Dative** after the analogy of their **Primitives**, as: *justitia est obtemperantia legibus, justice is obedience to the laws.*

Ethical Dative.

602. The **Dative** of a **Personal Pronoun** is sometimes introduced for liveliness of expression: **Ethical Dative.**

fur mihi est, he is a thief in my opinion;
quid tibi vis? what do you want?

[219, 220.]

ABLATIVE CASE.

Ablative of Cause.

603. The **Ablative** is used to express the **Cause**.

The **Ablative** of **Cause** designates *that by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* something is or is done. Accordingly it is used with passive verbs and such active verbs and adjectives as imply a passive meaning. In the passive construction, however, the *Person* or *Living Agent* by whom any thing is done is put in the **Ablative** with **ā, āb**.

Dei providentiā mundus admini- strātur	<i>the world is governed by God's providence</i>
a Deo mundus administrātur	<i>the world is governed by God</i>
concordiā res parvae crescunt	<i>by concord small affairs grow</i>
milites praefo fessi erant	<i>the soldiers were weary with the battle.</i>

604. The **Ablative** of **Cause** is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with **Verbs** and **Adjectives** like the following:

dolēre, to grieve	glōriārī, to boast
maerēre, to mourn	lābōrārē, to suffer
gaudēre } to rejoice, delight	sūperbūs, proud
laetārī }	laetūs, pleased — aegēr, ill
dēlectārī, to be delighted	anxiūs, anxious

agricōla gaudet equis, *the husbandman delights in horses;*
 Miltiades aeger erat vulneribus, *Miltiades was ill from his wounds;*
 aliis malis laboras, *you suffer with other ills.*

This includes such **Ablatives** as: *jussū, by order; rōgātū, at the request, etc.* On *causā* and *grātiā*, for the sake of, see 566. 8.

Akin to the Causal **Ablative** is the **Ablative** with verbs expressing origin, as:

humilibus parentibus ortus	<i>sprung from low parents.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

Ablative of Means or Instrument.

605. The **Ablative** is used to denote the **Means** or **Instrument** by which anything is effected.

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est	<i>Pyrrhus was killed by a stone</i>
benevolentiam civium blanditiis	<i>to win the good will of one's</i>
colligere turpe est	<i>fellow-citizens by flattery is disgraceful.</i>

606. The **Person**, considered as **Means** or **Instrument**, is expressed by **për** with the accusative, or by **öpërâ** with a genitive or possessive:

Caesar certior factus est per	<i>Caesar was informed by (means</i>
legatos	<i>of) ambassadors.</i>

607. *erûdirë, institûerë, to instruct; as: aliquem artibus erûdire, to instruct some one in the arts; and afficëre, to treat, in such expressions as: aliquem honoribus afficëre, to honor some one; aliquem molestia afficëre, to trouble some one — are worthy of note.*

Ablative of Limitation.

608. That *in respect to which* or *in accordance with which* anything is or is done is denoted by the **Ablative of Limitation**.

Out of this usage grow a number of **Particular Phrases**:

grandis nātū, <i>old</i>	mēa sententiā, mēa öpinionē,
mājor nātū, <i>older</i>	<i>according to my opinion</i>
maximū nātū, <i>oldest</i>	jûdicio, testimōnio ālicujūs,
mīnor nātū, <i>younger</i>	<i>according to the judgment,</i>
mīnimū nātū, <i>youngest</i>	<i>testimony, of some one</i>
reges nomīne magis quam imperio	<i>kings in name rather than in authority.</i>

[229. 230.]

Ablative of Comparison.

609. The **Ablative of Comparison** may be used with the Comparative, instead of *quām, than*, with the **Nominative** or **Accusative**.

filius melior est quam pater	} <i>the son is better than his father</i>
filius melior est patre	
scio filium meliorem esse patre	<i>I know that the son is better than his father.</i>

610. The **Ablative**, instead of **quā**m with the same case as the thing compared, must be regularly used in **Relative Sentences**:

amicitiā, qua nihil melius habemus.. friendship than which we have nothing better..

quām is often omitted after **plūs**, **amplīus**, **more**; **mīnūs**, **less**; **longīus**, **farther**, and the like, without influence upon the construction. But the **Ablative** may also be used when the word with **quā**m would be in the **Nominative** or **Accusative**.

ex Romānis minus trecenti perierunt of the Romans less than 300 perished
tecum plus annum vixit he lived with you more than a year

plus quam ducenti interfecti sunt
plus ducenti interfecti sunt
plus ducentis interfecti sunt } *more than 200 were killed.*

611. Certain **Ablatives**, as **opiniōnē**, **expectatiōnē**, **spē**, **sōlītō**, preceding a comparative are used instead of a **Clause**, as:

opiniōne celerius, sooner than is expected;
dicto citius, quicker than the word was spoken;
serius spe, later than was hoped;
amnis solīto citatior, the river running faster than usual.

612. The **Ablative** is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the **Degree** of **Difference**. This use is especially frequent with the **Ablatives**:

multō, much
paulō, a little
āliquantō, some more
tantō, so much
quantō, how much
altērō tantō, twice as much
nīhilō, by nothing, no
quō.. ēō
quantō.. tantō } *the.. the*
minor uno inense
multo praestat virtus divitiis } *younger by one month*
virtue is much better than riches.

Ablative of Manner.

613. The **Ablative** of **Manner** answers the question **How?**

It is used with the preposition **cū**m when it has no **Adjective**; with or without **cū**m when it has an **Adjective**. Words signifying **manner** themselves, such as: **mōdus**, **ratiō**, **mōs**, **ritus**, and likewise **ānimus**, **mens**, **consiliū**m, never take **cū**m.

cum voluptâte alîquem audire	<i>to hear some one with pleasure</i>
aliquid facere magno studio,	<i>to do something with great zeal</i>
or magno cum studio	
aliquid aequo animo ferre	<i>to bear something with an even</i>
(never aequo cum animo)	<i>mind.</i>

614. The following **Ablatives** are used without an Adjective or Preposition:

sîlentiô, <i>in silence</i>	jûrê, <i>rightfully</i>
ordinê, <i>in an orderly manner</i>	injuriã, <i>unjustly</i>
câsû, <i>by chance</i>	vî, <i>violently</i>
vîã et rãtiônê, <i>methodically</i>	vî et armîs, <i>by force of arms</i>
vôluntâtê, <i>voluntarily</i>	pêdîbûs, <i>a-foot</i>
dôlô, <i>fraudê, fraudulently</i>	nãvîbûs, <i>by ship</i>

Ablative of Quality.

615. The **Ablative** with an Adjective or an equivalent is used to denote **Quality**.

616. External qualities are put by preference in the *Ablative*; measure, number, time and space are put in the *Genitive* only.
serpens ingenti magnitudine, a serpent of huge size;
Britanni sunt capillo promisso, the Britons have long hanging locks.

Ablative of Price.

617. As a rule, **Price** is put in the **Ablative**.

The **Ablative of Price** is used with:

ëmêrê	aestîmãrê, <i>to value</i>
rêdîmêrê	lôcãrê
mercãri	collôcãrê } <i>to let</i>
vendêrê, <i>to sell (pass. vênîrê)</i>	condúcêrê, <i>to hire</i>
licêrê, <i>to be for sale</i>	essê, stãrê, constãrê, <i>to cost</i>
patriã auro vendidit	<i>he sold his country for gold</i>
equis mihi talento stetit	<i>the horse cost me a talent.</i>

618. General Value or Cost is expressed by the following **Ablatives**:

magnô, <i>at a high price</i>	plûrîmô, <i>at a very high price</i>
parvô, <i>at a low price</i>	mînîmô, <i>at a very low price</i>
nîhîlô, <i>for nothing</i>	
hortos istos emãmus magno, si	<i>let us buy those gardens at a</i>
parvo non possûmus	<i>high price, if we cannot have</i>
	<i>them cheap.</i>

619. *Comparative Value or Cost* (see 569) is expressed by these Genitives:

<i>tantī, so much</i>	<i>quantī, how much</i>
<i>tantīdēm, at the same price</i>	<i>plūris, dearer; minōris, cheaper</i>
<i>mercatores non tantīdēm vendunt quanti emērunt</i>	<i>merchants do not sell at the same price at which they bought</i>
<i>quanti cenas?</i>	<i>what do you pay for your dinner?</i>

Mark the following Particular Phrases:

<i>bēnē ēmērē, to buy cheap</i>	<i>bēnē vendērē, to sell dear</i>
<i>mālē ēmērē, to buy dear</i>	<i>mālē vendērē, to sell at a loss.</i>

[231. 232.]

Ablative of Separation, Plenty, Want.

620. Verbs signifying *to remove, abstain, set free* take the **Ablative** with or without the Prepositions *ex, dē, āb*; but with *Persons* a Preposition, usually *āb*, must be used.

Examples are:

<i>dēpellērē lōcō, to drive from a place</i>
<i>abstinērē injuriā, to abstain from wrong-doing</i>
<i>abstinērē mānūs āb āliēnis, to keep one's hands from other people's property</i>
<i>ējicērē ē civitatē, to drive from the state</i>
<i>ērupērē ē saxīs, to burst from the rocks</i>
<i>ābhorrērē āb āliquā rē, to differ from something</i>
<i>dēterrērē āb injuriā, to deter from wrong-doing</i>
<i>libērārē ā cūris, to release from cares</i>
<i>dēcēdērē (dē) vitā, to depart from life</i>

<i>Hannibal ex Italia decedēre</i>	<i>Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy</i>
<i>coactus est</i>	
<i>Alexander vix a se manus abstinuit</i>	<i>Alexander hardly kept his hands from himself</i>
<i>multos fortuna liberat paena, metu neminem</i>	<i>fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear</i>
<i>Themistoclem Athenienses e civitate expulerunt</i>	<i>the Athenians banished Themistocles from the state.</i>

621. Verbs compounded with **sē** and **dīs** take nearly always **ā** or **āb**; such are:

discernērē	} <i>to distinguish</i>	sēcernērē	} <i>to separate</i>
distinguērē		sējungērē	
differrē	} <i>to differ, disagree</i>	sēpārārē	} likewise:
discrēpārē		ālīenārē, <i>to alienate</i>	
dissentīrē		ābhorrērē, <i>to be averse</i>	
distārē			

crede mihi, mores distant a car-
mine nostro

*believe me, my conduct far
differs from my song.*

Mark the Particular Phrase:

interdicērē ālicui āquā et ignī, *to forbid one the use of fire
and water, to banish one.*

622. Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, of *Filling* and *De-
priving* take the **Ablative**.

ābundārē, <i>to abound, have abun- dant</i>	explērē	} <i>to fill</i>
cārērē, <i>to be or do without, to lack</i>	implērē	
ēgērē, indīgērē, <i>to need</i>	complērē	
vācārē, <i>to be void of, to be free from</i>	rēplērē	} <i>to deprive</i>
sātīārē, <i>to glut</i>	orbārē	
	privārē	
	spōliārē	} <i>to plunder, to strip</i>
	nūdārē	

non egēo medicīna

I do not need medicine

admonitio acerbitate carere de-
bet

*an admonition should be with-
out bitterness*

America abundat lacubus et flu-
minibus

*America abounds in lakes and
rivers.*

ēgēō and indīgēō are often followed by the **Genitive**.

623. **Adjectives** of *Plenty* and *Want* regularly take the **Genitive** (see 567. 1.), but some of them follow the analogy of the corresponding verbs and take the **Ablative**. Among the latter are:

nūdūs, <i>naked</i>	ōnustūs, <i>laden</i>	rēfertūs, <i>stuffed</i>
orbūs, <i>deprived of</i>	īnānīs	praeditūs, <i>endowed</i>
libēr, <i>free</i>	vācūūs } <i>void</i>	

asellus onustus auro
urbs nuda praesidio

*a donkey laden with gold
a city naked of defense.*

624. *ōpūs est*, *there is need, it is needful, necessary*, takes the **Dative** of the **Person** who is in want, and the **Ablative** of the **Thing** wanted (Impersonal Construction); but the Thing wanted may be the Subject and *ōpūs est* (*sunt*) the Predicate (Personal Construction).

The **Impersonal Construction** must regularly be used in *Negative Sentences*, and the **Personal** with *Neuter Adjectives* and *Pronouns*; *ōpūs* is always indeclinable.

<i>opus mihi est libro</i>	<i>I want a book</i>
<i>liber mihi opus est</i>	<i>a book is what I want</i>
<i>opus mihi est libris</i>	<i>I want books</i>
<i>libri mihi opus sunt</i>	<i>books are what I want</i>
<i>nihil opus est duce</i>	<i>there is no need of a leader</i>
<i>multa opus sunt</i>	<i>there is need of many things.</i>

Ablative in Special Constructions.

625. The **Ablative** is used with the **Adjectives**:

<i>dignūs</i> , <i>worthy</i>	<i>frētūs</i> , <i>trusting, relying</i>
<i>indignūs</i> , <i>unworthy</i>	<i>contentūs</i> , <i>satisfied</i>

also with *dignōr*, *I deem worthy*.

ālīenūs, *strange, foreign*, takes the **Ablative** with or without *ā*, *āb*.

<i>vir patre dignissimus</i>	<i>a man most worthy of his father</i>
<i>me dignor honōre</i>	<i>I deem myself worthy of honor</i>
<i>homo sum, humāni nihil a me</i>	<i>I am a man, and nothing relating to man I deem foreign</i>
<i>aliēnum puto</i>	<i>to me.</i>

626. The **Ablative** is used with the **Deponent Verbs**:

<i>ūtōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to use</i>	<i>pōtīōr</i> , <i>-īrī</i> , <i>to make one's self master of</i>
<i>frūrōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to enjoy</i>	
<i>fungōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to discharge</i>	<i>vescōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to feed</i>

and their **Compounds**:

<i>ābūtōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to abuse</i>	<i>dēfungōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to discharge</i>
<i>perfrūrōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to enjoy fully</i>	<i>perfungōr</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>to fulfil</i>

utar vestra benignitāte, *I will avail myself of your kindness*;
vescīmur bestiis, *we live upon animals*.

Particular Phrases are:

ad verbum, *word for word*

nihil ad hanc rem, *nothing in comparison with this thing*

ad unum omnes, *all to the last man.*

630. apūd, *at*, chiefly used of persons, denotes:

nearness or presence, as: **apud** Caesārem, *at Caesar's house*; **apud** iudices, *before, in presence of, the judges*; **apud** Cannas, *near Cannae*;

situation or estimation among, regard by, as: **apud** vetēres, *among the ancients*; **apud** me nihil valet hominū opinio, *with me the opinion of the multitude has no weight.*

apūd is also used with the Names of Authors instead of *in* with the name of their works, as: **apud** Plinīum legimus, *we read in Pliny (in his works).*

631. antē, *before*, means *preceding in space or time*, as: **ante** portas, *before the gates*; **ante** noctem, *before night.*

632. adversūs, more rarely **adversūm**, indicates:

direction toward a place or person, and combines the meanings of both *against* and *toward*, as: castra **adversus** urbem ponere, *to pitch the camp over against the city*; **adversus** aliquem pugnare, *to fight with (against) some one*; pietas **adversus** parentes, *duty to(ward) parents.*

633. cīs and **citrā**, *on this side*, are used in reference to place opposed to **trans**, as: **citra** Rubicōnem, *on this side of the Rubicon.*

634. circā and **circūm** are equivalent to both *around* and *about* with reference to place, as: **circum** haec loca, *hereabout*; homīnes **circum** se habent, *they have people with them.* **circa** is also used of time, as: **circa** eandem horam, *about the same hour.*

Particular Phrase :

circum amīcos mittēre, *to send around to one's friends.*

635. circīter, *near, about*, is used of time only, as: **circīter** meridiem, *about noon*, but is more commonly an Adverb.

636. contrā is equivalent to *against* in both its meanings:

opposite to, as: **contra** Italiā, *over against Italy*;

in opposition to, as: **contra** natūrā vivere, *to live against nature.*

637. *ergā*, toward, always implies friendly feelings, as: *divīna bonitas erga homīnes*, *God's goodness toward men*.

638. *extrā* means *without* = *out of*, sometimes *beyond* or *except*, as: *extra urbem*, *without the city*; *extra modum*, *beyond measure*; *extra ducem reliqui rapāces sunt*, *except the leader the rest are robbers*.

639. *intrā* denotes *within* in regard to both *place* and *time*, as: *intra urbem*, *within the city*; *intra decem annos*, *within or during 10 years*. *intra* with an Ordinal Number means *before the expiration of*, as: *intra decimum diem urbem cepit*, *before the expiration of the 10th day he took the city*.

640. *intēr* is equivalent to both *between* and *among*, as: *inter Padum et Alpes*, *between the Po and the Alps*; *Croesus inter reges opulentissimus*, *Croesus, the wealthiest among kings*. It is also used to denote *time*, as: *inter cenam*, *during dinner*; *inter ludendum*, *while playing*. With the personal pronouns, as: *inter nōs*, *vōs*, *ēōs*, *sē*, it is employed in a reciprocal sense, answering to the English *one another*, *each other*, as: *Cicerōnis puēri amant inter se*, *Cicero's boys love one another*.

641. *infra*, below, means:

lower in place, as: *infra caelum*, *under the sky*;

lower in rank or esteem, as: *eum infra omnes puto*, *I think him beneath all men*;

later in time, as: *Homērus non infra Lycurgum fuit*, *Homer was not later than Lycurgus*;

smaller than, as: *magnitudīne infra elephantum*, *in size smaller than an elephant*.

642. *juxtā*, hard by, beside, as: *juxta murum castra posuit*, *he pitched the camp hard by the wall*.

643. *ob* sometimes means *before*, as: *ob oculos versari*, *to be before the eyes*. Generally it means *by reason of*, *on account of*, as: *ob eam causam*, *for that reason*.

644. *pēnēs* denotes *in the possession or power of*, as: *summum imperium penes Agamemnōnem erat*, *the chief command was in the hands of Agamemnon*.

645. p̄r, *through*, is used in a great variety of applications, as: denoting *place*, *from end to end*, as: **per urbem ire**, *to go through the city*;

denoting *duration* as: **per noctem**, *during the night*;

denoting *the agent or means*, as: **per amicum servātus sum**, *by (means of) my friend I was saved*;

denoting *the manner* in which a thing is done, as: **per littēras**, *by letter*; **per potestātem**, *by authority*; **per iram**, *from or in anger*; **per vim**, *by violence*;

denoting *the object invoked in forms of swearing*, as: **per deos immortāles jurāre**, *to swear by the immortal gods*.

Particular Phrases:

per me licet, *you may for all I care*; **per aetātem**, *on account of his age*; **per valetudinem**, *on account of ill health*.

646. pōst, *after*, denotes:

behind in place, as: **post equitem sedet atra cura**, *behind the rider sits black care*;

later in time, as: **post tenēbras lux**, *after darkness comes light*.

647. praet̄r primarily means *along*, as: **praeter litus**, *along shore*; yet it is more commonly equivalent to *except* or *besides*, as: **praeter te amicum neminem habeo**, *except you I have no friend*; **praeter auctoritātem etiam vires habet**, *besides authority he has also strength*.

Particular Phrases:

praeter spem, *contrary to hope*; **praeter modum**, *immoderately*; **praeter cetēros**, *more than the rest*.

648. prōp̄, *near, near by*, as: **prope urbem**, *near the city*.

649. propt̄r is equivalent to **prōp̄**, *near*, as: **propter Siciliam insulae Vulcaniae sunt**, *near Sicily are the Vulcanian islands*; but most frequently it is *on account of*, implying *motive or reason*, as: **propter modestiam tuam te diligo**, *I love you on account of your modesty*.

650. sēcundū (derived from *sēquī*, *to follow*) means:

along, as: **secundum mare iter facere**, *to make a journey along the sea shore*;

next to, immediately after, as: **secundum cenam**, *immediately after dinner*;

according to, as: **secundum naturam vivere**, *to live according to nature*.

651. suprà, above (opposite to **infrà**) denotes:

higher in place, as: **supra** lunam, *above the moon*;

more than, *superior to*, as: **supra** duos menses, *more than two months*; **supra** vires, *above one's strength*.

652. trans, beyond, across, on the other side, is used with verbs expressing motion, as: **multae aves ante hiemem trans mare migrant**, *many birds migrate across the sea before winter*; also with verbs expressing rest, as: **eo ipso tempore trans mare fui**, *at that very time I was beyond the sea*.

653. versùs, towards, -ward, follows an accusative which is usually governed by **ad** or **in**, as: **ad Oceànum versùs proficisci**, *to set out towards the ocean*. With **dòmùs** and names of towns **versùs** alone is used, as: **Romam versùs**, *Romeward*; **domum versùs**, *homeward*.

654. ultrà signifies beyond, on the further side, as: **ultra Atlantem montem**, *beyond mount Atlas*. It is also used to denote measure, as: **ultra septa transilire**, *to go beyond bounds*.

[91. 92. 237. 238.]

Prepositions construed with the Ablative.

à, àb, abs, cùm, dē,
cōrām, prō, ex, ē,
tēnūs, sīnē, prae.

655. à (àb, abs), from, is used in a variety of applications; it denotes:

the point of time or space at which the action, state, etc. are regarded as setting out, or beginning, as: **a prima aetate**, *from an early age*; **ab urbe profectus est**, *he departed from the city*;

that from which anything proceeds or by which anything is produced, as: **calor est a sole**, *the heat is from the sun*; **ab hoste interfectus est**, *he was killed by an enemy*;

that from which anything is guarded, with such verbs as **dēfendēre, tūērī**, etc., as: **urbem defendere ab hostibus**, *to defend the city against the enemy*;

that with reference to which anything is or is done, equivalent to *with respect to*, as: **imparati sumus a militibus**, *as to soldiers we are not ready*.

Before vowels and **h**, it is **àb**; before consonants, **à** or **àb**; **abs** before **tē**, but we say also **à tē**, never **àb tē**.

656. absquē, without, is rarely used.

657. dē primarily means *down from* or *away from*, as: **dē** caelo, *down from heaven*; **dē** vita decedēre, *to depart from life*. It is also used in a *partitive* sense in such expressions as: unus **dē** plebe, *one of the people*. When denoting *time*, it is *as early as*, *even at*, as: **dē** nocte, *even at night*; **dē** mense Decembri, *as early as December*. Most commonly, however, it is *concerning*, *about* or *on*, as: **dē** gestis Alexandri, *on the exploits of Alexander*; liber **dē** amicitia, *a book on friendship*. Sometimes it is equivalent to *sēcundū*, *according to*, as: **dē** consilio meo, *according to my advice*; and frequently it denotes the *manner of action*, as: denū (de novo), *de intēgro, afresh*; **dē** improvīso, *unexpectedly*; **dē** industriā, *purposely*; quā de causa, quibus de causis, *for which reason or reasons*.

658. cōrām, in the presence of, before, as: **coram** amico, *in the presence of a friend*. When used as an adverb, **coram** means *personally*, as: **coram** adesse, *to be present in person*.

659. cū, with, expresses *association* or *accompanying circumstances*, as: **cum** aliquo ire, *to go with some one*; esse **cum** telo, *to go armed*; confligēre **cum** hoste, *to fight with the enemy*.

cum with the Ablative of a **Personal Pronoun** is *always* appended to it, as: tecum loquitur, *he talks with you*; and commonly also with the **Relative**: quocum, quibuscum (likewise **cum** quo, **cum** quibus); quicum is used for the Ablative of both numbers and all genders.

660. ē, ex, out of, from, denotes:

the place, answering to the question *whence?* as: aliquem **ex** regno pellere, *to drive some one out of the kingdom*; e longinquo videre, *to see from afar*; **ex** equo pugnare, *to fight on horseback*;

the point of time from which, as: **ex** illo die, *from that day*;

the cause out of which anything proceeds, as: **ex** nihilo nihil fit, *of nothing nothing comes*; aeger **ex** vulnere, *sick from a wound*; **ex** quo, *whence or for which reason*.

In a great many cases **ē** (**ex**) has the signification *in accordance with*, as: **ex** ejus sententia, *according to his opinion*; or it denotes the manner of an action, as: **ex** animo laudare, *to praise heartily*; **ex** improvīso, *unexpectedly*. In such phrases as: unus **e** multis, *one of many*, it is used in a *partitive* sense.

Mark the **Particular Phrases**:

ex tua re, *to your advantage*; e republica, *for the good of the state*.

Before consonants it is **ē**; before vowels and consonants, **ex**.

661. pro means:

before or in front of, preceding in space, as: pro castris aciem instruere, to array the army for battle before the camp;

for = in defence of, in behalf of, as: pro patria mori, to die for one's country;

for = instead of, as: pro consule, in place of consul;

in accordance with or in proportion to, as: pro portione, in proportion; pro virili parte, to the best of one's ability.

662. prae is *before = in front of*, only in combination with *agere* and *ferre*, as: *prae se ferre, to carry before one's self, i. e. to show*. Most commonly it means: *in comparison with, in contrast with, as: prae me beatus es, in comparison with me you are happy*; it is also frequently used in the sense of *on account of*, implying an obstacle, as: *prae lacrimis scribere non possum, I cannot write on account of tears*.

663. tenus, *as far as*, follows its noun, as: *Tauro tenus, as far as Taurus; hoc tenus, hitherto*.

664. sine, *without*, opposed to *cum*, has a negative power, hence we say: *sine ulla spe, without any hope*.

[93. 94. 239. 240.]

Prepositions construed with the Accusative & Ablative.

sūb, sūp̄r, subter, in.

665. sūb and **in**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion towards*, when by the **Ablative**, *rest in, a place*.

666. sūb with the **Accusative** means:

under, close to, as: sub montem succedere, to come close to the hill;

about, shortly before, of time, as: sub noctem, towards night; sub lucem, near daylight;

667. sūb with the **Ablative** is always:

under, as: sub terra habitare, to live under ground; sub divo, in the open air; sub monte, at the foot of a hill.

668. sūp̄r has the **Ablative** only when used in the sense of *de*, *concerning*, as: *hac super re, concerning this thing*. With the **Accusative** it is *over, above*, answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *super aliquem sedere, to sit above some one*.

Particular Phrases: *vulnus super vulnus, wound upon wound; super cenam, during dinner.*

669. *subtër, beneath*, takes the **Accusative** answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *subter togam, under the toga.*

670. **In**, with the **Accusative** denotes *entrance* with regard to *place*, as: *in urbem venit, he came into town*; it also indicates the *object toward* which an action is directed, either with a friendly or hostile intention, as: *amor in patrem, love for one's father*; *oratio in Catilinam, a speech against Catiline*. With words denoting *time* it is equivalent to *for*, expressing a predetermination of that time, as: *in diem vivere, to live for the day*; *in perpetuum, forever*; *in dies, from day to day*.

Mark the **Adverbial Expressions**: *hunc in modum, in this way*; *mirum in modum, in a wonderful manner*; *in vicem, alternately or instead of*.

671. **In** with the **Ablative**, denotes *presence in place, time or circumstances*, as: *in urbe habito, I live in town*; *est mihi in animo, I have it in mind*; *in scribendo, while writing*. When a **Number or Quantity** is indicated, it is equivalent to *among*, as: *numerari in bonis civibus, to be counted among the good citizens.*

[95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

TIME.

672. **Time when** is expressed by the **Ablative** of words denoting time, such as:

tempus, <i>time</i>	saeculum, <i>a century</i>
aetas, <i>an age</i>	ver, <i>spring</i>
punctum temporis, <i>a moment</i>	aestas, <i>summer</i>
hora, <i>an hour</i>	autumnus, <i>autumn</i>
dies, <i>a day</i>	hiems, <i>winter</i>
mensis, <i>a month</i>	vesper, <i>evening</i>
annus, <i>a year</i>	nox, <i>night</i>
Hannibal's milites vere convenire	Hannibal's soldiers assembled in spring.

673. Words not explicitly expressing time, such as: *bellum, pax, pueritia*, usually take **In** with the **Ablative**, but they are without **In**, if accompanied by an **Adjective** or **Genitive**. So we say:

in bello, <i>in war times</i>	bello Persico, <i>at the time of the Persian war</i>
in pace, <i>in time of peace</i>	prima pueritia, <i>in early boyhood</i>
in pueritia, <i>in boyhood</i>	bello Antiochi, <i>during the war with Antiochus.</i>
in adolescentia, <i>in youth</i>	
in senectute, <i>in old age</i>	

Particular Phrases.

initio	} at the beginning	temporibus	} in the times of
principio		aetate	
adventu,	at the arrival	ludis,	during the games
discessu,	at the departure	bis die,	twice a day
in tempore,	at the right time	hora nona,	at 9 o'clock

674. Time how long is put in the Accusative.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit, Appius was blind many years.

The Preposition **p̄r** may be used to denote *from beginning to end*, as: *est mecum per totum diem, he is with me the livelong day.*

Time how long since may be expressed by an ordinal number in the Accusative, as:

*Mithridates jam annum tertium Mithridates has reigned going
et vicesimum regnat on 23 years.*

Time how long before the present moment is expressed by **ābhinc** with the Accusative, as: *abhinc sex menses, six months ago.*

675. Distance of time how long before or after is expressed by the Ablative with antē or pōst following:

paucis diebus ante, a few days before

paucis diebus post, a few days afterward.

The **Accusative** can also be employed, but then the *Preposition* precedes, thus: *ante, post paucos dies.*

Either Case and the **cardinal** as well as the **ordinal** numbers may be used, when the *Preposition* is placed **between** the Numeral and the Substantive. Hence the English phrase *three years after* may be expressed as follows:

tribus annis post

tertio anno post

tribus post annis

tertio post anno

post tres annos

post tertium annum

tres post annos

tertium post annum

quām and a verb may be added to **antē** and **pōst** in all the forms above specified, as:

tribus annis postquam venērat

post tres annos quam venērat

tertio anno postquam venērat

post annum tertium quam venērat

} *three years after he
had come.*

676. Time within which is expressed by the **Ablative** or by **intrā** with the **Accusative**:

Agamemnon vix decem annis *Agamemnon in ten years*
(intra decem annos) unam *hardly took one city.*
cepit urbem

677. Time for how long is expressed by **in** with the **Accusative**, as:

Phaeton currum patrum in *Phaeton asked his father's char-*
diem rogavit *riot for a day.*

678. The Question how old? is answered in different ways:

By **nātūs** (*born*) with the **Accusative**, as: puer decem annos natus est, *the boy is ten years old*;

By the **Genitive of Quality**: Hamilcar secum duxit filium Hannibālem annōrum novem, *Hamilcar took with him his son Hannibal 9 years of age*;

By **āgērē**, to *pass*, with **annūs** and an ordinal number, as: quartum annum ago et octogesimū, *I am 83 years old*.

Older and *younger* are expressed by **mājōr** and **mīnōr** with following **Ablative**, as:

major quinque et triginta annis, *older than 35 years.* [243. 244.]

SPACE.

679. Extent of Space is put in the **Accusative**, as:

fossa pedes trecentos longa est, *the ditch is 300 feet long, 6 feet*
sex pedes alta *deep.*

680. Measures of length, depth, etc., are often expressed by the **Genitive of Quality**, as:

vallum pedum duodēcim fīri *he ordered a rampart to be*
jussit *made of 12 feet (in height).*

681. Distance how far is put in the **Accusative** or **Ablative**, as:

a recta conscientia transversum *we ought not to swerve a nail's*
unguem non oportet discedere *breadth from a right con-*
science

copiae Ariovisti a Romanis mi- *the troops of Ariovistus were*
libus quattuor et viginti aflu- *twenty four miles from the*
runt *Romans.* [241. 242.]

PLACE.

682. To express relations of **Place**, *Prepositions* are necessary, viz.:

In with the **Ablative** to denote the place *where*, as: in urbe, *in town*;

In or **ad** with the **Accusative** to denote the place *to which*, as: in Eurōpam, *to Europe*; ad urbem, *to town*;

ex with the **Ablative** to denote the place *from which*, as: ex Britannia, *from Great Britain*.

683. But the **Prepositions** are not used with the names of **Towns** and **small Islands**.

In answer to the question *whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the **Accusative Case**, as: Romam venit, *he came to Rome*.

In answer to the question *whence?* the names of towns and small islands are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Roma cessit, *he retired from Rome*.

In answer to the question *where?* the names of towns and small islands, if of the first or second declension and in the singular, are put in the **Genitive Case**, as: Romae mansit, *he remained at Rome*. But if the names are of the plural number or belong to the third declension, they are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Babylōne mortuus est, *he died at Babylon*. (For the place *where* there was formerly a special Case, the **Locative**, ending in **i** which is preserved in Carthaginī, *at Carthage*; rurī, *in the country*, etc.)

684. **urbs** or **oppidum** without an *Attribute* is placed before the proper name, and the preposition **in** or **ex** is always employed, as:

in urbem Cirtam
ex oppido Gergovia
in urbe Roma

to the city of Cirta
from the town of Gergovia
in the city of Rome.

685. **urbs** or **oppidum** with an *Attribute* is placed after the proper name, commonly with **in** or **ex**. But in answer to the question *where?* the **Ablative** may be used with or without **in**, even though the proper name be in the **Genitive**.

Aulide, ex oppido Boeotiae
Thalam, in oppidum magnum
Albae, (in) urbe munita

from Aulis, a town of Boeotia
to Thala, a great town
at Alba, a fortified city.

686. The following words are used like names of towns, without a preposition:

rūs, into the country	dōmūm, home	
rūrē, from the country	dōmō, from home	hūmō, from the ground
rūrī, in the country	dōmī, at home	hūmī, on the ground
dōmī militiæquē, at home and in the field		
bellī dōmīquē, in war and in peace		
fōrās, to the doors; fōris, out-of-doors, abroad.		

A **Genitive** or **Possessive** may be used with **dōmūs** in this construction, but when it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally employed, as:

domi meae, at my house; domum Caesāris, to Caesar's house;
in domum vetērem e nova, to the old house from the new.

687. The **Ablative** is used without a preposition to denote the place *where*:

With nouns when qualified by the Adjective **tōtūs**, or **cunctūs**:
Demosthēnes disertissimus tota Graecia fuit Demosthenes was the most eloquent man in all Greece;

With **lōcō**, **lōcīs** when qualified by Adjectives:
hoc loco, multis locis in this place, in many places.

688. The *way by which* is put in the **Ablative**:
terra marique by sea and by land
Appia via profectus est he set out by the Appian way.

689. The **Preposition In** is generally joined with the **Ablative** after *Verbs of Placing*, as:

pōnērē, to place	stātūrērē	} to set	dēmergērē, to plunge
collōcārē, to put	constitūrērē		imprīmērē, to stamp
considērē, to settle	dēfigērē, to plant		inscribērē, to write upon

Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit Plato has put reason in the head
Lucretia cultrum in corde defiguit Lucretia plants a knife in her heart.

690. Again, after *Verbs of Assembling* and kindred significations the **Preposition In** is followed by the **Accusative**. Such are:

advēnirē, to arrive congregārī, to assemble cōgērē, to assemble
convēnirē, to meet nuntīārē, to bring word
conjurāti in curiam convenērunt the conspirators met in the senate house.

Special Uses of Substantives.

691. In place of the **Abstract** expressions: in pueritiā, in adulescentiā, in senectūte, in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the Latin employs the **Concretes** pūēr, ādūlescens, sēnex; ab infante, a parvūlo, *from childhood*.

692. When official titles are used to indicate time, the **concrete** nouns consūl, praetōr, &c., are used instead of consūlātūs, praetūrā, &c. as: L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō consulibus, *in the consulship of L. Piso and A. Gabinius*.

693. Again, **Abstract** nouns are sometimes used instead of **Concretes**, as: nobilitās for nobiles, *noblemen*
 posteritas “ postēri, *descendants*
 vicinitās “ vicini, *neighbors*.

694. In Latin, **Abstract** nouns when referring to several objects or denoting repetition at different times admit of *plural use*, as:

adventūs imperatōrum, *the arrival of the generals*;

interitūs exercitūm, *the destruction of the armies*.

695. Some **Abstract** nouns take such a modified sense as to admit of *plural use*, as: fortitudīnes, *gallant actions*; irae, *quarrels*.

696. Symmetrical parts of the human body are usually in the plural, as: cervices, *the neck*; pectōra, *the breast*; also words denoting phenomena of nature, as: nives, *snow*; grandīnes, *hail*; pluviae, *rain*.

697. Other **Plural** expressions to be noted are:

ligna, (*logs of*) *wood*

carnes, *pieces of meat*

aera, *articles of bronze*

vina, *kinds of wine*.

698. The Singular, in a **Collective** sense, is sometimes used for the plural, as:

pedes, *infantry*

fabā, *beans*

miles, *the soldiery*

porcus, *pork*

eques, *cavalry*

gallīna, *fowl*

hostis, *the enemy*

vestis, *clothing*.

699. A **Proper** name may be applied to two or more members of the same family, or to persons of the same character, and so becomes strictly common as: Horatīi, *the Horatii*; Nerōnes, *Neros* (*tyrants*).

700. The Substantive nēmō is often used with other Substantives so as to become equivalent to the Adjective nullūs, as: nēmō civis, *no citizen*. It wants the **genitive** and **ablative**. The oblique cases of nīhīl are supplied by the respective cases of nulla res.

Special Uses of Adjectives.

701. Adjectives are often used as **Substantives**. In the **Plural** masculine adjectives denote *persons*, neuter adjectives *things*.

paupĕres, *the poor*

humāna, *human affairs*

divites, *the rich*

omnia, *all things*

omnes, *all men*

vĕra, *truth*.

702. The **Neuter Singular** may denote either a *single object* or a *quality*, as:

honestum, *an honorable act*

bonum, *a good*

malum, *an evil*

pulchrum, *beauty*

703. Adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the *Possessive*, or a *noun with a preposition*, as:

domus regĭa, *a king's palace*

pugna Cannensis, *the fight at Cannae*

iter campestre, *a journey across country*

aliĕna domus, *another man's house*

Miltiades Atheniensis, *Miltiades of Athens*.

704. The *first part*, *last part*, *middle part* of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the Adjectives primŭs, mĕdiŭs, ūltimŭs, infimŭs, imŭs, summŭs, rĕliquŭs, as: mĕdia nox, *the middle of the night*; summa arbor, *the top of the tree*; suprĕmi montes, *the summits of the mountains*.

705. The **Comparative** sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the **Superlative** of *very*, as: brevior, *rather short*; audācior, *too bold*; amīcŭs carissimŭs, *a very dear friend*; Cato, homo doctissimŭs, *Cato, a very learned man*.

706. The force of the **Comparative** is increased by multŭ, *much*, *far*; aliquantŭ, *some more*, *considerably*; etiam, *even*, *still*, as: multo melior, *much better*; etiam doctior, *still more learned*.

707. The **Superlative** is strengthened by longĕ, *by far*; multŭ, *much*; vĕl, *even*; unus omnĭum, *one above all others*; quā, quantŭ potuit, *as . . . as possible*; as: multo maxĭma pars, *by far the largest part*; quam maxĭmae copiae, *forces as large as possible*; sophistes vel maximŭs, *the very greatest sophist*.

708. When two qualities of the same object are compared, both adjectives (or adverbs) are in the **Comparative**, as: est doctior quam sapientior, *he is more learned than wise*. Where mĕgis quā is used, both Adjectives are in the **Positive**: amīcus tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens, *your friend is eloquent rather than wise*.

709. The **Comparative** is to be used in reference to *only two* objects; the **Superlative** when comparing *more than two* objects, as: *uter fratrum natu maior est? Which of the two brothers is the older? Quæritur ex duobus uter dignior, ex pluribus quis dignissimus; the question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more, which is the worthiest.*

Special Uses of Pronouns.

710. **Personal** and **Possessive** Pronouns of the *First* and *Second* Persons are not expressed in Latin except for distinction or emphasis, as: *amamus parentes, we love our parents.*

711. As a rule, the **Reflexive Pronoun** *sui, sibi, se* and its Possessive *suius*, are used when reference is made to the **Subject** of the sentence; as: *Caesar se ad suos recepit, Caesar betook himself to his men.*

The Possessive *suius* may also be used with reference to any noun in the same sentence on which *emphasis* is thrown, as:

Socratem cives sui interfecerunt	<i>Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens</i>
puer columbam cepit in nido suo	<i>the boy caught the dove in its nest.</i>

On the other hand, the **Determinatives** *eius, eorum, earum* are used as Possessives of the third person, when *no* emphasis appears, or when reference is made to a noun in another sentence, as:

Deum agnoscis ex operibus eius	<i>you recognize God by his works</i>
multi cives interfecti, eorum-que bona publicata sunt	<i>many citizens were slain, and their property confiscated.</i>

To express reciprocal action **inter se** is regularly used, as: *amant inter se, they love one another.*

712. *hic*, *this*, refers to that which is nearer the speaker (**Demonstrative** of the **First Person**); *iste*, *that (of yours)* to the person addressed (**Demonstrative** of the **Second Person**); *ille*, *that*, to that which is remote (**Demonstrative** of the **Third Person**).

hic very frequently means *that which is about to be mentioned*, as: *his condicionibus, on the following terms;*

iste especially refers to *one's opponent* (in court, etc.) and frequently implies contempt, as: *Mars alter, ut isti volunt, a second Mars, as those fellows say;*

ille is often used of *that which is well known, notorious*, as: *praeclarum illud Solonis, that famous saying of Solon.* It is also used in the sense of *the following*.

713. Often **hic** and **ille** are to be rendered *the latter* and *the former* (**hic**, the one last mentioned, the *nearer*; **ille**, the one mentioned earlier, the *remoter*), thus:

mellus de quibusdam acerbi inimici merentur quam ii amici, qui suaves videntur; illi saepe verum dicunt, hi nunquam.	<i>bitter enemies deserve better of some people than those friends who seem obliging; the former often tell the truth, the latter never.</i>
--	--

But the order is often reversed so that **hic** refers to the object first mentioned (usually the more important), and **ille** to the one mentioned last.

melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria; haec in tua, illa in deorum manu est	<i>better is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in your hands, the latter in the hands of the gods.</i>
--	--

714. **Is**, *that*, is either the regular *Antecedent* of the *Relative* or refers to an *Object* just mentioned.

is sapiens est, qui se ad casus accomodat omnes	<i>he is a wise man who accommodates himself to all circumstances</i>
mihi obviam venit tuus puer; is mihi litteras abs te reddidit	<i>I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.</i>

715. When a quality is ascribed with emphasis to an object already named, **Is** with a copulative or adversative particle is used, thus:

et is, atque is, isque, neque is, et is non,	<i>and he too, and that too, and he not, and that not</i>
unam rem explicabo, eamque maximam	<i>one point I shall explain, and that, too, a very important one.</i>

716. No demonstrative pronoun is employed in Latin in phrases where *that* or *those* in English is used in place of a noun which would have to be repeated:

Terentii fabulis plus delector quam Plauti	<i>I find more delight in the plays of Terence than in those of Plautus.</i>
--	--

717. **idem** is often equivalent to an adverb or an adverbial phrase (*also, likewise, yet, at the same time*), as: Quidquid honestum est, idem est utile. *Whatever is honorable is at the same time useful.*

718. *ipsē, self*, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis, often expressed in English by *just, mere, very*, as: *triginta erant dies ipsi, it was just 30 days.*

When added to any reflexive pronoun, *ipsē* agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the sentence, according as either is emphatic; as:

piger ipse sibi obstat, the lazy man stands in his own way;
nosce te ipsum! know thyself!

719. For the agreement of **Relatives** see **551**, foll.

The **Antecedent**, and the Adjective or Apposition of the antecedent are often incorporated into the Relative clause, as: *in quem primum egressi sunt locum Troja vocatur; the first place they landed at was called Troy.*

720. The **Interrogative** *quīs?* is used substantively and adjectively; *qui?* mostly adjectively. Thus we say: *quis rex? which king?* inquiring for the *individual*; but *qui homo? what man?* inquiring for the *character*.

721. The **Indefinite Pronouns** are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant, without indicating *what one*.

722. *āliquis* means *some one or other*, as: *fecit hoc aliquis tui similis, some one or other like you did this*; *aliquid consuetudini dandum est, something must be allowed to custom.*

723. *quīs* (fainter than *āliquis*) is used chiefly after **Relatives** and the following **Conjunctions**:

sī, if; nīsi, if not; nē, lest; nūm, whether; cūm, when.

āliquis after *sī* and the rest is *emphatic*.

ne quid nimis! nothing in excess!

ne qua significatio fiat, that no sign may be made.

724. *quisquām* (*subst.*) and *ullūs* (*adj.*) mean *any one at all*, and are chiefly used in negative, interrogative, and conditional sentences, also after *sine*, without; *vix*, scarcely, *quām*, than.

<i>neque ex castris Catilinae quis-</i>	<i>nor had any one departed from</i>
<i>quam omnium discesserat</i>	<i>the camp of Catiline</i>
<i>legāti sine ulla spe pacis domum</i>	<i>the ambassadors returned home</i>
<i>rediērunt</i>	<i>without any hope of peace</i>
<i>legāti non sine aliqua spe pacis</i>	<i>the ambassadors returned home,</i>
<i>domum rediērunt</i>	<i>not without some hope of</i>
	<i>peace.</i>

725. *quidām*, means *one, a, a certain one*; in the plural it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, as: *quidam rhetor antiquus, a certain ancient rhetorician*; *certi quidam homines, some reliable persons*.

726. *ūnusquisquē* means *every single one*; *quīvis & quīlibēt*, *any one you like*; *quisquē*, *each one*; *omnēs*, *all together*.

727. The Distributive *quisquē* is used:

After the reflexive pronoun, *sui, sibi, se*, and its possessive *suis*, as: *sua cuique voluptas, each man has his hobby*;

With *Superlatives* and *Ordinals*, as: *optimum quidque rarissimum est, the best is the rarest, or every good thing is rare, or the better a thing, the rarer it is*; *quinto quoque anno, every fifth year*.

728. *aliūs* is simply *another*; *altēr*, is *the other of two, or the second*; *ceteri*, *all the rest or others*.

729. The expressions *aliūs . . aliūs, altēr . . altēr* may be used in a *reciprocal* sense: *pueri alter alterum amant, the boys love each other*. *aliūs* repeated in different propositions is translated *one — another*; *aliud agitur, aliud simulatur, one thing is done, another pretended*. *alii . . alii*, is *some . . others*; *alteri . . alteri*, *one party . . another party*. *aliūs* with another case of the same word may be translated by two separate propositions commencing with *one—another* respectively; as: *aliud alii natura iter ostendit, nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

[245. 246.]

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

Use of Tenses.

730. There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

Of Continued Action.

the **Present**, as: *scribō, I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: *scribēbām, I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: *scribām, I shall write*.

Of Completed Action:

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: *scripsi, I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: *scripsērām, I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: *scripsērō, I shall have written*.

731. The **Present** is used of what is going on now, at the present time, and of what is true at all times, as:

loquēris adhuc, cum omnes ta-	<i>you are still speaking while all</i>
cent	<i>are silent</i>
fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>fortune helps the brave.</i>

732. The **Present** is often substituted for the *Historical Perfect* in lively narration, as:

triginta rectōres reipublicae	<i>30 rulers of the Athenian com-</i>
Atheniensis constituuntur, qui	<i>monwealth are appointed, who</i>
fiunt tyranni	<i>become tyrants.</i>

733. The **Present** is used in Latin to express a past action or state which is continued so as to be present also, especially with *jām*, *now*; *jām diū*, *now for a long time*; *jām pridēm*, *now long since*, as:

tot annos bella gero	<i>for so many years I have waged</i>
	<i>and am still waging war.</i>

734. The **Present** is regularly used with *dūm*, *while*, though the time referred to is past, as:

haec dum aguntur, Caesāri nun-	<i>while this is going on, word</i>
tiātum est	<i>was brought to Caesar.</i>

735. The **Imperfect** denotes an action continuing in the past, but not then accomplished. It is employed to describe manners, customs and situations.

scribēbam epistūlam, cum amī-	<i>I was writing a letter when my</i>
cus adesset	<i>friend came</i>
ante oppidum planities patēbat	<i>before the town extended a plain</i>
Pausanias epulabātur more Per-	<i>Pausanias was wont to banquet</i>
sarum	<i>in the Persian style.</i>

736. The **Future** represents an action that is yet to come. In subordinate clauses it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English:

sanabimur, si volēmus	<i>we shall be healed if we wish.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------------------

The **Future** sometimes has the force of an *Imperative*:

in sudore vultus tui comēdes pa-	<i>in the sweat of thy face thou</i>
nem tuum	<i>shalt eat thy bread.</i>

737. The **Perfect** has two distinct uses:

I. As the **Perfect Definite** it denotes an action as now completed, and is rendered by the English Perfect with *have*.

triste est nomen carendi, quia
subiicitur haec vis: habuit,
non habet

*sad is the phrase "do without"
because this meaning is at-
tributed to it: he has had,
he has no longer.*

II. As the **Historical Perfect** it denotes an action as completed in past time, but leaves it, in other respects, wholly indeterminate.

Caesar armis rem gerere con-
stituit, exercitum finibus Ita-
liae admovit, Rubiconem trans-
iit, Romam et aerarium occu-
pavit, Pompejum cedentem
persecutus est, eumque in
campis Pharsalicis devicit.

*Caesar resolved to use armed
force; he advanced with his
army to the frontiers of Italy,
passed the Rubicon, took pos-
session of Rome and the
treasury, pursued Pompey
and defeated him in the plain
of Pharsalus*

The following **Conjunctions**:

postquam } *after*
posteaquam }

ut } *as soon as*
ut primum }

ubi } *as soon as*
ubi primum }
simulac }
simulatque }

are usually followed by the **Historical Perfect**:

milites postquam victoriam
adepti sunt, nihil reliqui vic-
tis fecere

*when the soldiers had won the
victory, they left nothing to
the vanquished.*

738. The **Pluperfect** is used of an action that was completed before another was begun; as:

consul copias, quas pro castris
collocaverat, reduxit

*the consul led back the forces
which he had stationed before
the camp.*

739. The **Future Perfect** denotes an action as completed in the future; it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, as:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

740. In the statement of an action repeated before another, with such particles as: *cūm, ūbī, whenever; sīmulāc, as soon as; sī, when;* and Relatives, as: *quōtiēns, as often as,* the **Perfect** and **Pluperfect Indicative** are used — the Perfect referring to *Present Time*, the Pluperfect to *Past*.

quōtiēns cecīdit, surgit, as often as he falls, he rises,
quōtiēns cecidērat, surgēbat, as often as he fell, he rose.

In like manner, in letters the **Perfect**, or **Imperfect** may be used for the *present* and the **Pluperfect** for *past* tenses, as in the phrase: *nihil erat quod scriberem, I have nothing to write.*

741. The **Periphrastic Conjugations** are formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the Future Participle (*Active*), and with the Gerundive (*Passive*).

The **Active** Periphrastic Conjugation denotes either intention or being on the point of doing something, as:

scriptūrus sūm, I purpose to write, or am about to write.

The **Passive** Periphrastic Conjugation expresses necessity or propriety, as:

pārentēs āmandī sunt, parents must be loved, deserve or ought to be loved.

The **Person by whom** is put in the **Dative**, as:

pārentēs libēris āmandī sunt, parents ought to be loved by their children.

bellum scriptūrus sum, quod po-	<i>I purpose to write the history of</i>
pūlus Romānus cum Jugurtha	<i>the war which the Roman people</i>
gessit	<i>carried on with Jugurtha.</i>

[247. 248.]

Sequence of Tenses.

742. When two sentences are so related to each other, that the one defines and explains the other, or that the one is dependent on the other, they are connected in the way of **Subordination**, as:

crepant aedificia, priusquam cadant, houses creak before they fall;

crepant aedificia is the **Principal Clause**,

priusquam cadant is the **Dependent Clause**.

The **Subjunctive** is largely used in **Subordinate Sentences**, and will be treated at length in that connection.

743. In those *Dependent Clauses* which require the *Subjunctive* the choice of the tenses of the *Dependent Clause* is determined by the tense of the *Principal Clause* according to the following

GENERAL RULES.

I. *Tenses*, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes:

Principal, including the *Present*, both *Futures* and the *Perfect Definite*;

Historical, including the *Imperfect*, the *Historical Perfect* and the *Pluperfect*.

II. *Principal Tenses* are followed by the *Present Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

III. *Historical Tenses* are followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

	Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.
Present.	cognosco, <i>I am finding out</i>	quid faciās, <i>what you are doing</i> quid fecēris, <i>what you have done, what you have been doing, what you did</i>
Future.	cognoscām, <i>I shall find out</i>	
Fut. Perf.	cognovēro, <i>I shall have found out (shall know)</i>	
Perf. Defn.	cognōvī, <i>I have found out (I know)</i>	
Imperf.	cognoscēbam, <i>I was finding out</i>	quid facēres, <i>what you were doing</i> quid fecisses, <i>what you had done, had been doing</i> quid facērent hostes, <i>what the enemy was doing</i> quid fecissent hostes, <i>what the enemy had done.</i>
Pluperf.	cognovēram, <i>I had found out (I knew)</i>	
Hist. Perf.	Caesar cognōvit, <i>Caesar found out</i>	

744. The *Perfect Definite*, though properly a *Principal* tense, is more commonly treated as a *Historical* tense, and admits after it the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*:
oblītus es, quod dixērim, *you have forgotten what I said*;
interrogāvi eum, quid faceret, *I have asked him what he was doing*;
feci hoc, ut intellegēres, *I have done this that you might see.*

745. In **Sentences of Result**, with *ut*, *quī*, *quān*, the verb of the **Dependent Clause** has the same tense as it would have if the clause were a **Principal** one.

Verres Siciliam ita perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum sta- tum non possit	<i>Verres so ruined Sicily, that she can not be restored to her ancient condition.</i>
--	--

746. The **Future Tenses** are wanting in the *Subjunctive*. After a **Future** or **Future Perfect**, their place is supplied by the **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**; after the other tenses by the **Active Periphrastic Subjunctive**, **Present** or **Imperfect**; as:

cognoscam, quid facias, *I shall find out what you will be doing;*
cognovēro, quid feceris, *I shall have found out what you have done;*
cognosco, quid facturus sis, *I am finding out what you will do;*
cognovēram, quid facturus esses, *I had found out what you would do.*
[249. 250.]

Use of the Indicative.

747. The **Indicative** is the mood of *Direct Assertions* or *Questions*, as:

necessitas non habet legem	<i>necessity recognizes no law</i>
quare vitia sua nemo confitetur?	<i>why will no man confess his</i>
quia etiam nunc in illis est	<i>faults? because he continues</i>
	<i>to indulge in them.</i>

The **Indicative** is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Subjunctive*, chiefly in expressions denoting the *propriety*, *advantage* or *necessity* of an action not performed, such as:

longum est, <i>it would be tedious</i>	possum	} <i>I might, I could</i>
utilius fuit, <i>it would have been better</i>	potēram	
pār est, <i>it would be fair</i>	debēo	} <i>I ought or I should</i>
	debēbam	

perturbationes animōrum potēram
appellāre morbos, sed non con-
veniet ad omnia *I might call the disturbances of
the mind "diseases", but
that would not suit all the
cases.*

The **Indicative** of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used, as: haec condicio non accipienda fuit; *these terms ought not to have been accepted.*

748. The **Indicative** is used after **General Relatives**, such as: *quisquē, no matter who; quotquōt, no matter how many*, and all forms in *-cunquē, -ever*, also after *sivē...sivē, whether...or*, where in English the **Potential** may be used, as:

quidquid id est, timēo Danāos whatever it may be, I fear the Danai, even when they bring presents.

Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

749. The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances.

750. The **Present** and **Perfect Subjunctive** are used to denote an action as *possible* (**Potential Subjunctive**); also the *second person* of the **Imperfect Subjunctive** in the same manner, but only in the expressions:

*credēres, putāres, you would, might have thought
vidēres, cernēres, you would, might have seen.*

*hic quaerat quispiam here some one may ask
dixerit quis some one may say.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nōn**.

751. The **Subjunctive** is used to denote a *wish*—the **Present** and **Perfect** a wish conceived as possible; the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect** an unaccomplished one (**Optative Subjunctive**). When so used, the **Present** and **Perfect** are commonly, and the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect** regularly preceded by *utīnām, O that, I wish that, would that*.

*stet haec urbs may this city continue to stand
falsus utīnām vates sim I wish I may be a false prophet
utīnām me mortuum vidisses would you had seen me dead.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

752. The **Subjunctive** is used to express an *exhortation* or a *command* (**Hortatory** or **Imperative Subjunctive**).

Pres. First Pers. *amēmus patriam, let us love our country*
" Second Pers. *corpōris robōre utāre, use your bodily strength*
" Third Pers. *amet, let him love*

Perf. Second Pers. *ne transiēris Ithērum, do not cross the Ebro*
(negative only) } hoc ne fecēris, thou shalt not do that.

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

753. The **Subjunctive** is used in the Present and Perfect to express a *concession* (**Concessive Subjunctive**), as:

vendat aedes vir bonus, *suppose an honest man is selling a house;*
sit fur, *granted that he be a thief.*

The regular negative here is **nē**.

754. The **Subjunctive** is used in *doubtful questions* (**Dubitative Subjunctive**), as:

quid hoc homīne faciās? *what are you to do with this man?*
quid agērem? *what was I to do?*

The regular negative here is **nōn**.

[251. 252.]

Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive.

755. Dependent **Subjunctive** Clauses may be classified as follows:

Conjunctive Clauses	introduced by	<i>Conjunctions,</i>
Relative Clauses	“	“ <i>Relatives,</i>
Indirect Questions	“	“ <i>Interrogative Words.</i>

Consecutive and Final Conjunctions.

756. *ūt, that,* governs the **Subjunctive**:

I. When it means *that, in order that* (often to be translated by the Infinitive with *to, in order to*) to express **Purpose**; its Negative is **nē, that not, lest**.

esse oportet, ut vivas, non vi-	<i>you must eat to live, not live</i>
vēre, ut edas	<i>to eat</i>
cura, ne quid ei desit	<i>take care that nothing be want-</i>
	<i>ing to him.</i>

II. When it means *so that* (often rendered by *to, so as to*) to express a **Result**. Its Negative is **ūt nōn, so that not**.

tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam	<i>so great is the power of upright-</i>
in hoste etiam diligāmus	<i>ness that we love it even in</i>
	<i>an enemy</i>
ita vixi, ut non frustra me na-	<i>I have so lived that I do not</i>
tum esse existimem	<i>think I was born in vain.</i>

III. When it means *granted that* to express a *Concession*; its Negative is *nē*.

ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas *granted that strength be wanting, yet the good will is to be praised*

ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est *granted that pain is not the greatest evil, an evil it certainly is.*

757. *nēvē*, and *not, nor*, is used as *Continuative* after *nē*, as:
 Thrasybulus legem tulit, ne quis ante actarum rerum accusaretur neve multaretur *Thrasybulus proposed a law that no one should be accused of or punished for past offences.*

758. The most general way of expressing *Purpose* is by *ut* (negatively *nē*) as: *esse oportet, ut vivas, non vivere, ut edas; you must eat to live, not live to eat* This is the regular construction with verbs of *Willing* and *Wishing*, of *Warning* and *Beseeching*, of *Urging* and *Demanding*, of *Resolving* and *Endeavoring*, of *Forcing* and *Permitting*; such as:

consulo, curo, prospicio, providēo, vidēo;
 contendo, labōro, nitor, opēram do, id ago, id specto, nihil antiquius habēo, quam;
 opto, postulo, flagito, oro, rogo, peto, precor, obsēcro;
 mando, edico, impēro, praecipio;
 impello, incito, movēo, addūco;
 hortor, monēo, suadēo, persuadēo;
 concēdo, permitto;
 facio, perficio, adipiscor, assēquor, consēquor, impētro.

volo, ut mihi respondēas, *I wish you to answer me*
 oro et hortor te, ut in munere diligentissimus sis *I entreat and admonish you to be very careful in your office*
 ne nocēas, dum vis prodesse vidēto *see to it that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.*

759. A clause of *Result* introduced by *ut*, so that (negatively *ut nōn*) is used:

After such words as *tām, tālis, tantus, ita, sic, adēo*;

After verbs denoting *it happens, it remains, it follows*, and the like; (*accidit, contingit, evenit, sequitur, restat, &c.*)

After *quām* with a *Comparative*:

Atticus ta vixit, ut Atheniensibus carissimus esset	<i>Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians</i>
accidit, ut plena esset luna	<i>it chanced to be full moon</i>
urbs munitior erat, quam ut primo impetu capi posset	<i>the town was too strong to be taken in the first attack.</i>

760. The phrase tantum abest, ut... ut; it is so far (from being the case) deserves special notice:

tantum abest ab eo, ut malum sit mors, ut veretur, ne homini sit nihil bonum aliud	<i>so far is death from being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.</i>
--	--

761. After metuo, timeo, vereor, I fear, metus est, periculum est, there is fear, danger, ne must be rendered by that or lest, and ut by that not, as:

Milo metuēbat, ne a servis indicaretur	<i>Milo feared that he would be betrayed by his servants</i>
timeo, ut sustineas labores	<i>I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.</i>

762. The prefix *ali-* in *aliquis* and similar Compounds is rejected after *Relatives* and the following *Conjunctions*:

si, if; nisi, if not; ne, lest; num, whether; cum, when.

Hence we say in *Final Clauses*:

ne quis, that no one	ne quando, that never
ne quid, that nothing	ne quisquam, that no one at all
ne cubicl, that nowhere	ne quidquam, that nothing at all.

[253. 254.]

763. The Ablative quod (= ut eo, that thereby), in order that, so that, with the *Subjunctive* is used as a *Conjunction* in clauses of *Purpose*, especially with *Comparatives*, as:

ager aratur, quo meliores fructus edere possit	<i>the field is plowed that it may yield better fruit.</i>
--	--

764. quominus (= ut eo minus, that thereby the less), that not, with the *Subjunctive* is used with verbs of *Hindering*, such as:

impedire, to hinder	obstare, to be in the way
deterrere, to frighten off	obstetere, to oppose
prohibere, to keep from	recusare, to refuse

mors non deterret sapientem,	<i>death does not deter a wise man</i>
quomīnus in omne tempus rei	<i>from consulting the interest</i>
publicae consulat	<i>of the state the whole time.</i>
aetas non impēdit, quomīnus	<i>age does not hinder our retain-</i>
agri colendi studia teneāmus	<i>ing interest in agriculture.</i>

Instead of **quomīnus**, we may use **nē**, and when the principal clause is *negative*, **quīn**:

Regūlus ne sententiā dicēret	<i>Regulus refused to pronounce</i>
recusāvit	<i>an opinion</i>

765. **quīn** (= **quī**, *how*, and **nē**, *not*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used only after *negative* clauses or such questions as expect a negative answer. It is equivalent

to quī nōn , quōd nōn , <i>but</i> , as:	
nemo est, quīn hoc vidēat	<i>there is no one but sees this;</i>

to ut nōn , <i>but</i> , as <i>not</i> , as:	
nemo est tam fortis, quīn rei	<i>no one is so brave as not to be</i>
novitāte perturbētur	<i>confounded by the newness</i>
	<i>of a thing.</i>

766. **quīn** is used in the sense of *that not* or *that* after **Negative Expressions** implying *doubt*, *omission* and the like; such are:

non dubito,	<i>I do not doubt</i>
non est dubium,	<i>there is no doubt</i>
quis dubitet?	<i>who can doubt?</i>
non multum abest,	<i>there is not much wanting</i>
nihil abest,	<i>there is nothing wanting</i>
nihil praetermitto	} <i>I omit nothing</i>
nihil intermitto	
temperāre mihi non possum,	<i>I cannot restrain myself</i>
vix me continēo,	<i>I hardly refrain from</i>
retinēri non possum,	<i>I cannot be restrained</i>
facēre non possum	<i>quīn, I cannot help</i>
fieri non potest	<i>quīn, it cannot happen but that</i>

quis dubitet, quīn in virtūte di-	<i>who can doubt that wealth con-</i>
vitiae sint?	<i>sists in virtue?</i>
non multum afuit, quīn interficē-	<i>I was not far from being</i>
rer	<i>killed.</i>

Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions.

767. Concessive Conjunctions express a *Concession*, with the general signification *although, granting that*.

These are: *etsi, etiamsi, tāmetsi, quamquām, although*
quamvis (quantumvis), however much, however
licet, ūt, cūm, though, suppose, whereas.

768. Of these, *licet* (*properly a verb*) exclusively, and *quamvis* usually, take the **Present or Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

licet superbus ambules pecuniā, although you may strut about
fortūna non mutat genus proud of your purse, fortune
changes not birth

vitia mentis, quamvis exigua defects of the mind, no matter
sint, in majus excēdunt how slight they be, go on in-
creasing.

769. *cūm, whereas, since; ūt, granted that; nē, granted that* not (see 756. III.) take the **Subjunctive**.

Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, Phocion was constantly poor,
cum divitissimus esse posset though he could be very rich.

770. *etiamsi* takes the **Indicative** to denote *real concessions*, and the **Subjunctive** to denote such as are *merely conceived* in the mind, as:

ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non that truth, although it is not
est, mihi tamen grata est agreeable, is nevertheless
acceptable to me

vita brevis est, etiamsi supra life is short, although it should
centum annos duret last over 100 years.

771. *etsi, tāmetsi* and *quamquām* regularly take the **Indicative** (unless otherwise required by the connection, as:

virī boni recte agunt, etsi nul- good men do right, though they
lum consecuturum emolumen- see no profit about to result
tum vident

quamquam omnis virtus nos ad though all excellence attracts us
se allicit, tamen justitiā et to itself, yet justice and liber-
liberalitas id maxime efficit ality do this most.

772. The Conjunctions of Comparison

tamquām, quāsi (vēlūt si, ūt si, prōinde ac si), as if,
take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Tenses** follow the general rule of *Sequence* (743); accordingly the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Imperfect*, as:

superbi saepe ita se gerunt, *haughty people often behave as*
quasi ipsi soli sint homines *if they alone were men.*

The **Particles of Comparison**: ūt, sicūt, quēmadmōdūm, *as*, usually referring to itā, sic, *so*, take the **Indicative**:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

[255. 256.]

Temporal Conjunctions.

773. As a rule, **Temporal Clauses** take the **Indicative**; they are introduced by the following **Conjunctions**:

postquā, <i>after that, after</i>	cū, <i>when</i>
ūt, <i>as</i>	dū } <i>while, until</i>
ūbī, <i>when</i>	dōnēc }
sīmūlāc }	quōd, <i>up to</i>
sīmūlatquē } <i>as soon as</i>	quamdū, <i>as long as</i>
ūt primūm }	antēquā } <i>before that, before</i>
cū primūm } <i>that</i> (see 737)	priusquā }

774. **Temporal cū**, meaning *when, at the time when*, takes the **Indicative** of all the tenses, as:

ager cum multis annos quievit,	<i>when a field has rested many</i>
uberiores efferre fructus solet	<i>years, it usually produces a</i>
	<i>more abundant crop</i>
oracula Graeci consulebant, cum	<i>the Greeks consulted the oracles</i>
bella erant inituri	<i>when they were to begin war.</i>

775. **Historical cū**, meaning *when, as*, takes the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect Subjunctive**.

Agesilaus cum ex Aegypto re-	<i>Agesilaus died as he was re-</i>
verteretur, mortuus est	<i>turning from Egypt</i>
cum Caesar Anconam occupas-	<i>when Caesar had occupied An-</i>
set, urbem reliquimus	<i>cona, we left the city.</i>

776. **dū, quōd** and **dōnēc** (= quamdū), *so long as, while*, take the **Indicative** of all the tenses; in narrative **dū**, *while*, takes the **Present Indicative**. (734)

dum spiro, spero	<i>while there is life, there is hope</i>
quoad potuit, restitit	<i>as long as he could, he withstood</i>
haec dum aguntur, domi res	<i>while this was going on, affairs</i>
quietae erant	<i>were quiet at home.</i>

777. *dūm, quōdā, dōnēc, until, take the Present, Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative when a fact is to be expressed, as:*

haud desinam, donec perfecero I will not cease, until I shall have accomplished.

778. *dūm, quōdā, until, implying purpose, doubt or futurity, take the Subjunctive:*

Alexander paulisper exercitum consistere jussit, donec consideret pulvis Alexander ordered the army to halt a short time, until the dust should be down.

779. *antēquā and priusquā, before, have in narration the same construction as historical cū or postquā, viz. either the Subjunctive of the Imperfect and Pluperfect, or the Perfect Indicative, as:*

Achaei non ante ausi sunt bellum capessere quam ab Roma revertissent legati the Achaeans did not dare to begin the war before the ambassadors had returned from Rome

antēquam bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit before war consumed the wealth of our city it was very powerful.

780. In reference to **Future Time**, these conjunctions take the **Present and Future Perfect Indicative**, also the **Present Subjunctive**, as:

tempestas minatur, antequam surgat the storm threatens before it rises

ante revertar quam luna bis impleverit orbem I will return before the moon has twice filled her orb.

[257. 258.]

Causal Conjunctions.

781. The following **Causal Conjunctions** take the **Indicative**:

*quā } because
quod }*

*quoniam
quandōquidē
siquidē } since, inas-
much as*

quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite

since it is now night, go to your houses

quia natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae amicitiae aeternae sunt

because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.

782. The **Subjunctive** is used in causal clauses when a statement is made *not as a fact*, but as the *assertion or opinion* of some one else, as:

Socrātes accusātus est, quod *Socrates was brought to trial*
 corrumpēret juventūtem *because (as they said) he corrupted youth.*

783. After those verbs which express the feeling of *joy, grief*, etc., as: *gauderē, to rejoice; grātiām āgērē, to thank; dōlērē, to grieve; glōriārī, to boast*, **quōd** is used to give the ground of emotion, as:

quod scribis, gaudēo *I am glad that you write*
 tibi grātiās ago, quod me omni *I thank you that you free me*
 molestia libēras *from all trouble.*

784. **quōd**, *that*, is also used to introduce explanatory clauses, chiefly after a Demonstrative:

bene facis, quod me adjūvas *you do well in assisting me*
 quod Regūlus rediit mihi mira- *that Regulus returned seems*
 bile videtur *wonderful to me.*

785. At the beginning of a sentence, **quōd** is used in the sense of *as to*, especially in letters, as:

quod de domo scribis., *as to what you write of the house..*

nōn quōd, **nōn quō**, *not as if*, and **nōn quān**, *not as if not*, take the **Subjunctive**, as:

pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod *boxers groan not as if they*
 dolēant, sed quod omne cor- *were in pain, but because all*
 pus intenditur *the body is put to the stretch.*

786. Causal **cūm**, *as, since*, takes the **Subjunctive**.

cum vita sine amicis insidiarum *since life without friends is full*
 et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa *of treachery and fear, reason*
 monet amicitias comparare *itself advises us to contract*
friendships. [259. 260.]

Conditional Conjunctions.

787. In a **Conditional Sentence** the clause containing the condition is called the **Protasis**, and that containing the conclusion the **Apodosis**.

Protasis. si bovem non possis, *if you cannot drive an ox,*
Apodosis. asinum agas *drive a donkey.*

The **Protasis** is regularly introduced by the conditional particle **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds, viz:

nīsī, *unless*
sī nōn, *if not*

sīn, *if not, but if*
quodsī, *but if*.

788. There are **Three Classes** of Conditional Sentences:

I. The condition is represented as a *fact*: **sī** with the **Indicative** in both clauses:

si Deus est, aeternus est *if there is a God, he is eternal.*

II. The condition is represented as *possible* or *likely* to be realized: **sī** with **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**:

si quis ita agat, imprūdens sit *if anybody were to act thus, he would not be wise.*

III. The condition is represented as *contrary to fact*: **sī** with **Imperfect** or **Pluperfect Subjunctive**:

facērem, **si** possem *I should do it if I could.*

789. **nī**sī and **sī** nōn are used for negative conditions; with **nī**sī the negative belongs to the whole sentence, with **sī** nōn to a particular word, as:

nisi id confestim facis, te tradam *unless you do this at once I shall deliver you to the magistrate*
 magistratūi

dolōrem si non potēro frangere, *if I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.*
 occultābo

790. The **Subjunctive** is used in **Conditional Wishes** with:

dummōdō	} <i>if only, provided</i>	dummōdō nē	} <i>provided only not</i>
dūm		dūm nē	
mōdō		mōdō nē	

odērint, dum metūant	<i>let them hate if they only fear</i>
Athenienses summas laudes merentur, dummōdo ne tam leves fuissent	<i>the Athenians deserve the highest praise if only they had not been so wanton.</i>

sī mōdō, *if only, provided that*, requires the **Indicative**.

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.

791. As a rule, the **Relative Clause** is in the *Indicative* when a *definite fact* is stated:

planta, quae saepius transfer- a tree often transplanted does
tur, non coalescit not thrive.

792. The **Subjunctive** is used in **Relative Clauses**:

I. to denote **purpose** or **motive**; **quī** = **ut** **ēgō**, **ut** **tū**, **ut** **is**, etc.
missi sunt delecti cum Leonīda, picked men were sent with
qui Thermopylas occuparent Leonidas to take possession
of Thermopylae.

II. to denote the **cause**, **on account of which** or the **hindrance** in
spite of which; **quī** = **cū** **ēgō**, **cū** **tū**, **cū** **is**, etc. (often with
ut, **utpōtē**, **as**; **quippe**, **namely**).

o virum simplicem, qui nos nihil O guileless man who hidest
celet! nothing from us!

III. to denote **result** or to indicate a **characteristic** of the antecedent,
sometimes in a restrictive sense, as:

non is sum, qui hoc faciā I am not such a one as to do this
orationes Catōnis, quas quidem Cato's speeches as far as I have
legērim read them.

793. The construction of the **Consecutive** or **Characteristic Relative**
is especially common:

a. after **is**, **tālīs**, **ējusmodī**, **tantūs**, **tām** with an **Adjective**
or **Adverb**, **sōlūs** and **ūnūs**:

est innocentia affectio talis animi, quae nocēat nemini, innocence
is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.

b. after general expressions of **existence** and **non-existence**, as:

est qui	} there is, there are	habeo quod, I have to
sunt qui		some who
nemo est qui,	there is none to	found who
nihil est quod,	there is nothing	

sunt qui censēant una animum cum corpore interfīre, there are
some who believe that the soul perishes together with the body.

c. after **dignūs**, **indignūs**, **idōnēūs**, **aptūs**:
indignus es, cui fides habeātur, you are unworthy of being believed.

794. A clause joined to another by a Relative, takes the **Subjunctive**, when it contains *not the sentiment of the writer*, but of *some other person* alluded to, as:

Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit *Paetus presented to me all the books that his brother had left.*

795. Comparatives may be followed by **quā́m** **ut**, **quā́m** **quí** with the **Subjunctive**, corresponding to the English *too...to*, as:

damna majōra sunt quam quae aestimāri possint *the losses are too great to be estimated.*

[263. 264.]

Direct Questions.

796. Questions in Latin are introduced by **Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs or Particles**.

Interrogative Pronouns.

quis? quid? *who? what?* quisnā́m? quidnā́m? *who, what pray?*

quí? quae? quōd? *which?*

ūtēr? utrā́? utrū́m? *which of the two?*

quā́lis? quā́lē? *of what kind?*

quantūs? quantā́? quantū́m? *how great?*

quōtūs? quōtā́? quōtū́m? *what? (in number or order)*

quōtusquisquē? quōtā́quaequē? quōtumquodquē? *how few?*

quōt? *how many?*

Interrogative Adverbs.

ubí? *where?*

undē? *whence?*

quō? *whither?*

quā́? *where? which way?*

quandō? *when?*

quōtíens? *how often?*

quōmōdō? } *how?*

quēmadmōdū́m? }

cūr?

quā́rē? } *why? what for?*

quā́m ob rḗm? }

ubínā́m? *where pray?*

undēnā́m? *whence pray?*

quōnā́m? *whither pray?*

quā́nā́m? *which way pray?*

quamdiū́? } *how long?*

quṓusquē? }

quā́m? (only before **Adjectives** and

Adverbs) *how? how much?*

quantōpērḗ? (only before **Verbs**)

how greatly? how much?

quidnī́? cūr nṓn? *why not?*

797. The **Interrogative Particles** are:

nḗ, nū́m, nonnḗ, utrū́m, ā́n.

Of these **nḗ** asks merely for information; it cannot stand by itself, but is joined to any emphatic word, usually the verb, which then comes first in the sentence; it is not translated, as:

omnisne pecuníā debíta solúta est? *is all the money owing paid?*

When a **negative answer** is expected, **nūm** is used, which stands at the beginning of the sentence and is likewise not translated, as:

num vespertillo avis est? *Is the bat a bird?*

With **nōn**, **nē** forms a special interrogative particle **nonnē**, *not*; the answer expected is *yes*, as:

nonne lectio hujus libri te delectat? *does not the perusal of this book delight you?*

798. Double or Alternative questions have the following forms:

utrum, <i>whether</i> ..	an, <i>or</i> ..
— nē, “ ..	an “ ..
....., “ ..	an “ ..

utrum domi fuisti an in schola?	} <i>have you been at home or in school?</i>
domine fuisti an in schola?	
domi fuisti an in schola?	

Sometimes the first part of an alternative question is omitted or implied, and **an** alone asks a question, as:

an nescis regibus longas esse manus? *or perhaps do you not know that kings have long arms?*

In *Direct* questions *or not* is **annon**; in *Indirect* **necnē**.

utrum domi fuisti **annon**? *have you been at home or not?*

QUESTION AND ANSWER.

799. In answering a question the emphatic word is generally repeated, as:

vidistine eum? *did you see him?* vidi, *yes, I did.*

solusne venisti? *did you come alone?* non solus, *no, I did not.*

The following **Responsives** are also used in answer to a direct question:

yes	no
itā, <i>so</i>	nōn itā, <i>no, not so</i>
itā est, <i>so it is</i>	mīnīmē, <i>by no means</i>
itā vērō est, <i>so it is indeed</i>	mīnīmē vērō, <i>by no means indeed</i>
sānē, <i>of course</i>	nihil mīnūs, <i>nothing less so</i>
sānē quidēm, <i>yes, indeed</i>	neutiquām, <i>not at all.</i>
ētiam, <i>even so</i>	
vērō, <i>truly, in truth</i>	

800. *immō*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of a previous statement, as:

causa igitur non bona est? Im-	<i>the cause, then, is a bad one?</i>
mo optima	<i>Nay, it is an excellent one</i>
num ille tibi familiāris est? Im-	<i>is he a friend of yours? On the</i>
mo alienissimus .	<i>contrary, a perfect stranger.</i>

[265. 266.]

Indirect Questions.

801. The **Subjunctive** is used in such questions as are dependent upon some word in the former part of the sentence (**Indirect Questions**).

The words: *ubi fuisti?* *where have you been?* are a **Direct Question**, with the verb in the **Indicative**; in the sentence:
dic mihi ubi fuēris, tell me where you have been,
the same words are an **Indirect Question**, and the dependent verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

qualis sit animus ipse animus	<i>the mind itself knows not what</i>
nescit	<i>the mind is</i>
quis ego sim me rogitas?	<i>do you ask me who I am?</i>

802. **Indirect Questions** have the same particles as the direct, *nūm* and *nē*, corresponding to *whether* in English; *sī*, *if*, is used for *whether* after *tentārē*, *expēriri*, to *try*, and *expectārē*, to *expect*.

Epaminondas quaesivit salvasne	<i>Epaminondas asked whether</i>
esset clipeus	<i>his shield was safe</i>
paludem si nostri transirent	<i>the enemy were waiting (to see)</i>
hostes expectabant	<i>whether our men would cross</i>
	<i>the swamp.</i>

803. INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

quaero utrum verum an falsum sit	}	<i>I ask whether it is true or false</i>
quaero verumne an falsum sit		
quaero verum an falsum sit		
quaero verum falsumne sit		

When the interrogative particle is omitted in the first member, *nē* may stand in the second, but only in **Indirect Questions**.

or not in **Indirect Questions** is *necnē*, as: *dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, the question is whether there are gods or not.*

[267. 268.]

The Imperative.

804. The Imperative is used to express a *command, wish, advice* or *exhortation*.

The **Present Imperative** denotes that an action is to be performed *at once*, or to be continued if actually being performed, as:

al quid in te peccāvi, ignosce	<i>if I have sinned against you, forgive me</i>
justitiam cole et pietatem	<i>cultivate justice and piety.</i>

The **Future Imperative** is used where there is a direct reference to *future time*; it corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall* or to the Imperative *let*, and is properly used in general directions, laws, statutes and wills, as:

regio imperio duo sunt, consules appellantor	<i>there shall be two officers with royal power; they shall be called consuls.</i>
--	--

805. The regular negative of the Imperative is *nē*, which is, however, in classical Latin only found with the **Future Imperative**, as:

hominem mortuum, inquit lex, in urbe nē sepelito	<i>thou shalt not bury a dead man in the city, says the law.</i>
---	--

In prohibitions instead of the **Negative Imperative** the following forms of the *Subjunctive* with *nē* are usually employed:

the second person of the **Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

hoc nē feceris, *leave that undone;*

the third person of the **Present Subjunctive**:

puer telum ne habēat, *a boy is not to have a weapon.*

806. Instead of the *Simple Imperative* several **Imperative Phrases** are common:

cūrā ūt, <i>take care that</i>	}	each with the Subjunctive .
fāc ūt, <i>cause that</i>		
fāc, <i>do</i>		

cura ut quam primum venias, *come as soon as possible;*
valetudinem tuam fac ut cures, *take care of your health.*

cāvē nē, <i>beware lest</i>	}	each with the Subjunctive .
cāvē, <i>beware</i>		

nōlī, *be unwilling, with the Infinitive.*

cave festines, *do not be in a hurry; cave existimes, do not think;*
noli me tangere, *do not touch me; noli putare, do not suppose.*

[269, 270.]

The Infinitive.

807. The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**.

The **Infinitive** governs the case of its verb, and is modified by adverbs and not by adjectives, as:

legere librum, *the reading of a book*;

diligenter legere librum, *the careful reading of a book*.

808. The **Infinitive** may be used as the **Subject** of a verb.

As such it is chiefly found with *essē* and impersonal verbs:

nunquam est utile peccare *to do wrong is never useful*

intērest omnium recte facere *it is the interest of all to do right*.

When the verb *essē*, *to be* (or others of similar meaning, see **540**) with an **Adjective** or **Noun** is used as the **Subject** of the sentence, such **Adjective** or **Noun** is put in the **Accusative**; as: *senem ante tempus fieri miserum est*, *it is miserable to grow old before the time*.

809. The **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs.

Such are verbs denoting:

to be able, must, dare, posse, debere, audere

to begin, continue, cease, incipere, pergere, desinere

to be accustomed, learn, know how, assuescere, discere, scire

to wish, desire, resolve, velle, cupere, statuere.

vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria uti nescis, *how to win victory you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory you know not*.

When the verb *essē*, *to be* (or others of similar meaning, see **540**) with an **Adjective** or **Noun** is used as the **Object** of a verb, such **Adjective** or **Noun** is put in the **Nominative**, as: *beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest*, *no one can be happy without virtue*.

The **Infinitive** of the **Present** is often used for the tenses of the **Indicative** in lively narration, and takes the **Subject** in the **Nominative** (**Historical Infinitive**.)

pars cedere, alii insēqui, neque a part give way, others press on, they hold neither to standards nor ranks. [271. 272.]

Accusative with the Infinitive.

810. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used like the English Objective with the Infinitive in such sentences as: *hoc verum esse scimus, we know this to be true.*

In English we might also say: *We know that this is true;* but Latin permits *only* of the Infinitive Construction.

811. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** may be the **Subject** of the sentence. The *Predicate* is either a noun or an adjective with *est*, or an impersonal verb.

The most common phrases under this rule are:

pār est, <i>it is fair</i>	oportet, <i>there is need, ought</i>
justū est, <i>it is just</i>	apparet, <i>it is clear</i>
certū est, <i>it is certain</i>	constat, <i>it is agreed, evident</i>
credibile est, <i>it is credible</i>	conducit, expedit, <i>it is useful</i>
fās est, <i>it is right</i>	convēnit, <i>it is fitting</i>
nēfās est, <i>it is forbidden</i>	placet, <i>it pleases</i>
fāmā est, <i>the story goes</i>	displicet, <i>it displeases</i>
opiniō est, <i>there is a report</i>	necessē est, <i>it must needs</i>
spēs est, <i>there is hope</i>	opus est, <i>there is need</i>

me scribere oportet, I must write or I ought to write
certum est liberos amari, it is certain that children are loved.

812. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*:

Verba sentiendi:

sentire, *to perceive, notice*
 animadvertere, *to see*
 audire, *to hear*
 videre, *to see*
 accipere, *to hear*
 compertire, *to ascertain*
 cognoscere, *to know*
 intelligere, *to learn*
 cogitare, *to think*
 arbitrari, credere, *to believe*

Verba declarandi:

declarare, *to declare*
 dicere, *to say*
 negare, *to deny*
 affirmare, *to affirm*
 respondere, *to answer*
 scribere, *to write*
 fateri, *to confess*
 demonstrare, *to prove*
 narrare, *to tell*
 nuntiare, *to bring word*

aves videmus construere nidos, we see that birds build nests;
nemo negabit se esse mortalem, no one will deny that he is mortal.

813. Verbs of *Perceiving* take the **Acc.** with the **Pres. Participle** to represent the object as *actually seen, heard, etc.*, as: *Catōnem vidi in bibliothēca sedentem, I saw Cato sitting in the library.*

814. Verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring* take a dependent **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**. Such are:

vōlō, <i>I wish</i>	cūpīō, <i>I desire</i>	sīnō, <i>I permit</i>
nōlō, <i>I do not wish</i>	jūbēō, <i>I bid</i>	pātīōr, <i>I suffer</i>
mālō, <i>I like better</i>	vētō, <i>I forbid</i>	

discipulum me haberi volo, non *I wish to be taken for a learner,*
doctorem *not for a teacher*
Caesar pontem jubet rescindi *Caesar orders the bridge to be*
broken down.

These verbs may take the *simple* Infinitive when the subject remains the same. Instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive, ut with the Subjunctive is frequently used with this class of verbs (758); but never with nolo, and seldom with volo and malo; jubeo and veto regularly take the Accusative with the Infinitive.

815. Verbs of *Emotion*, as: gaudērē, *to rejoice*, grātiām āgērē, *to thank*, dōlērē, *to grieve* (see 783) may be considered as verbs of *saying* and *thinking* and, as such, take an **Accusative** with **Infinitive**, as: *salvum te advenisse gaudēo, I rejoice that you have arrived safe.*

816. To translate such clauses as are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and require in Latin the **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**,

take no notice of *that*;

translate the **English Nominative** following *that* by the **Latin Accusative**;

translate the **English Verb** by the **Latin Infinitive**.

817. A **Predicate Noun** or **Adjective** and the **Participles** of the **Compound Infinitives** must agree with the **Accusative-Subject**; but, of course, the **Supine** remains unaltered.

sentio borēam frigidum esse *I feel that the north-wind is cold*
medici causa morbi inventa cu- *physicians think that when the*
rationem esse inventam pu- *cause of disease is discovered,*
tant *the cure has been discovered.*

Tenses of the Infinitive.

818. After Verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*)

the **Present Infinitive** expresses *contemporaneous* action,
the **Perfect Infinitive** expresses *antecedent* action,
the **Future Infinitive** expresses *future* action.

Present Infinitive.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scribère | <i>I believe that he is writing</i> |
| II. credēbam eum scribère | <i>I believed that he was writing.</i> |

Perfect Infinitive.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scripsisse | <i>I believe that he has written</i> |
| II. credēbam eum scripsisse | <i>I believed that he had written.</i> |

Future Infinitive.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believe that he will write</i> |
| II. credēbam eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believed that he would write.</i> |

I. After a **Principal Tense** translate:

the **Infinitive** like the **Indicative** of the *same tense*.

II. After a **Historical Tense** translate:

the **Infinitive Present** like the **Indicative Imperfect**

the **Infinitive Perfect** “ **Indicative Pluperfect**

the **Infinitive Future** “ **Subjunctive Imperfect** (*should* and *would*).

819. The **Future Infinitive** is often expressed by *forē* or *fütürūm* *essē üt* — necessarily so when the verb has no **Supine**, as:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| credo fore ut pluāt | <i>I believe it will rain</i> |
| credēbam fore ut pluēret | <i>I believed it would rain.</i> |

820. The **Personal Pronouns**, which are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis, must be **always** expressed in the **Accusative** with **Infinitive**. For the Pronouns of the third person the Reflexive *sē* is used *in reference to the subject of the Principal Clause*, and the Demonstratives *ēūm*, *ēām*, *ēōs*, *ēās* when referring to another noun.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| nemo tam senex est qui se an- | <i>no one is so old but thinks he</i> |
| num non putet posse vivere | <i>can live another year</i> |
| Ennius deos esse censet, sed | <i>Ennius believes that there are</i> |
| eos non curare opinatur, quid | <i>gods, but he does not think</i> |
| agat humanum genus | <i>they care what mankind are</i> |
| | <i>doing.</i> |

Nominative with the Infinitive.

821. With **Passive Verbs** of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*, instead of the Infinitive with the Accusative a personal construction is more common by which the *Subject Accusative* becomes the *Subject Nominative* of the leading verb: **Nominative** with the **Infinitive**.

Accus. with Inf. tradunt Homērum caecum fuisse, *they say that Homer was blind*

Nomin. with Inf. Homērus caecus fuisse traditur, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

822. Especially to be noted is the construction of the **Nominative** with the **Infinitive** after:

jūbēō, *I order*

sīnō, *I permit*

vētō, *I forbid*

vidēōr, *I seem*

consules jubentur exercitum scribere *the consuls are ordered to levy an army*

omnibus videmur recte fecisse, quod amici causam defenderimus *it seems to all that we did right in defending the cause of our friend.* [277. 278.]

Direct Discourse.

823. A *Statement* which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer is called *oratio recta*, or **Direct Discourse**.

inquām, *quoth I*, is used in *direct* quotations, **ājō**, *I say*, in *indirect* quotations. *inquā*m always follows one or more of the words quoted. When a nominative is added to *inquit*, it commonly follows this verb: *uva, inquit vulpes, nondum matūra est, the grape is not yet ripe, says the fox* [279. 280.]

Indirect Discourse.

824. An **Indirect Quotation** expresses a thought indirectly, as *reported*, *recognized* or *contemplated* by some one: *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.

Socrātes dicere solēbat: "omnes in eo quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentes," *Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."*

Oratio obliqua.

Socrātes dicere solēbat, omnes in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes; *Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.*

825. In **Indirect Discourse** the *Verb* of the *Principal Clause* is in the **Infinitive** and its *Subject* in the **Accusative**; *Dependent Clauses* connected with it by *Relatives* and *Particles* take the **Subjunctive**.

Interrogative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive** according to **801**.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesāris pauca respondit: quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones venīret?

Ariovistus gave a brief answer to Caesar's demands: what did he mean? why did he come into his possessions?

Imperative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive**; the negative is, of course, **nē**.

mandāta remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, exercitus dimittēret

they sent back orders of which the substance was as follows: Caesar should return into Gaul and disband his armies.

826. A **Clause** depending upon a *Subjunctive* or *Infinitive* takes the **Subjunctive** if it is regarded as an integral part of that clause. This is called **Attraction of Mood**.

mos est Athēnis laudāri in concione eos, qui sint in proeliis interfecti

it is custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.

827. The **Subjunctive** is used in *subordinate clauses* to express the thought of *some other person* than the speaker or writer.

quos vicēris, amicos tibi esse cave credas

do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends.

828. All references to the **Subject** of the leading clause are regularly expressed by the Reflexive **sui** (**suius**); as: *animus sentit se sua vi movēri, the mind feels that it moves by its own force.*

Participles.

829. There are **two Participles** in the *Active Voice*:
the **Present Participle** denotes *continuance*, as: scribens, *writing*;
the **Future Participle** is used to express *what is likely or about to happen*, as: scriptūrus, *about to write*.

830. There are **two Participles** in the *Passive Voice*:

the **Perfect Participle** denotes *completion*, as: scriptūs, *written*;
the **Gerundive** (so-called **Future Participle**) denotes *necessity or propriety*, as: scribendūs, *to be written*.

831. Deponent Verbs have **four Participles**:

the **Present Participle**, as: hortans, *exhorting*;
the **Perfect Participle**, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*;
the **Fut. Part. Act.**, as: hortātūrus, *being about to exhort*;
the **Fut. Part. Pass.**, as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

832. The Participles are used **attributively**, or in the manner of ordinary Adjectives, as:

arbor florens, *a blossoming tree* scripta epistūla, *a written letter*
puer dormiens, *a sleeping boy* urbs obsessa, *a besieged town*.

833. The Participles are used with the utmost freedom **appositively**, and may have the value

of a **Relative**, as: divitiæ semper duratūrae, *riches which will last forever*;

of **while, when, after**, as: Plato scribens mortūus est, *Plato died while writing*;

of **if**, as: mendāci homīni ne verum quidem dicenti credimus, *we do not believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*;

of **since, because**, as: cāntus olorinus recte fabulosus habetur nunquam auditus, *the swan's song is justly regarded as fabulous, because it has never been heard*;

of **though, although**, as: oculus se non videns alia cernit, *the eye, though not seeing itself, sees other things*;

of **to, in order to** (expressing a purpose), as: Scipio in Africam trajecit Carthaginem deletūrus, *Scipio crossed over into Africa to destroy Carthage*.

834. The Participle with a negative, as *nōn, nīhīl* is often best rendered

by *without* and a *Participial Noun*, as: *multi homīnes vitupērant libros non intellectos, many men find fault with books without understanding them.*

835. Verbs of *Perceiving* take the *Accusative* with the *Present Participle*, when the object is to be represented as *actually* seen, heard, etc.; also: *fācērē, indūcērē, to represent, introduce* (see **813**), as:

vidi puēros ludentes

I saw the boys playing

Xenōphon facit Socrātem disputantem

Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.

[195. 196. 283-286.]

Ablative Absolute.

836. A Noun or Pronoun with a *Participle* is used in the **Ablative Case absolutely** to express some accompanying circumstance or condition of the action.

The **Ablative Absolute** may be translated by the English *Nominative Absolute* which is a close equivalent; but, as a rule, the same change of form is required as in translating Participles in general (see **833**). Examples are:

Numa Pompilio regnante. Numa Pompilius reigning. When Numa Pompilius was reigning. In the reign of Numa Pompilius.

Tito imperante. In the reign of the emperor Titus.

Caesāre interfecto. Caesar being, having been murdered. When Caesar had been murdered. After the murder of Caesar.

Another **Ablative** should not be placed in apposition with the **ablative absolute**. Thus we may say: *puēro mortūo, the boy having died*; but not: *Gaio puēro mortūo, the boy Gaius having died*; this should be expressed by: *cum Gaius puer mortuus esset*. The **ablative absolute** with the **Future Participle** is also avoided by the classic authors.

An **Adjective**, or another **Noun** may take the place of the **Participle**, as:

Xerxe rege. Xerxes being king.

natūra duce. Nature being the leader. Under the guidance of nature.

nolentibus nobis. While we are unwilling. Against our will.

In spite of us.

patre invito. While father is, was unwilling. Against father's will.

837. The want of a Perfect **Active** Participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the Ablative Absolute with a Perfect **Passive** Participle, thus:

Caesar, urbe capta, rediit { *The city being taken, Caesar returned.*
Having taken the city, Caesar returned.
 [197. 198. 287. 288.]

Gerund.

838. As the Infinitive is used as a *Verbal Noun* in the Nominative and Accusative Cases, so the **Gerund**, corresponding to the English participial noun in *ing*, is used in the remaining cases, viz.:

Nom.	scribere est utile	<i>writing is useful</i>
Gen.	ars scribendi	<i>the art of writing</i>
Dat.	scribendo adfui	<i>I was present at the writing</i>
Acc.	scribere disco	<i>I learn to write</i>
	ad scribendum utilis	<i>useful for writing</i>
Abl.	scribendo discimus	<i>we learn by writing.</i>

839. The **Gerund** governs the same case as the verb:

ars scribendi epistolam	<i>the art of writing a letter</i>
cupidus te audiendi	<i>desirous of hearing you</i>
injurias ferendo	<i>by bearing wrongs</i>
ad beate vivendum	<i>for living happily</i>
parendo legibus	<i>by obeying the laws.</i>

Gerundive.

840. The **Gerundive**, in its adjective use, denotes *necessity* or *propriety*.

Its most frequent use is with *esse* in the **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** (see **314**). The neuter of the Gerundive with *est*, *erät*, etc., is used impersonally if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendum est*, *we or you must live*.

But the person *by whom* may also be added in the **Dative**, thus:

mihi scribendum est, *I must or should write*
tibi scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*
ei scribendum est, *he must or should write*
nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write*
vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write*
eis scribendum est, *they must or should write.*

841. The **Gerundive** is used as an **Objective Predicate** to denote *Purpose* after verbs signifying *to give, take, send, leave*, as:

curāre, <i>to take care</i>	accipere, <i>to receive</i>
dāre, <i>to give</i>	permittere, <i>to permit</i>
relinquere, <i>to leave</i>	locare, <i>to let, lease</i>
mittere, <i>to send</i>	conducere, <i>to contract for</i>
diviti homini id aurum servandum dedit	<i>he gave that gold to a rich man to keep.</i>

842. The **Gerundive** of verbs governing the accusative is frequently used instead of the Gerund in the following manner:

The **Accusative** is put in the same Case as the Gerund;

The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive;

The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in *Gender, Number and Case*; thus:

Gerund.	Gerundive.
Gen. scribendi epistulam	scribendae epistolae
Dat. scribendo epistulam	scribendae epistolae
Acc. ad scribendum epistulam	ad scribendam epistulam
Abl. scribendo epistulam	scribenda epistula

843. The **Genitive** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives, as:

ars vivendi, <i>the art of living</i>	equitandi peritus, <i>skillful in riding</i>
consilium urbis delendae, <i>a plan for destroying the city</i>	civitatis regendae peritus, <i>skillful in governing the state.</i>

Very common are *causā* and *gratiā*, *on account of, for the sake of, for the purpose of* with the Genitive of Gerund and Gerundive to point out *design or purpose*, as:

memoriae exercendae gratia, for the sake of exercising the memory.

844. The **Dative** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with adjectives of fitness and their opposites:

utilis, -ā, <i>useful, good</i>	aptus, -ā, -ūm, <i>adapted, suited</i>
inutilis, -ā, <i>useless, unfit</i>	idoneus, -ā, -ūm, <i>fit, suitable</i>

to denote the *object for which*; but the more common construction of these adjectives is that of the Accusative with *ad*, *to*, thus:

aqua utilis bibendo, *water good for drinking*,
charta inutilis ad scribendum, *paper unfit to write upon*.

845. The **Accusative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is most frequently used after *ad*, *to*, denoting *purpose*, as:

ad colendos agros, *for cultivating the fields*;
me vocas ad scribendum, *you summon me to write*;
propensus ad discendum, *inclined to learn*.

846. The **Ablative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is used as Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, and most frequently after the preposition *in*, *in*, as:

mens discendo alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning*
moderatio in jocando, *restraint in joking*.

[199. 200. 252-252.]

Supine.

847. The **Supines** are verbal nouns of the Fourth Declension, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm*, *āmātū*, *to love*.

The **Former Supine** (in *ūm*) is used after verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose* of the motion; it has an *active meaning*, as:

venio te rogātum *I come to ask you*.

With the passive infinitive *Irī* (lit. *to be gone*) the Supine in *ūm* forms the **Future Infinitive Passive**, *āmātūm Irī*, *to be about to be loved* (315).

The **Latter Supine** (in *ū*) has a *passive meaning*; it is used only with a few Adjectives denoting *ease* or *difficulty*, *pleasure* or *displeasure*, *right* or *wrong*; with the nouns *fās*, *right*, *nēfās*, *wrong*, sometimes with *ōpūs*, *need*, as:

quid est tam jucundum auditū? *what is so agreeable in hearing?*

Equivalents of the Supine.

848. The *Former Supine*, as an expression of *purpose*, is not very common, its place being supplied in various ways. Thus the sentence:

The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to sue for peace,
may be rendered:

Supine. Carthaginienses legātos misērunt **pacem petītum**.

Gerundive
with **ad**, { C. legātos misērunt **ad pacem petendam**.
causā { C. legātos misērunt **pacis petendae causa**.

Fut. Part. C. legātos misērunt **pacem petītūros**.

ūt w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **ut pacem petērent**.

quī w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **qui pacem petērent**.

The use of the *Letter Supine* is confined to a few verbs, as: dictū, *to tell*; factū, *to do*; auditū, *to hear*; visū, *to see*. With facilis, difficilis, jucundus, the construction of *ad* with the gerund is more common, as: res est facilis ad cognoscendum (cognitū), *the thing is easy to know*. [293. 294.]

Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

849. The following Particles are called **Copulative Conjunctions**: **et**, **-quē**, **atquē** (**ac**), **and**

nēquē, **and not**

etiam, **quōquē**, **also**

et is simply *and*, the most common and general copulative, and connects independent words and clauses without any additional meaning; **-quē**, affixed to the word it annexes, combines things that belong closely to one another; **atquē** adds a more important to a less important member. The following may serve as an example to illustrate the various usages:

dies et noctes means *days and nights*, simply;

dies noctesque “ *days and nights*, as a whole;

dies atque noctes “ *days and (also) nights*.

furem fur cognoscit, et lupus *thief knows thief, and wolf*
lupum *knows wolf*

dum vires annique sinunt, tole- *work while your strength and*
rāte labōrem *years permit you*

intra moenia atque in sinu urbis *within the walls and even in*
sunt hostes *the heart of the city are the*
enemies.

ac does not stand before a vowel or **h**; **atque** either before vowels or consonants. They generally mean *as, than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness, as: **aequē ac**, *as much as, equally as*; **secūs ac**, *altēr atque*, *otherwise than*.

etiā (lit. *and farther*) *even, yet, still*, adds a new circumstance, and generally precedes the words to which it belongs; **quodque**, *so also*, which refers only to a single word and follows that word, implies a sameness in the whole, as:

etiā mendicus mendico invidet *even the beggar envies the beggar*
otia corpus alunt, animus quo- *rest strengthens the body, the*
que pascitur illis *mind, too, is thus supported.*

350. Several Subjects or Objects, standing in the same relations,

either take **et** throughout: **polysyndeton**, i. e. *joined in various ways*;
 or omit it throughout: **asyndeton**, i. e. *unconnected*;
 or take **que** only after the last member, thus:

summa fide et constantia et iustitia } *with the greatest faith, con-*
summa fide, constantia, iustitia } *stancy and justice.*
summa fide, constantia, iustitiaque }

et is used after **multi** followed by another adjective, where in English *and* is usually omitted; as: **multae et magnae arbores**, *many large trees*.

351. In the second member of a sentence *and not* is expressed by **neque**, as: **dicunt, neque dubitant**, *they say and do not doubt*. Mark the following **Idiomatic Expressions**:

<i>and no one</i>	neque quisquam	<i>nor any one</i>
<i>and no</i>	neque ullus	<i>nor any</i>
<i>and nothing</i>	neque quidquam	<i>nor any thing</i>
<i>and never</i>	neque unquam	<i>nor ever</i>

352. The following are Disjunctive Conjunctions:

aut, vēl, -vē, sive (seu), or.

aut, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution, as:
vinceris aut vincis, *you are conquered or conquering*.

vēl (lit. *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **etiā**, *even*, **pōtius**, *rather*, as:

hic populus indomitus vel potius *this untamable or rather savage*
immanis *people.*

-vĕ, which is always affixed to another word, is only a weaker form of vĕl, as: plus minusvĕ, *more or less*.

sivĕ (seu), *if you choose*, indicates merely an alternative of words, as:

discessus sivĕ potius turpissĭma *the decampment, or rather the*
fuga *most shameful flight.*

[295, 296.]

253. The following are **Adversative Conjunctions**:

autĕm, **sĕd**, **vĕrŭm**, **vĕrŏ**, **ĕt**, **but**

atquĭ, *but for all that*

tāmen, *nevertheless*

cĕtĕrŭm, *for the rest*.

The weakest of them all in adversative power is **autĕm** which is only used to connect sentences, and commonly follows the first word.
spiritus promptus, caro autem *the spirit is willing, but the*
infirmā *flesh is weak.*

sĕd has two meanings; after affirmative sentences it is equivalent to *but (yet)*; after negative sentences to *but (on the contrary)*.

homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit *man proposeth, but God dis-*
poseth

non opus est verbis, sed fustibus *there is no need of words, but*
of knocks.

vĕrŭm, lit: *it is true*, always takes the first place in the sentence; **vĕrŏ**, lit: *in truth*, is generally put in the second place:

verum praeterita omittāmus *but let us lay aside past things*

illud vero plane ferendum non est *but this, indeed, is not at all to*
be suffered.

ĕt is stronger than **sĕd**; and **atquĭ**, *but for all that*, is even stronger again:

popŭlus me sĭbĭlat, at mihi *the mob may hiss me, but I*
plaudo *congratulate myself*

o rem difficĭlem, inquis, et in- *a hard case, you say, and an*
explicabilem. Atquĭ expli- *inexplicable one. And never-*
canda est *theless it ought to be explained.*

tāmen, *yet, nevertheless*, is the usual correlative of a concessive conjunction; generally it comes first unless a particular word is to be made emphatic: natŭram expellas furca, tamen usque recurret, *you may drive out nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

854. The Causal Conjunctions are:

nām, ěnīm, namquē, ětēnīm, for

nām is always put at the beginning, **ěnīm** always follows the first word of the sentence; **namquē** and **ětēnīm** are commonly put in the first place.

855. The Illative Conjunctions are:

Itāquē, Igītūr, ergō, therefore

Idēō, Idcirco, on that account

prōindē, accordingly

Itāquē is put at the beginning of the sentence and is used of *facts*; **Igītūr** follows one or more words in its clause, and is used of *opinions*; **ergō, therefore**, denotes necessary consequence and is more emphatic than **Igītūr**; it is put at the beginning of the sentence or after an emphatic word; **prōindē** is only employed in exhortations:

quot homīnes, tot sententiæ; *many men, many minds; therefore*
falli igītūr possumus *fore we may be mistaken*

negat haec filiā me suam esse; *she says that I am not her*
non ergo haec mater mea est *daughter, therefore she is not*
my mother

proinde fac magno animo sis! *accordingly, be of good cheer!*

856. nēquē is used for **nōn** with the conjunctions: **ěnīm, vērō, tāmēn, Igītūr**, thus:

neque enim, *for not*

neque vero, *but not*

neque tamen, *yet not*

neque igītūr, *therefore not.*

[297. 298.]

Corresponsive Conjunctions.

857. Some Conjunctions frequently have a **Correlativo** in the preceding clause, to which they correspond.

Copulative.

ět...ět, *both...and*

cūm...tūm, *both...and especially*

mōdō...mōdō } *now...now*

nunc...nunc }

tūm...tūm, *then...then*

tām...quām, *both...and*

nēquē...nēquē } *neither...nor*
nēc...nēc }

nēquē...-quē, *on the one hand*
not...and on the other

ět...nēquē, *on the one hand..*
and on the other hand not

nōn solum...sed etiam }
 nōn modō...sed etiam } *not only...but also*
 nōn tantum...sed etiam }

Disjunctive.		Comparative.	
aut...aut	} <i>either...or</i>	ut...ita	} <i>as...so</i>
vel...vel		quemadmodum...ita	
sive...sive, <i>whether...or</i>			

[299. 300.]

POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY.

858. *Prosody* means *Accent*, and since Latin accent is regulated by quantity, *Prosody*, in the classic sense, has reference to the length of syllables, measured by the length of time taken up in pronouncing them. By modern Grammarians, *Prosody* is used in a wider sense to include both *quantity* and *versification*.

Quantity.

859. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long (—) or short, (◡) and each syllable is considered as either long or short, according as it contains either a long or a short vowel — (*Longs and Shorts by Nature*). A long syllable is generally reckoned in length equal to two short ones.

860. All diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: *aurum*, *cōgo* (*cō-ago*), *mālo* (*magis volo*), *nīl* (*nihil*), *jūnior* (*juvenior*).

Likewise *e* and *i* when corresponding to Greek *ei*:

Aenēas, *Alexandrēa*, *Thālīa*, *Arīon*.

861. A vowel before another vowel is *short*, no account being taken of *h*, as: *pīus*, *dēus*, *trāho*. Even a vowel naturally long or a diphthong becomes short before another vowel, as: *dēorsum*, *praeopto*.

EXCEPTIONS:

e in *ei* of the *Fifth Declension* is *long* when a vowel precedes, as: *diēi*, but *fidēi*.

i in the *Genitive form fūs* is long; it is, however, sometimes made short in verse, but never in *alius* (for *aliūs*).

In *fīō*, *i* is long, except when followed by *er*, as: *fīō*, *fīebam*; but *fīeri*.

In the *Vocative* of proper names in *-ājūs*, *-ājūs*, *a* and *e* are long: *Gāi*, *Pompēi*.

In words from the Greek, vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original, as: *āer*, *musēum*, *ēos*, *Agēsilaus*, *Amphion*.

862. A syllable with a short vowel is considered as *long* when the short vowel is followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant either in the same or in the following syllable, as: *ēst*, *ēssem*, *rēstare*, *dūx*. The consonants may be divided between two words, as *sūb sidērē*. A short syllable made long by this rule is said to be *long by Position*.

863. But if the syllable ends in a short vowel, and the next syllable in the same word begins with a mute (see 6.) followed by *r* or *l*, the syllable before the two consonants is *common* (anceps) — that is, it may be either *long* or *short* (υ) in verse, as in *tenēbrae*; in prose it is invariably short.

864. Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long; only compounds of *jugum*, *yoke*, retain the short vowel before *j*, as: *bljūgus*, *two-horse*.

865. Forms from the same stem, whether *Inflections*, *Derivatives*, or *Compounds* retain the *original quantity* of the radical syllable, even when the vowel is changed, as:

āmor, *āmicus*, *inīmicus*, *inīmicitia*
sāpio, *sāpor*, *sāpiens*, *insāpiens*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> from <i>pāciscor</i>			<i>fīdes</i>	} from <i>fīdo</i>
<i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>	"	<i>rēgo</i>	<i>fīdelis</i>	
<i>sēdes</i>	"	<i>sēdeo</i>	<i>perfidus</i>	
<i>vōx</i> , <i>vōcis</i>	"	<i>vōco</i>	<i>perfidia</i>	
<i>dux</i> , <i>dūcis</i>	"	<i>dūco</i>	but:	
<i>nōta</i>	}	" <i>nōtus</i>	<i>confīdo</i>	
<i>nōtio</i>			<i>diffīdo</i>	
<i>nōtare</i>			<i>fīdus</i>	
<i>ōdium</i>	"	<i>ōdi</i>	<i>infīdus</i>	}
			<i>fīducia</i>	

Middle Syllables.

866. *Perfects* and *Supines* of two syllables have the first syllable long even when that of the present is short, as: *vēnī*, *vīdī*, *vīcī*.

EXCEPTIONS: 7 *Perfects*: *bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*
stēti, *stīti*, *tūli*, *scīdi*.

10 *Supines*: *dātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*
cītum, *ītum*, *stātum*
lītum, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rūtum*.

867. Reduplicated Perfects shorten both syllables, but the second may be made long by position, as: tango, tētīgi — fallo, fēfelli. The only exception is caedo, cēcīdi in distinction from cado, cēcīdi.

868. Perfects in *ūi* have their stem vowel short, as:

vētō-vētūi; plācēō-plācūi; cōlō-cōlūi.

EXCEPTIONS: dēbēō, = dēhībēō; fīrēō from fīos; pārēō, and pōno, but pōsui.

869. Supines in *itūm* have *i* long when from Perfects in *ivi* (*ii*), as: cupitūm, petītūm, audītūm. recensēō has recensitūm from recensūi in the Perfect.

870. Verbs in *īō* (*īōr*) of the Third Conjugation have a short stem vowel: fācīō, cūpīō, jācīō, pātīōr, &c. &c.

871. The verb endings *imus*, *itis* have only in the Present of the Fourth Conjugation a *long* penult; also in *simus*, *sītis*; *possimus*, *possītis*; *velimus*, *velītis*; *nolimus*, *nolītis*; *malimus*, *malītis*; *faximus*, *faxītis*.

872. In *rīmūs* and *rītīs* of the Future Perfect, and Perfect Subjunctive, *i* of the penult is *common*, i. e., it may be long in verse. *āmāvērīmūs*, *āmāvērītīs*.

873. The terminations *ābūs*, *ōbūs*, *ēbūs* in plural cases, have a *long* penult, *ībūs* and *ūbūs* a short one.

filiābus, *duōbus*, *diēbus* — *duclibus*, *actibus*.

874. Derivative Adjectives in *ālis*, *āris*, *ānūs*, *ivūs*, *ōsūs* have the penult *long*: *naturālis*, *vulgāris*, *humānus*, *nativūs*, *odiōsus*;

those in *icūs* and *idūs* have it *short*: *bellicūs*, *cupidūs*.

EXCEPTIONS: *amicus*, *anticus*, *apricus*, *posticus*, *pudicus*.

875. Verbal Adjectives in *ilis* have the penult *short*, as *docilis*, *facilis*. But Derivatives from nouns have it *long*, as *hostilis*, *puerilis*.

EXCEPTIONS: *humilis* from *humus*; *parilis* from *pār*.

876. Adjectives in *inūs* have the penult *long*, as:

divinūs, *genuinūs*, *peregrinūs*, *vicinūs*.

But if such Adjectives denote *time* or *material*, the penult is *short*, as: *adamantinūs*, *crastinūs*, *dintinūs*.

EXCEPTIONS: *matutinūs*, *vespertinūs*, *repentinūs*.

Final Syllables.

377. In words of more than one syllable, final **a**, **e**, and **y** are *short*, **i**, **o**, and **u** are *long*:

1. **a** is *short*: terrā, tectā, capitā.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of the *First Declension*: terrā.

Vocative of *Greek words* in ās: Aeneā.

Imperative of *First Conjugation*: amā.

Most uninflected words as trīgintā, antēā, contrā; but: Itā, quā.

2. **e** is *short*: retē, ipsē, antē.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of *Fifth Declension*, diē.

Imperative of *Second Conjugation*, mōnē.

Most Adverbs from *Adjectives* of the *Second Declension*, as: rectē, doctē. But notice: bēnē, mālē, saepē, temerē, supernē, infernē. impunē and necessē are from old forms impunīs and necessīs.

Greek words in **e** (η): Niobē, Tempē.

3. **i** is *long*: dominī, vigintī, amarī.

EXCEPTIONS:

nisī, quasī.

Dative and **Vocative** of *Greek words*, Daphnidī, Alexī.

i is *common* in: mihī, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi.

Notice the **Compounds**: of ubī: ubīnam, ubīvis, ubīque — of ibī: alībi, ibīdem — of ut, utī: utīnam, utīque.

4. **o** is *long*: bonō, amātō.

EXCEPTIONS:

Nouns of the *Third Declension* and verbal forms, as: leō, vētō.

ēgō, dūō, mōdō, dummōdō, tantummōdō, quandō, quandōquidēm.

5. **u** is *always long*: cornū, fructū, audītū.

378. All *Final Syllables* that end in a single consonant other than **s** are *short*: ād, amāt, consūl, capūt.

EXCEPTIONS:

Compounds of pār, dispār, impār.—The *Adverbs* illic, illuc, istuc.

Many Greek nouns, as: aēr, aethēr, cratēr; also alēc, liēn.

879. Final *as, es, os* are long; final *is, us, ys* are short.

1. *as* is long: *Messiās, silvās, vocās.*

EXCEPTIONS:

Greek nouns in *ās, ādīs, as Arcās, Arcādīs.*

Greek accusative plur.: *herōās, Arcādās.*

anās, anātis.

2. *es* is long: *legēs, diēs, docēs.*

EXCEPTIONS:

Nom. Sing. Third Declension, when the Genitive has *ētīs, Itīs, Idīs* with short penult, as *milēs, segēs, obsēs*; but *abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.*

Compounds of *ēs, be; as: ādēs*

penēs (Preposition).

Greek words in *ēs (ες) Thracēs, Arcādēs.*

3. *os* is long: *deōs, nepōs.*

EXCEPTIONS: *compōs, impōs* — Greek words in *ōs: Delōs.*

4. *is* is short: *canīs, legīs.*

EXCEPTIONS:

Plural Cases of all Declensions: *mensīs, servīs, nobīs, omnīs, partīs (Accus. pl.).*

The **Nominative** of such substantives as have in the Genitive *ītīs, inīs, entīs, as Salāmīs, Samnīs, Simōīs, -entīs.*

Second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Active, Fourth Conjugation *audīs*; likewise *velīs, nolīs, malīs, possīs* and the Compounds of *sīs. pulvīs* and *sanguīs.*

5. *us* is short: *gladiūs, vulnūs, fructūs, amāmūs.*

EXCEPTIONS:

Gen. Sing. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Fourth Declension, *fructūs.*

Nominative of the **Third Declension** when the Genitive has a long *u: virtūs, palūs, tellūs.*

Greek words with *u* long (*ov*): *tripūs.*

6. *ys* (in words of Greek origin) is short: *chlamys, Halys.*

Monosyllables.

880. All words of *one syllable* that end in a vowel, are long: *ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, prō, tū.*

The attached particles *-quē, -vē, -nē, -cē, -tē, -ptē* are short. On the Prefix *rē* see below **885.**

881. **Substantives and Adjectives** of one syllable are *long*, when they end in a consonant even if the stem-syllable be short, as: *ŏs*, *mŏs*, *vēr*, *sŏl*, *fŭl*, *plŭs*; *pēs* (*pēdis*), *bŏs* (*bŏvis*), *pār* (*pāris*).

EXCEPTIONS: *vīr*, *lāc*, *ŏs* (*ossis*), *mēl*
cēr, *vās* (*vādis*), *fēl*.

hīc, *this one*, is sometimes short.

882. All other words of one syllable that end in a consonant, are short: *pēr*, *tēr*, *cīs*, *īn*, *fāc*.

EXCEPTIONS: *ēn*, *nōn*, *quīn* — *crās*, *cūr*, *sīn*
the Adverbs, *hīc*, *hūc*, *hāc*, *sīc*.

dīc and *dūc* have the quantity of their verbs; *ēs*, *be*, is short.

Quantity in Compounds.

883. Compounds generally retain the quantity of their component parts, as: *dūco*, *dēdūco*, *condūco*; *ŏō*, *ābŏō*, *ŏbŏō*, *īnŏō*; *dīco*, *contrādīcō*.

884. *pro* is *short* in Greek words, as *prŏphēta*; but *long* in Latin (**880**) though there are many exceptions, especially before *f*; as:

<i>prŏcellā</i>	<i>prŏfestŭs</i>	<i>prŏfundŏ</i>
<i>prŏfānŭs</i>	<i>prŏfītēŏr</i>	<i>prŏnēpŏs</i>
<i>prŏfārī</i>	<i>prŏficiēcŏr</i>	<i>prŏpāgŏ</i>
<i>prŏfectŏ</i>	<i>prŏfŭgŏ</i>	<i>prŏtervŭs</i> .

885. Of the inseparable Prefixes, *dī*, *sē*, and *vē* are *long*, *rē* is *short*: *dīdūcŏ*, *sēdūcŏ*, *rēdūcŏ*.

EXCEPTIONS: *dīrīmŏ*, *dīsertŭs*
rēligŏ, *rēfert*, *rēliquiae*.

886. In a few words, the quantity of the second part is changed. Such are: *pejērŏ*, from *jūrŏ*; *cognītŭs* from *nŏtŭs*.

A remarkable change of quantity appears in the Compounds of *-dīcŭs*, from *dīcŏ*: *fatidīcŭs*, *veridīcŭs*, *maledīcŭs*, and in: *innŭba*, from *nŭbo*.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

887. Elision is the *omission* or rather *partial suppression* of a final vowel or a final *m* when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, as:

<i>deserto in litore</i>	<i>to be read</i>	<i>desert' in litore</i>
<i>certae occumbere morti</i>	"	<i>cert' occumbere morti</i>
<i>supremum audire laborem</i>	"	<i>suprem' audire laborem.</i>

888. The practice of elision is followed in poetry to avoid the *hiatus* (*gaping*), or the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables. But *before* and *after Interjections* the hiatus is allowed, as:

O ēt | dē Lātī|ā, ō | ēt dē | gēntē Sā|binā.

889. Elided syllables should be sounded but lightly. After a vowel or *m* final, the word *est* drops its *e* and is joined with the preceding syllable; as:

multa est, *read* multa'st; multum est, *read* multum'st.

890. *Synaerēsis*, or the *contraction* of two vowels which are commonly pronounced separately, is regular in the following words: *dēinde*, *prōinde*, *dēest*, *dēesse*, *āntehāc* (= *ānthāc*) and in all forms of the verb *anteire* (= *antīre*).

891. In like manner *i* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sounds of *y* and *w*, as: *flūvīōrūm* *say* flūvyōrūm; *ābiētē* = *ābyētē*; *genūa* = *genwa*.

892. One syllable is sometimes resolved into *two* by *Diaerēsis*, as: *sī lū ae* = *sil vae*; *in sū ē tūs* = *in suē tūs*.

893. *Syncōpe*, a *cutting short* is the taking away of one or more letters from the middle of a word, as: *saeculum* *for* *saecūlum*; *prendere* *for* *prehendere*.

894. *Apocōpe*, a *cutting off*, is the cutting off a letter or letters from the end of a word, as: *viden*, *for* *videsne*; *ain* *for* *aisne*.

895. *Systōle* is the *shortening* of a long syllable, as: *dedē runt* *for* *dedērun*t; *Dia*stōle the *lengthening* of a short syllable, as *Prīamīdes* *for* *Prīamīdes*.

896. *Epenthēsis* is the *insertion* of a letter or a syllable in the middle of a word, as in the old forms *sīēt*, *possīēt* *for* *sīt*, *possīt*.

897. *Tmēsis* is the *separation* of compound words into their parts, as:

quam rem cunque	<i>for</i> ,	quamcunque rem
per mihi gratum	"	mihi pergratum
super unus eram	"	unus superēram.

ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION.

898. A verse, or line of poetry consists of a series of measures which are called Feet.

The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse are the following:

Of two syllables.

υ υ	Pyrrhichius, <i>Pyrrhic</i>	pătēr
--	Spondēus, <i>Spondee</i>	vīrtūs
υ -	Iambus, <i>Iambus</i>	ămăn
- υ	{ Trochaeus, <i>Trochee</i> }	mătēr
	{ Chorēus, <i>Choree</i> }	

Of three syllables.

υ υ υ	Tribrāchys, <i>Tribrach</i>	ădērīt
--	Molossus, <i>Molossus</i>	mōrtālēs
- υ υ	Dactylus, <i>Dactyl</i>	tēmpōră
υ υ -	Anapaestus, <i>Anapaest</i>	săpiēs
υ - υ	Amphibrāchys, <i>Amphibrach</i>	ădēsē
- υ -	{ Amphimācrus, <i>Amphimacer</i> }	fēcērāt
	{ Creticus, <i>Cretic</i> }	
υ --	Bacchius, <i>Bacchius</i>	ămōrī
-- υ	Antibacchius, <i>Antibacchius</i>	pēcătă

Of Feet of four syllables the following are recognized:

υ υ υ υ	Proceleusmaticus, <i>Proceleusmatic</i>	cělērītēr
-- --	Dispondēus, <i>Double Spondee</i>	intērrūpūt
- υ - υ	Ditrochaeus, <i>Double Trochee</i>	infidelīs
υ - υ -	Diambus, <i>Double Iambus</i>	rēnūtiāns
υ υ --	Ionīcus a minōre, <i>Lesser Ionic</i>	mētūētēs
-- υ υ	Ionīcus a majōre, <i>Greater Ionic</i>	sētētīă
- υ υ -	Choriambus, <i>Choriambus</i>	cūrrīcūlō
υ - - υ	Antispastus, <i>Antispast</i>	vērēcūndūs.

899. The Unit of measure is the short syllable (υ); this is called a mora (*time*). A long syllable (—) is regularly equal to two morae. Accordingly in some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long, or a long instead of two short.

900. Rhythm is the alternate elevation and depression of the voice at certain intervals of time. That part of the foot which is distinguished from the rest by a greater stress of voice is called **Arsis**, the other part **Thesis**. The stress of voice laid upon the arsis is called ictus (*beat*); it is marked thus ˘.

901. The natural arsis is invariably on the long syllable or syllables of a foot; hence the *Trochee* and *Dactyl* have the ictus on the first syllable, the *Iambus* and *Anapaest* on the last, and the *Cretic* on the first and last. Only those feet which consist of both long and short syllables can have Arsis and Thesis, or Rhythm, and are, therefore, called **Rhythmical Feet**. Those consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are only used as substitutes for rhythmical feet, and take the ictus of the foot for which they stand; hence, a Spondee when used for the Dactyl takes the ictus of the Dactyl, viz: on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the Anapaestic rhythm, viz: the ictus on the last syllable.

902. **Rhythmical Feet** are *simple* when they have only one arsis, and *compound* when they have more than one. If the arsis follows, the rhythm is called *ascending*, if it precedes, *descending*.

903. A **Verse** is *simple* when it has one dominant measure which determines the rhythm of the whole verse; and *compound*, when different rhythms are combined in the same verse. The latter are only found in lyric poetry.

904. A verse takes its name from the predominant measure as *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Dactylic*, *Anapaestic*, and from the number of feet that compose it, as, *Hexameter*, *Pentameter*, *Tetrameter*, *Trimeter*, *Dimeter*, *Monometer*.

905. In **Dactyls** and all compound rhythmical feet (see above **902**) a measure is a *single foot*; accordingly, a verse having five dactyls is called a *pentameter*; one having six dactyls, *hexameter*.

906. **Trochaic**, **Iambic**, and **Anapaestic** verses are measured *not by single feet, but by pairs* (*dipodia*, *dipody*). In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

907. A verse is termed **Acatalectic** (*not halting short*) when its last foot is complete; a verse lacking a syllable at the end is called **Catalectic**; it is catalectic in *syllabam*, or in *bisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the last foot.

908. The last syllable of a verse may be long or short indifferently, and is, therefore, called *syllaba anceps*, because the time wanting is made up by pause.

DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

914. The Dactylic Hexameter (Heroic Verse) or simply Hexameter consists regularly of six dactyls and is *catalectic* in bisyllabum. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet. Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place, and when it is, the verse is called *Spondaic*. Accordingly its formula is:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏⏏ | ⏏

915. Of the great number of possible *caesūrae* in the Hexameter the following are the most usual:

The principal *caesūra* is the Penthemimeral, or masculine *caesūra* of the third foot, as:

⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏
Arma virumque cano, † Trojae qui primus ab oris.

The next is the feminine *caesūra* of the third foot, also called *μετὰ τρίτον τροχαῖον*, as:

⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏
O passi graviora, † dabit deus his quoque finem.

Then comes the Hephthemimeral in the arsis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by the trithemimères after the second arsis, as:

⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏
Stat sonipes † ac frena ferox † spumantia mandit.

916. The last word of a Hexameter should be either a *disyllable*, or a *trisyllable*; monosyllables at the end denote emphasis, as:

⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏
Parturiunt montes † nascetur ridiculus mus.

917. In the first part of the verse variety in the use of dactyls and spondees has an agreeable effect. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls, a slow and heavy one by that of spondees. The following examples have been chosen with especial reference to this point:

⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏
Quadrupedante † putrem † sonitu † quatit angula campum.

⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ | ⏏
(Cyclōpes) Illi inter † sese † magna † vi brachia tollunt.

ELEGIAC PENTAMETER.

918. The *Elegiac Pentameter* consists of two parts separated by *Diaerësis*. Each part consists of two dactyls and the arsis of a third; the first part admits spondees, the second does not:

$\underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | - || \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}}$
 Tempora si fuerint nubila solus eris.

It derives its name from the number of dactyls. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$)

919. The *Elegiac Pentameter* is seldom, if ever, used except in the *Elegiac Distich*, which consists of the *Hexameter* followed by the *Pentameter*:

$\underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \varpi | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \varpi | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | - \underline{\text{—}}$
 Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos;
 $\underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | || \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}}$
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

920. No monosyllables can stand at the end of either part of the *Pentameter*, except when preceded by another one, as:

$\underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \varpi | - || \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | -$
 Magna tamen spes est in bonitate Dei.

921. Neither *syllāba anceps* nor *hiātus* is allowed at the *diaerësis*. Almost every *Pentameter* ends in a dissyllable, and elision is avoided.

IAMBIC TRIMETER.

922. The most common form of *Iambic verse* is the *Senarian*, or *Iambic Trimeter*; it is of frequent occurrence in lyric poetry, and is also the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. Since the final syllable must be *anceps*, the formula of the verse is as follows:

$\cup \underline{\text{—}} \cup - | \cup \underline{\text{—}} \cup - | \cup \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}}$

923. In the *Iambic Trimeter* a *Spondee* or its equivalent (*Anapaest* or *Dactyl* with *Iambic ictus* — $\cup \cup$) may be regularly substituted in the odd places (1st, 3d, 5th foot), also a *Tribrach* ($\cup \cup \cup$) anywhere except in the last place.

924. The principal *caesūra* of the *Iambic Trimeter* is either the *penthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the 3d foot, or the *hephthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

COMPOUND VERSES.

925. A verse is *compound* if different measures are combined in the same to produce a more artificial movement especially

characteristic of lyric poetry. If a dactylic rhythm passes into trochees, the movements are intermediate between those of prose and poetry. Hence the name **Logaoedic verse** (from *λόγος*, prose, and *αὐδή*, song). Sometimes an introductory foot of two syllables which is called **Basis** and commonly marked thus X, is put before the dactylic or logaoedic series. The **Verses** constructed upon the **Logaoedic** form (especially those used by Horace) are the following:

1. **Adonic** (a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
 Térruit úrbem.

2. **Aristophanic** (a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
 Lýdia dic per ómnes.

3. **Pherecratean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
 Vix duráre carinae.

4. **Glyconic** (basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup$
 Rómae principis úrbium.

5. **Lesser Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
 Intégér vitáe scelerisque púrus.

6. **Greater Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$
 Té Deús oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

7. **Lesser Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup$
 Máecenás atavis édite régibús.

8. **Greater Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup$
 Núllam Váre sacrá víte priús séveris árborem.

In the *Greater Sapphic* and both the *Asclepiadeans*, the dactyl with the catalectic trochee appears a simple Choriambus: $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup \underline{\quad}$; hence these metres have obtained the general name of **Choriambic**.

9. **Lesser Alcaic** (two dactyls; two trochees):

$\underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—}$

Virginibús puerisque cánto.

10. **Greater Alcaic** (anacrúsis; double basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\text{—} : \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \parallel \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \text{—}$

Justum ét tenácem própositi virúm.

One or more syllables placed before the proper beginning of the measure are called an anacrúsis; it is separated by a colon:

11. **Archilochian** (dactylic tetraméter; three trochees):

$\underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$

Sólviŕar ácris hiéms † gratá vice vérís ét Favóni.

METRES OF HORACE.

926. Verses are combined in two different ways. Either the same verse is repeated throughout; such are the *Heroic Hexameter* and the *Iambic Trimeter*. Or the same verse or different verses recurring in a certain order are combined in a *Stanza* or *Strophe*. A strophe of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four a *Tetrastich*.

927. Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires. The Odes include nineteen varieties of strophe, viz.:

1. **Alcaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Two Greater Alcaics $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{—} : \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \parallel \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \text{—} \\ \text{—} : \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \parallel \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \text{—} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 10

One Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis $\text{—} : \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$

One Lesser Alcaic $\underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—}$ 925. 9

Justum ét tenácem própositi virúm

Non civium árdor práva jubéntium

Non vultus instantis tyránni

Ménte quatit solidá neque Aúster.

2. **Sapphic Strophe** (minor), consisting of:

Three lesser Sapphics $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \\ \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \\ \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} \times \underline{\text{—}} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 5

One Adonic $\underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \underline{\text{—}} \text{—}$ 925. 1

Jám satis terris nivis átque dírae

Grándinis misit pater ét rubénte

Déxterá sacrás jaculátus árceſ

Térruit úrbem.

3. **Sapphic Strophe (major)**, consisting of:

One Aristophanic $\underline{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 2$

One Greater Sapphic $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 6$

Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

Lýdia dic per ómnes
Té deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

4. **Asclepiadean Strophe I. (minor)**, consisting of:

Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \right\} \quad 925. 7$

repeated in tetrastichs:

Máecenás, atavis édite régibús
O et práesidium ét dúlce decús meúm.

5. **Asclepiadean Strophe II.**, consisting of:

One Glyconic $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 4$

One Lesser Asclepiadean $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 7$

alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

Návis, quáe tibi créditúm
Débes Vérgiliúm, finibus Atticís
Réddas incolumém, precór,
Et servés animáe dímidíúm meáe.

6. **Asclepiadean Strophe III.**, consisting of:

Three Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \right\} \quad 925. 7$

One Glyconic $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 4$

Quís desíderió sít pudor áut modús
Tám carí capitís? — Praécipe lúgubrés
Cántus, Mélpomené, cúí liquidám patér
Vócem cúm cythará dedít.

7. **Asclepiadean Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Two Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \right\} \quad 925. 7$

One Pherecratean $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 3$

One Glyconic $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \quad 925. 4$

O fons Bándusiáe spléndidiór vitró
Dúlci dígne meró, nón sine flóribús
Crás donáberis háedo
Cúí frons túrgida córnibús.

13. **Archilochian Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Archilochian $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} || \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$ 925. 11
 Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Sólvitur ácris hiems gratá vice vérís ét Favóni
 Trahúntque siccas máchinae carínas.

Two pairs are combined to form a tetrastich.

14. **Iambic Trimeter alone** (see 322).

15. **Iambic Strophe**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$
 Iambic Dimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Beátus ille qui procul negótiis
 Ut prísca gens mortálium.

16. **Pythiambic Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$
 Iambic Dimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Nóx erat, ét caeló fulgébat lúna seréno
 Intér minora sídera.

17. **Pythiambic Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$
 Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Altera jám teritúr bellís civilibus áetas,
 Suís et ipsa Róma viribús ruit.

18. **Trochaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Trochaic Dimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$
 Iambic Trimeter $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$

Nón ebur neque aúreum
 Meá renidet ín domo lacúnar.

19. **Lesser Ionics** (see 323).

Two Dipodies { $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - ||$
 $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - ||$
 Two Tripodies { $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - ||$
 $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} - ||$

Miserárum est neque amóri
 Dare lúdum neque dúlci
 Mala víno lavere áut exanimári
 Metuéntes patruáe verbera linguae.

928. INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE.

The references are to the numbers in the preceding paragraph.

LIB. I.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Maecenas atavis: 4. | 20. Vile potabis: 2. |
| 2. Jam satis terris: 2. | 21. Dianam tenerae: 7. |
| 3. Sic te diva: 5. | 22. Integer vitae: 2. |
| 4. Solvitur acris hiems: 13 | 23. Vitas hinnuleo: 7. |
| 5. Quis multa: 7. | 24. Quis desiderio: 6. |
| 6. Scriberis Vario: 6. | 25. Parcius junctas: 2. |
| 7. Laudabunt alii: 9. | 26. Musis amicus: 1. |
| 8. Lydia dic: 3. | 27. Natis in usum: 1. |
| 9. Vides ut alta: 1. | 28. Te maris: 9. |
| 10. Mercuri facunde nepos: 2. | 29. Icci beatis: 1. |
| 11. Tu ne quaesieris: 8. | 30. O Venus: 2. |
| 12. Quem virum: 2. | 31. Quid dedicatum: 1. |
| 13. Cum tu Lydia: 5. | 32. Poscimur: 2. |
| 14. O navis: 7. | 33. Albi ne doleas: 6. |
| 15. Pastor cum traheret: 6. | 34. Parcus deorum: 1. |
| 16. O matre pulchra: 1. | 35. O diva: 1. |
| 17. Velox amoenum: 1. | 36. Et ture: 5. |
| 18. Nullam Vare: 8. | 37. Nunc est bibendum: 1. |
| 19. Mater saeva: 5. | 38. Persicos odi: 2. |

LIB. II.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Motum ex Metello: 1. | 11. Quid bellicosus: 1. |
| 2. Nullus argento: 2. | 12. Nolis longa: 6. |
| 3. Aequam memento: 1. | 13. Ille et nefasto: 1. |
| 4. Ne sit ancillae: 2. | 14. Eheu fugaces: 1. |
| 5. Nondum subacta: 1. | 15. Jam pauca: 1. |
| 6. Septimi Gades: 2. | 16. Otium divos: 2. |
| 7. O saepe mecum: 1. | 17. Cur me querelis: 1. |
| 8. Ulla si juris: 2. | 18. Non ebur: 18. |
| 9. Non semper imbres: 1. | 19. Bacchum in remotis: 1. |
| 10. Rectius vives: 2. | 20. Non usitata: 1. |

LIB. III.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Odi profanum: 1. | 7. Quid fies: 7. |
| 2. Angustam amice: 1. | 8. Martiis caelebs: 2. |
| 3. Justum et tenacem: 1. | 9. Donec gratus: 5. |
| 4. Descende caelo: 1. | 10. Extremum Tanain: 6. |
| 5. Caelo tonantem: 1. | 11. Mercuri nam te: 2. |
| 6. Delicta majorum: 1. | 12. Miserarum est: 19. |

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 13. O fons Bandusiae: 7. | 22. Montium custos: 2. |
| 14. Herculis ritu: 2. | 23. Caelo supinas: 1. |
| 15. Uxor pauperis: 5. | 24. Intactis opulentior: 5. |
| 16. Inclusam Danaën: 6. | 25. Quo me Bacche: 5. |
| 17. Aeli vetusto: 1. | 26. Vixi puellis: 1. |
| 18. Faune nympharum: 2. | 27. Impios parrae: 2. |
| 19. Quantum distet: 5. | 28. Festo quid: 5. |
| 20. Non vides: 2. | 29. Tyrrhena regum: 1. |
| 21. O nata mecum: 1. | 30. Exegi monumentum: 4. |

LIB. IV.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Intermissa Venus: 5. | 9. Ne forte credas: 1. |
| 2. Pindarum quisquis: 2. | 10. O crudelis adhuc: 8. |
| 3. Quem tu Melpomene: 5. | 11. Est mihi nonnum: 2. |
| 4. Qualem ministrum: 1. | 12. Jam veris comites: 6. |
| 5. Divis orte bonus: 6. | 13. Audivēre Lyce: 7. |
| 6. Dive quem proles: 2. | 14. Qua cura patrum: 1. |
| 7. Diffugēre nives: 10. | 15. Phoebus volentem: 1. |
| 8. Donarem pateras: 4. | <i>Carmen Saeculare: 2.</i> |

EPODES.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ibis liburnis: 15. | 10. Mala soluta: 15. |
| 2. Beatus ille: 15. | 11. Pecti nihil: 12. |
| 3. Parentis olim: 15. | 12. Quid tibi, vis: 9. |
| 4. Lupis et agnis: 15. | 13. Horrida tempestas: 11. |
| 5. At O deorum: 15. | 14. Mollis inertia: 16. |
| 6. Quid immerentes: 15. | 15. Nox erat: 16. |
| 7. Quo quo scelesti: 15. | 16. Altera jam: 17. |
| 8. Rogare longo: 15. | 17. Jam jam efficaci: 14. |
| 9. Quando repostum: 15. | |

MISCELLANEOUS.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

929. The **Roman Year**, by the reformed Calendar of *Julius Caesar*, had 365 days, divided as at present into 12 months:

Januarius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februarius,	28 "	Junius,	30 "	October,	31 "
Martius,	31 "	Quintilis,	31 "	November,	30 "
Aprilis,	30 "	Sextilis,	31 "	December.	31 "

Every fourth year the 24th of February (VI. Kal. Mart.) was counted twice giving 29 days to that month. The *Intercalary day* — 25th of February — was called bis sextus.

In early times the year began in March; hence the names, Quintilis, Sextilis, September, etc. Quintilis and Sextilis were afterwards changed to Julius and Augustus, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

930. The first day of the month was called *Kalendæ* (*Calends*); on the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *thirteenth* of the other months, were the *Idūs* (*Ides*); on the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the other months were the *Nonæ* (*Nones*). To these the names of the months were added as Adjectives, as: *Kalendæ Januariæ* = *Jan. 1*; *Nonæ Februariæ* = *Febr. 5*; *Idus Martiæ* = *March 15*.

931. From these three points the days of the month were reckoned *backward* in the following manner: The *day before* each of them was expressed by *pridie* with the *Accusative*, as:

pridie Kalendas Januarias = *Dec. 31*.

pridie Nonas Januarias = *Jan. 4*.

pridie Idus Januarias = *Jan. 12*.

In counting further backward the point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning so that *ante diem tertium* Kal. Jan. means *two days before the Calends of January*; *ante diem quartum* Kal. Jan., *three days before the Calends of January*, and so on. This combination is treated as *one indeclinable word*, so that it can be used with prepositions, as: *ex ante diem III. Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kal. Septembres*, *from June 3 to August 31*.

932. In stating the day of a month, two different constructions are used. The original construction is *die tertio ante Kalendas Martias, February 27.*; but *die* and *ante* are regularly omitted, thus: *tertio Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *III. Kal. Mart.* The other form is: *ante diem tertium Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *a. d. III. Kal. Mart.*

933. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

<i>Days of our months.</i>	<i>January.</i>	<i>February.</i>
1.	KALENDIS JAN.	KALENDIS FEB.
2.	IV. Nonas Jan.	IV. Nonas Feb.
3.	III. " "	III. " "
4.	prid. " "	prid. " "
5.	NONIS JAN.	NONIS FEB.
6.	VIII. Idus Jan.	VIII. Idus Feb.
7.	VII. " "	VII. " "
8.	VI. " "	VI. " "
9.	V. " "	V. " "
10.	IV. " "	IV. " "
11.	III. " "	III. " "
12.	prid. " "	prid. " "
13.	IDIBUS JAN.	IDIBUS FEB.
14.	XIX. Kalendas Feb.	XVI. Kalendas Mart.
15.	XVIII. " "	XV. " "
16.	XVII. " "	XIV. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XIII. " "
18.	XV. " "	XII. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XI. " "
20.	XIII. " "	X. " "
21.	XII. " "	IX. " "
22.	XI. " "	VIII. " "
23.	X. " "	VII. " "
24.	IX. " "	VI. " "
25.	VIII. " "	V. " "
26.	VII. " "	IV. " "
27.	VI. " "	III. " "
28.	V. " "	prid. " "
29.	IV. " "	[prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-
30.	III. " "	year, the VI. Kal. (24th)
31.	prid. " "	being counted twice.]

(So *Aug., Dec.*)

*Days of
our months.*

March.

April.

1.	KALENDIS MART.	KALENDIS APR.
2.	VI. Nonas Mart.	IV. Nonas Apr.
3.	V. " "	III. " "
4.	IV. " "	prid. " "
5.	III. " "	NONIS APR.
6.	prid. " "	VIII. Idus Apr.
7.	NONIS MART.	VII. " "
8.	VIII. Idus Mart.	VI. " "
9.	VII. " "	V. " "
10.	VI. " "	IV. " "
11.	V. " "	III. " "
12.	IV. " "	prid. " "
13.	III. " "	IDIBUS APR.
14.	prid. " "	XVIII. Kalendas Maias.
15.	IDIBUS MART.	XVII. " "
16.	XVII. Kalendas Aprilis.	XVI. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18.	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20.	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21.	XII. " "	XI. " "
22.	XI. " "	X. " "
23.	X. " "	IX. " "
24.	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25.	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26.	VII. " "	VI. " "
27.	VI. " "	V. " "
28.	V. " "	IV. " "
29.	IV. " "	III. " "
30.	III. " "	prid. " "
31.	prid. " "	(So June, Sept., Nov.)

(So May, July, Oct.)

934. To turn Roman dates into English:

For **Calends**: Add *two* to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

For **Ides** and **Nonas**: Add *one* to the date of the Nones and Ides of the month in question, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. VIII. Kal. Febr. ($31 + 2 - 8$) = *Jan. 25.*

a. d. IV. Non. Mart. ($7 + 1 - 4$) = *March 4.*

a. d. IV. Id. Sept. ($13 + 1 - 4$) = *Sept. 10.*

935. The Year was designated by the names of the Consuls for that year: but was also reckoned from the building of the City (ab urbe condita, anno urbis conditæ) which, according to Varro, corresponds with the 753d year B. C. In order to reduce such dates to those of the Christian era, if the given number be less than 754, subtract it from the latter, and the remainder will be the year B. C. as: a. u. c. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) = B. C. 63; if greater than 753, subtract 753 from it, and the remainder will be the year after Christ (A. D.), as: a. u. c. 767 (the year of Augustus' death) = 14 A. D.

936. The Week of seven days (hebdōmas) was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were named from the planets:

dies Solis, <i>Sunday</i>	dies Jovis, <i>Thursday</i>
dies Lunæ, <i>Monday</i>	dies Venēris, <i>Friday</i>
dies Martis, <i>Tuesday</i>	dies Saturni, <i>Saturday</i> .
dies Mercurii, <i>Wednesday</i>	

ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

937. The Coins of the Romans were in early times of copper. The ās, being originally the unit of currency, was nominally a pound weight, but was reduced by degrees to one twenty-fourth of its original weight and value. In the third century silver coins were introduced; the denarius = 10 asses, and the sestertius = 2½ asses (sestertius = semis-tertius, half third, represented by IIS or HS = duo et semis, 2½).

938. The Sestertius was the ordinary coin of the Romans, by which the largest sums were reckoned. Gold was introduced later, the aureus being equal to 100 sesterces. The value of these coins is seen in the following:

1 as	nearly 2 cents.
2½ asses = 1 sestertius or nummus (HS)	" 4 "
10 asses = 4 sestertii = 1 denarius	" 16 "
1000 sestertii = 1 sestertium	\$40.00

939. The Sestertium was a sum of money, not a coin. Though probably the genitive plural of sestertius, the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun, thus: tria sestertia = \$120.00. When joined with the multiplicative adverbs it denotes a sum of a hundred thousand, centena milia being omitted, thus: decies sestertium, a million = \$40,000.

940. The Roman Measures of Length are the following:

- 12 unciæ, *inches* = 1 pes, *Roman foot* (11.6 *Engl. inches*)
 1 cubitus, *cubit* = $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet
 1 gradus, *step* = $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet
 1 passus, *pace* = 5 feet
 mille passuum, *1000 paces* = 1 mile (4850 *Engl. feet*).

941. The basis of Square Measure was the jugerum, an area of 240 Roman feet long and 120 broad, a little less than $\frac{2}{3}$ of an English acre.

942. The Measures of Weight are:

12 unciæ (*ounces*) = one pound (*libra*, about $\frac{7}{8}$ lb. *avoirdupois*).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ($\frac{1}{12}$), unciæ; | 5. ($\frac{1}{24}$), quincunx; | 9. ($\frac{1}{36}$), dodrans; |
| 2. ($\frac{1}{6}$), sextans; | 6. ($\frac{1}{12}$), semissis; | 10. ($\frac{1}{48}$), dextans; |
| 3. ($\frac{1}{4}$), quadrans; | 7. ($\frac{1}{16}$), septunx; | 11. ($\frac{1}{72}$), deunx; |
| 4. ($\frac{1}{3}$), triens; | 8. ($\frac{1}{8}$), bessis; | 12. As. |

The Talent was a Greek weight = 60 *librae*.

943. The Measures of Capacity are:

12 cyathi = 1 sextarius (*nearly a pint*).

16 sextarii = 1 modius (*peck*).

6 sextarii = 1 congius (*3 quarts, liquid measure*).

8 congi = 1 amphora (*6 gallons*).

944.

ABBREVIATIONS.

A., absolvo.

A. Chr., ante Christum.

A. D., ante diem.

A. U. C., anno urbis conditæ.

C., condemno.

Cos., consul. Coss., consules.

D. D., dono dedit.

D. D. D., dat, dicat, dedicat.

Des., designatus.

F., filius.

H. S., sestertius.

Ictus, jurisconsultus.

Id., idus.

Imp., imperator.

J. O. M., Jovi optimo maximo.

K., Kal., Kalendæ.

Leg., legatus, legio.

N. L., non liquet.

Non., Nonæ.

P. C., patres conscripti.

P. M., pontifex maximus.

P. R., populus Romanus.

Pr., praetor.

Proc., proconsul.

Q. B. F. F. Q. S., quod bonum felix
faustumque sit.

Quir., Quirites.

Resp., respublica.

S., senatus.

S. C., senatus consultum.

S. D. P., saltem dicit plurimam.

S. P. Q. R., Senatus Populusque
Romanus.

Tr. pl., tribunus plebis.

945. PRINCIPAL LATIN AUTHORS.

T. Maccius Plautus	B.C.254-184
<i>Comedies.</i>	
Q. Ennius	239-169
<i>Annals, Satires, &c. (Fragments).</i>	
M. Porcius Cato	236-149
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &c.</i>	
M. Pacuvius	220-130
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
P. Terentius Afer (TERENCE)	195-159
<i>Comedies.</i>	
C. Lucilius	149-103
<i>Satires (Fragments).</i>	
L. Attius (or Accius)	170-75
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
M. Terentius Varro	116-28
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &c.</i>	
M. Tullius Cicero	106-43
<i>Orations, Letters, Dialogues.</i>	
C. Julius Caesar	100-44
<i>Commentaries.</i>	
T. Lucretius Carus	99-55
<i>Poem "De Rerum Natura".</i>	
C. Valerius Catullus	87-47
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
C. Sallustius Crispus (SALLUST)	86-35
<i>Histories.</i>	
Cornelius Nepos	90-
<i>Lives of Famous Commanders.</i>	
P. Vergilius Maro (VIRGIL)	70-19
<i>Eclogues, Georgics, Aeneid.</i>	
Q. Horatius Flaccus (HORACE)	65-8
<i>Satires, Odes, Epistles.</i>	
Albius Tibullus	54-18
<i>Elegies.</i>	
Sex. Aurelius Propertius	49-15
<i>Elegies.</i>	
T. Livius Patavinus (LIVY)	B.C.59-A.D.17
<i>Roman History.</i>	

P. Ovidius Naso (OVID)	B.C. 43—A.D. 16
<i>Metamorphoses, Fasti, &c.</i>	
C. Velleius Paterculus	B.C. 19—A.D. 31
<i>Roman History.</i>	
M. Valerius Maximus	A.D. —31
<i>Anecdotes, &c.</i>	
Pomponius Mela	—50
<i>Husbandry & Geography.</i>	
A. Persius Flaccus	34—62
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Seneca	—65
<i>Philos. Letters, &c.; Tragedies.</i>	
M. Annæus Lucanus	38—65
<i>Historical Poem "Pharsalia".</i>	
Q. Curtius Rufus	?
<i>History of Alexander.</i>	
C. Plinius Secundus (PLINY)	23—79
<i>Nat. Hist., &c.</i>	
C. Valerius Flaccus	—88
<i>Heroic Poem "Argonautica".</i>	
P. Papinius Statius	45—96
<i>Heroic Poems "Thebais", &c.</i>	
C. Silius Italicus	25—100
<i>Heroic Poem "Punica".</i>	
D. Junius Juvenalis (JUVENAL)	42—121
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Florus	—120
<i>Historical Abridgment.</i>	
M. Valerius Martialis (MARTIAL)	43—104
<i>Epigrams.</i>	
M. Fabius Quintilianus	40—118
<i>Rhetoric.</i>	
C. Cornelius Tacitus	57—118
<i>Annals, History, &c.</i>	
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (PLINY JUNIOR)	62—113
<i>Letters.</i>	
C. Suetonius Tranquillus	70—150
<i>The Twelve Cæsars.</i>	

Apuleius	A. D. 110—
<i>Philos. Writings, "Metamorphoses".</i>	
A. Gellius	-180
<i>Miscellanies, "Noctes Atticæ".</i>	
*Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus	160-220
<i>Apologist.</i>	
*M. Minucius Felix	-250
<i>Apologetic Dialogue, "Octavius".</i>	
*Firmianus Lactantius	250-325
<i>Theology.</i>	
D. Magnus Ausonius	-380
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
Ammianus Marcellinus	-395
<i>Roman History.</i>	
Claudius Claudianus	-408
<i>Poems, Panegyrics, &c.</i>	
*Aurelius Prudentius Clemens	348-410
<i>Christian Poems.</i>	
*Aurelius Augustinus	354-430
<i>Confessions, Discourses, &c.</i>	
Anicius Manlius Boethius	470-520
<i>Philosophical Dialogues.</i>	

* Christian writers.

INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index contains all the *Simple Verbs* in common use which involve any important irregularities, with such of their *Compounds* as require particular notice. — The references are to paragraphs.

A.

- ābēō, -īrē, to go away, 407
 ābigō, -ērē, to drive away, 383
 ablūō, -ērē, to wash (off), 366
 abnūō, -ērē, to dissent, 366
 ābōlēō, -ērē, to abolish, 356
 ābōlescō, -ērē, to disappear, 394
 abscindō, -ērē, to tear off, 374
 abscondō, -ērē, to hide, 372
 absistō, -ērē, to cease, 374
 absolvō, -ērē, to acquit, 366
 abstergēō, -ērē, to wipe off, 360
 abstīnēō, -ērē, to abstain, 358
 absūm, ābessē, to be absent, 306
 absūmō, -ērē, to use up, 385
 ābūtōr, -ī, to use, abuse, 396
 accēdō, -ērē, to approach, 374
 accendō, -ērē, to kindle, 373
 accīō, -īrē, to call in, 362
 accipīō, -ērē, to receive, 368
 accūbō, -ārē, to lie near, 347
 accumbō, -ērē, to recline at table, 376
 accurō, -ērē, to run to, 387
 ācescō, -ērē, to turn sour, 394
 acquirō, -ērē, to acquire, 389
 ācūō, -ērē, to sharpen, 366
 adfērō, -rē, to afford, 404
 ādhaerēō, -ērē, to stick, 360
 ādlmō, -ērē, to take away, 389
 ādlpiscōr, -ī, to obtain, 396
 adjungō, -ērē, to join (to), 378
 adjūvō, -ārē, to assist, 348
 admittō, -ērē, to admit, 374
 adnūō, -ērē, to nod assent, 366
 ādōlēō, -ērē, to grow up, 356
 ādōlescō, -ērē, to grow up, 394
 ādōrlōr, -īrī, to attack, 399
 adsistō, -ērē, to stand by, 374
 adsūm, ādessē, to be present, 306
 aegrescō, -ērē, to fall sick, 395
 affligō, -ērē, to dash, 378
 āgē, come, 417
 aggrēdlōr, -ī, to attack, 396
 agnosco, -ērē, to acknowledge, 393
 āgō, -ērē, to drive, do, 383
 ājō, I say, 416
 albēō, -ērē, to be white, 354
 algēō, -ērē, to be cold, 360
 allēgō, -ērē, to choose, 383
 allīcīō, -ērē, to allure, 368
 allidō, -ērē, to dash against, 371
 allīnō, -ērē, to besmear, 388
 allōquōr, -ī, to address, 396
 ālō, -ērē, to nourish, 386
 ambīgō, -ērē, to contend, 383
 ambīō, -īrē, to go about, 408
 āmīcīō, -īrē, to clothe, 398
 āmittō, -ērē, to lose, 374
 amplectōr, -ī, to embrace, 396
 angō, -ērē, to torment, vex, 381
 anquirō, -ērē, to search after, 389
 antēcellō, -ērē, to excel, 386
 antēpōnō, -ērē, to prefer, 386
 antistō, -ārē, to excel, 349

āpāgē, *be gone*, 417
 āpēriō, *—irē, to open*, 398
 āpiscōr, *—ī, to reach after*, 396
 applaudō, *—ērē, to applaud*, 371
 applicō, *—ārē, to apply*, 347
 appōnō, *—ērē, to put by*, 386
 arcēō, *—ērē, to keep off*, 353
 arcessō, *—ērē, to summon*, 390
 ardēō, *—ērē, to burn*, 360
 ārēō, *—ērē, to be dry*, 353
 ārescō, *—ērē, to become dry*, 394
 argūō, *—ērē, to accuse*, 366
 arridēō, *—ērē, to smile upon*, 360
 arripīō, *—ērē, to seize*, 368
 ascendō, *—ērē, to ascend*, 373
 aspiciō, *—ērē, to look*, 368
 assentiōr, *—īrī, to assent*, 399
 assēquōr, *—ī, to pursue*, 396
 assidēō, *—ērē, to sit by*, 361
 assidō, *—ērē, to sit down*, 374
 assuescō, *—ērē, to be accustomed*,
 393
 attendō, *—ērē, to attend to*, 371
 attinēō, *—ērē, to belong*, 358
 attingō, *—ērē, to touch*, 382
 andēō, *—ērē, to dare*, 363
 aufērō, *—rē, to carry away*, 404
 augēō *—ērē, to increase*, 359
 augescō, *—ērē, to augment*, 394
 āvē, *hail*, 417
 āvellō, *—ērē, to pull down*, 389
 āvēō, *—ērē, to long for*, 354

B.

bibō, *—ērē, to drink*, 376

C.

cādō, *—ērē, to fall*, 371
 caedō, *—ērē, to fell*, 371
 cālescō, *—ērē, to become warm*,
 394
 callēō, *—ērē, to be versed*, 353

calvēō, *—ērē, to be bald*, 354
 candēō, *—ērē, to shine*, 353
 candō, *I burn*, 373
 cānēō, *—ērē, to be gray*, 354
 cānō, *—ērē, to sing*, 387
 cāpessō, *—ērē, to lay hold of*, 390
 cāpiō, *—ērē, to take*, 331, 368
 carpō, *—ērē, to pluck*, 375
 cāvēō, *—ērē, to take heed*, 357
 cēdō, *give*, 417
 cēdō, *—ērē, to yield*, 374
 cellō, *I impel*, 386
 cēnō, *—ārē, to dine*, 278
 censēō, *—ērē, to value, think*, 358
 cernō, *—ērē, to see, discern*, 388
 cettā, *give*, 417
 cīēō, *—ērē* } *to rouse*, 362
 cīō, *—irē* }
 cingō, *—ērē, to gird*, 378
 circumdō, *—ārē, to surround*, 349
 circumfundō, *—ērē, to surround*,
 373
 circumsēdēō, *—ērē, to sit around*,
 361
 circumstō, *—ārē, to stand around*,
 349
 clangō, *—ērē, to clang*, 381
 claudō, *—ērē, to shut, close*, 371
 cōālescō, *—ērē, to grow together*,
 394
 cōargūō, *—ērē, to convict*, 366
 cōēmō, *—ērē, to buy together*, 389
 coepī, coepissē, *to have begun*, 415
 cognoscō, *—ērē, to know*, 393
 cōgō, *—ērē, to force (cō-āgō)*, 383
 cōhaerēō, *—ērē, to stick*, 360
 collidō, *—ērē, to dash together*,
 371
 colligō, *—ērē, to collect*, 383
 cōlō, *—ērē, to cultivate*, 386
 combūrō, *—ērē, to burn (wholly)*,
 389

comminiscō, -ī, to devise, 396
 committō, -ērē, to commit, 374
 cōmō, -ērē, to adorn, 385
 compescō, -ērē, to restrain, 393
 compingō, -ērē, to drive tight, 382
 complēō, -ērē, to fill (up), 356
 comprīmō, -ērē, to press together, 389
 concinō, -ērē, to sound together, 387
 concinō, -īrē, to call together, 362
 conclūdō, -ērē, to shut up, 371
 concūpiscō, -ērē, to covet, 394
 concurrō, -ērē, to run together, 387
 concūtō, -ērē, to shake, 368
 condō, -ērē, to found, 372
 condōlescō, -ērē, to feel pain, 394
 confērō, -rē, to collect, 404
 conficiō, -ērē, to make, 368
 confidō, -ērē, to confide, 373
 confitēor, -ērī, to confess, 364
 confligō, -ērē, to fight, 378
 confōdiō, -ērē, to pick out, 368
 confringō, -ērē, to break in two, 383
 congērō, -ērē, to bring together, 389
 congrūō, -ērē, to agree, 366
 cōnivēō, -ērē, to shut the eyes, 357
 consciscō, -ērē, to bring upon, 394
 cōscribō, -ērē, to frame, 375
 consērō, -ērē, to plant, 388
 considō, -ērē, to settle, 374
 conspergō, -ērē, to sprinkle, 384
 constō, -ārē, to consist, 349
 constrūō, -ērē, to construct, 367
 consuescō, -ērē, to be wont, 393
 consūlō, -ērē, to counsel, 386
 consumō, -ērē, to consume, 385

contemnō, -ērē, to despise, 385
 contendō, -ērē, to exert, 371
 contērō, -ērē, to rub off, 388
 conticescō, -ērē, to become still, 394
 continēō, -ērē, to hold together, 358
 contrāhō, -ērē, to contract, 378
 contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble, 394
 contribūō, -ērē, to contribute, 366
 contundō, -ērē, to break down, 371
 convālescō, -ērē, to recover, 394
 cōquō, -ērē, to cook, bake, 378
 corrigō, -ērē, to correct, 378
 corrumpō, -ērē, to corrupt, 376
 corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground, 366
 crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent, 395
 crēdō, -ērē, to believe, 372
 crēpō, -ārē, to creak, 347
 crescō, -ērē, to grow, 393
 cūbō, -ārē, to lie down, 347
 cūdō, -ērē, to forge, 373
 cūpiō, -ērē, to desire, 332, 368
 currō, -ērē, to run, 370, 387

D.

decernō, -ērē, to determine, 388
 dēcerpō, -ērē, to pluck, 375
 dēcēt, it becomes, 420
 dēcidō, -ērē, to cut down, 371
 dēcipiō, -ērē, to deceive, 368
 dēdēcēt, it is unbecoming, 420
 dēdiscō, -ērē, to unlearn, 393
 dēfendō, -ērē, to defend, 373
 dēfētiscōr, -ī, to be worn out, 396
 dēfungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396
 dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin, 375
 dēgō, -ērē, to spend (dē-āgō), 383

deleō, -ērē, *to destroy*, 351, 356
 delīgō, -ērē, *to choose*, 383
 dellitescō, -ērē, *to hide away*, 394
 dēmō, -ērē, *to take away*, 385
 depellō, -ērē, *to dispel*, 387
 dependēō, -ērē, *to hang down*,
 361
 dēposcō, -ērē, *to request*, 393
 depsō, -ērē, *to knead*, 390
 deridēō, -ērē, *to laugh at*, 360
 describō, -ērē, *to describe*, 375
 desēcō, -ārē, *to cut down*, 347
 desērō, -ērē, *to forsake*, 388
 desīnō, -ērē, *to leave off*, 388
 desīpiō, -ērē, *to be foolish*, 368
 despiciō, -ērē, *to despise*, 368
 despondēō, -ērē, *to promise*, 361
 desūm, deessē, *to be wanting*, 306
 detēgō, -ērē, *to discover*, 378
 detērō, -ērē, *to wear away*, 388
 devinciō, -irē, *to bind*, 398
 devōvēō, -ērē, *to vow, devote*, 357
 dicō, -ērē, *to say, tell*, 336, 378
 differō, -rē, *to defer*, 404
 diffitēōr, -ērī, *to disavow*, 364
 diffundō, -ērē, *to pour forth*, 373
 dilābōr, -ī, *to fall asunder*, 396
 diligō, -ērē, *to love*, 383
 dimicō, -ārē, *to fight*, 347
 dirīgō, -ērē, *to direct*, 378
 dirūō, -ērē, *to destroy*, 366
 discernō, -ērē, *to distinguish*, 388
 discerpō, -ērē, *to tear asunder*,
 375
 discindō, -ērē, *to split*, 374
 discō, -ērē, *to learn*, 370, 393
 discrēpō, -ārē, *to disagree*, 347
 dissērō, -ērē, *to discourse*, 388
 dissidēō, -ērē, *to disagree*, 361
 dissiliō, -irē, *to burst asunder*,
 398
 dissuādēō, -ērē, *to dissuade*, 360

distingūō, -ērē, *to distinguish*,
 378
 distō, -ārē, *to be distant*, 349
 distribuō, -ērē, *to distribute*, 366
 ditescō, -ērē, *to grow rich*, 395
 dividō, -ērē, *to divide*, 371
 dō, -ārē, *to give*, 349, 370
 docēō, -ērē, *to teach*, 358
 dōmō, -ārē, *to tame*, 347
 dūcō, -ērē, *to lead*, 336, 378
 dulcescō, -ērē, *to become sweet*,
 395
 dūrescō, -ērē, *to grow hard*, 395

E.

ēdiscō, -ērē, *to learn by heart*,
 393
 ēdō, -ērē, *to eat*, 373, 410
 ēdō, -ērē, *to give out*, 372
 ēducō, -ērē, *to lead forth*, 378
 effērō, -rē, *to carry out*, 404
 effervescō, -ērē, *to boil up*, 394
 efflōrescō, -ērē, *to begin to*
bloom, 394
 effōdiō, -ērē, *to dig out*, 368
 effringō, -ērē, *to break open*, 383
 effundō, -ērē, *to pour out*, 373
 ēgēō, -ērē, *to be in want*, 353
 elicō, -ērē, *to entice out*, 368
 elidō, -ērē, *to strike out*, 371
 eligō, -ērē, *to elect*, 383
 ēmicō, -ārē, *to shine forth*, 347
 ēminēō, -ērē, *to be prominent*,
 353
 ēmō, -ērē, *to buy*, 389
 ēnēcō, -ārē, *to slay*, 347
 ēō, Irē, *to go*, 406
 ērūbescō, -ērē, *to turn red*, 394
 erumpō, -ērē, *to break out*, 376
 ērūō, -ērē, *to dig out*, 366
 esūrīō, -irē, *to want to eat*, 398
 evādō, -ērē, *to turn out*, 371

ēvānescō, -ērē, to vanish, 395
 ēvertō, -ērē, to overthrow, 373
 ēvomō, -ērē, to vomit up, 386
 exardescō, -ērē, to take fire, 394
 excellō, -ērē, to excel, 386
 excidō, -ērē, to hew out, 371
 excindō, -ērē, to destroy, 374
 exhaustō, -irē, to exhaust, 398
 expergiscōr, -ī, to awake, 396
 expēriōr, -irī, to try, 399
 explicō, -ārē, to unfold, 347
 explōdō, -ērē, to hiss off, 371
 exposcō, -ērē, to request earnestly, 393
 exprimō, -ērē, to press out, 389
 existō, -ērē, to come forth, 374
 exstinguō, -ērē, to put out, 378
 exstō, -ārē, to exist, 349
 extendō, -ērē, to stretch out, 371
 extimescō, -ērē, to fear, 394
 exūō, -ērē, to put off, 366

F.

fācessō, -ērē, to accomplish, 390
 fāciō, -ērē, to do, make, 368
 fallō, -ērē, to cheat, 387
 farcīō, -irē, to stuff, 398
 fārī, to speak, 416
 fātēōr, -ērī, to confess, 364
 fāvēō, -ērē, to favor, 357
 fendō, I fend, 373
 fērīō, -irē, to strike, beat, 398
 fērō, -rē, to bear, 336, 389, 403
 fērōciō, -irē, to be unruly, 398
 fervēō, -ērē, to glow, 357
 fidō, -ērē, to trust, confide, 373
 figō, -ērē, to fix, 379
 findō, -ērē, to split, cleave 374
 fingō, -ērē, to fashion, 379
 fiō, fiērī, to become, 368, 411
 flāvēō, -ērē, to be golden yellow, 354

flāvescō, -ērē, to become yellow, 394

flectō, -ērē, to bend, 380
 flēō, -ērē, to weep, 356
 fligō, -ērē, to strike, 378
 flōrēō, -ērē, to blossom, 353
 fluctūō, -ārē, to wave, 365
 flūō, -ērē, to flow, 367
 fōdiō, -ērē, to dig, 332, 368
 fōrēm, I should be, 418
 fōvēō, -ērē, to cherish, 357
 frangō, -ērē, to break, 385
 frēmō, -ērē, to growl, 386
 fricō, -ārē, to rub, 347
 frīgēō, -ērē, to be cold, 359
 frūōr, -ī, to enjoy, 396
 fūgiō, -ērē, to flee, 332, 368
 fulciō, -irē, to support, 398
 fulgēō, -ērē, to shine, 360
 fundō, -ērē, to pour, 373
 fungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396
 fūrō, -ērē, to rage, 389

G.

gaudēō, -ērē, to rejoice, 363
 gēmō, -ērē, to groan, 386
 gērō, -ērē, to carry on, 389
 gignō, -ērē, to beget, 386
 gliscō, -ērē, to grow up, 393
 glūbō, -ērē, to peel, 375
 grādīōr, -ī, to step, 396
 grandescō, -ērē, to grow, 395
 grāvescō, -ērē, to grow heavy, 395
 grūō or rūō ? 366

H.

haerēō, -ērē, to hang, 360
 haurīō, -irē, to draw, 398
 hēbēō, -ērē, to be blunt, 354
 hēbescō, -ērē, to grow dull, 394
 hiscō, -ērē, to yawn, 394

horrēō, -ērē, *to shudder*, 353
 horrescō, -ērē, *to stand on end*,
 394
 hūmēō, -ērē, *to be moist*, 354

I.

icō, -ērē, *to strike*, 383
 illīnō, -ērē, *to bedaub*, 388
 illūcescō, -ērē, *to grow light*,
 394
 illūdō, -ērē, *to mock*, 371
 imbūō, -ērē, *to dip, dye*, 366
 immīnō, -ērē, *to threaten*, 354
 immīnūō, -ērē, *to lessen*, 366
 impendēō, -ērē, *to hang over*,
 361
 implēō, -ērē, *to fill (up)*, 356
 implicō, -ārē, *to involve*, 347
 incessō, -ērē, *to fall upon*, 390
 incidō, -ērē, *to fall into*, 371
 incidō, -ērē, *to engrave*, 371
 incipīō, -ērē, *to begin*, 368
 incolō, -ērē, *to inhabit*, 386
 increpō, -ārē, *to scold*, 347
 incūbō, -ārē, *to lie upon*, 347
 indicō, -ērē, *to declare*, 378
 indīgēō, -ērē, *to be in want*, 353
 indōlescō, -ērē, *to feel pain*, 394
 indulgēō, -ērē, *to indulge*, 359
 indūō, -ērē, *to put on*, 366
 īnō, -īrē, *to go into*, 407
 infērō, -rē, *to carry into*, 404
 ingēmiscō, -ērē, *to groan*, 394
 ingrūō, -ērē, *to rush*, 366
 innōtescō, -ērē, *to become known*,
 395
 inquā, *I say*, 416
 inquīrō, -ērē, *to inquire*, 389
 insērō, -ērē, *to plant in*, 388
 insērō, -ērē, *to insert*, 388
 insīdēō, -ērē, *to sit upon*, 361
 instrūō, -ērē, *to instruct*, 367

insūm, īnessē, *to be in*, 306
 intēgrascō, -ērē, *to begin anew*,
 395
 intellēgō, -ērē, *to understand*,
 383
 interēō, -īrē, *to perish*, 407
 interficiō, -ērē, *to kill*, 368, 413
 intersūm, intēressē, *to be between*,
 306
 intūmescō, -ērē, *to swell*, 394
 invēnīō, -īrē, *to find out*, 398
 invētērascō, -ērē, *to grow old*,
 394
 invidēō, -ērē, *to envy*, 361
 irascōr, -ī, *to grow angry*, 396
 irrēpō, -ērē, *to creep into*, 375

J.

jacō, -ērē, *to throw*, 368
 jūbēō, -ērē, *to order*, 360
 jungō, -ērē, *to join*, 378
 jūrō, -ārē, *to swear*, 278
 jūvenescō, -ērē, *to grow young*,
 395
 jūvō, -ārē, *to assist*, 348

L.

lābōr, -ī, *to glide, roll on*, 396
 lācessō, -ērē, *to excite*, 390
 lācīō, *I entice*, 368
 laedō, -ērē, *to violate, hurt*, 371
 lambō, -ērē, *to lick*, 376
 languēō, -ērē, *to be weary*, 353
 lātēō, -ērē, *to be hid*, 353
 lāvō, -ārē, *to wash*, 348
 lēgō, -ērē, *to read*, 383
 libēt, *it pleases*, 420
 licēt, *it is lawful*, 420
 līnō, -ērē, *to smear*, 388
 līnquō, -ērē, *to leave*, 383
 liquēfiaciō, -ērē, *to liquefy*, 413
 līquēō, -ērē, *to be fluid*, 353

liquet, *it is clear*, 420

livēō, -ērē, *to be pale*, 354

lōquōr, -ī, *to speak*, 396

lūcēō, -ērē, *to shine*, 359

lūdō, -ērē, *to play*, 371

lūgēō, -ērē, *to mourn*, 359

lūō, -ērē, *to atone for*, 366

lūō, -ērē, *to wash*, 366

M.

macrescō, -ērē, *to grow meager*,
395

mādēō, -ērē, *to be wet*, 353

maerēō, -ērē, *to grieve*, 354

mālō, mallē, *to be more willing*,
405

mandō, -ērē, *to chew*, 373

mānēō, -ērē, *to remain*, 360

mansuēfāciō, -ērē, *to tame*, 413

mātūrescō, -ērē, *to ripen*, 395

mēdēōr, -ērī, *to cure*, 364

mēmīnī, -issē, *to remember*, 415

mergō, -ērē, *to dip in*, 384

mētūr, -īrī, *to measure*, 399

mētō, -ērē, *to reap*, 374

mētūō, -ērē, *to fear*, 366

mīcō, -ārē, *to shine*, 347

mīniscōr, *I recollect*, 396

mīnūō, -ērē, *to lessen*, 366

miscēō, -ērē, *to mix*, 358

mīserēōr, -ērī, *to have pity*, 364

miseret, *it excites pity*, 420

mītescō, -ērē, *to become mild*,
395

mittō, -ērē, *to send*, 374

mōlō, -ērē, *to grind*, 386

mordēō, -ērē, *to bite*, 361

mōrūr, -ī, *to die*, 396

mōvēō, -ērē, *to move*, 357

mulcēō, -ērē, *to soothe*, 360

mulgēō, -ērē, *to milk*, 360

N.

nanciscōr, -ī, *to get*, 396

nascōr, -ī, *to be born*, 396

nectō, -ērē, *to tie*, 380

neglēgō, -ērē, *to neglect*, 383

nēō, -ērē, *to spin*, 356

nēquēō, -īrē, *not to be able*, 409

nīgrescō, -ērē, *to become black*,
395

ningō, -ērē, *to snow*, 381

nītēō, -ērē, *to glitter*, 353

nītōr, -ī, *to stay one's self on*, 396

nōlō, nollē, *to be unwilling*, 405

noscō, -ērē, *to (learn to) know*,
393

nūbō, -ērē, *to marry*, 375

nūō, *I nod*, 366

O.

obdormiscō, -ērē, *to fall asleep*,
394

ōbēō, -īrē, *to meet*, 407

objiciō, -ērē, *to throw to*, 368

obliscōr, -ī, *to forget*, 396

obmūtescō, -ērē, *to grow dumb*,
395

obrūō, -ērē, *to cover*, 366

obsīdēō, -ērē, *to besiege*, 361

obsistō, -ērē, *to oppose*, 374

obsolēō, -ērē, *to go out of use*,
356

obsolēscō, -ērē, *to become ob-*
solete, 394

obsūm, ōbessē, *to be in the way*,
306

obtīnēō, -ērē, *to occupy*, 358

obtundō, -ērē, *to stun*, 371

occīdō, -ērē, *to set*, 371

occīdō, -ērē, *to kill*, 371

occūlō, -ērē, *to conceal*, 386

occurrō, -ērē, *to meet*, 387

ōdī, -issē, *to hate*, 415

offendō, -ērē, *to offend*, 373
 olēō, -ērē, *to smell*, 353
 olēō, *I grow*, 356
 oportet, *it is needful*, 420
 opperīōr, -īrī, *to await*, 399
 oppōnō, -ērē, *to oppose*, 386
 ordīōr, -īrī, *to begin*, 399
 ōrīōr, -īrī, *to rise*, 399
 ostendō, -ērē, *to show*, 371

P.

pāciscōr, -ī, *to strike a bargain*, 396
 paenītēt, *it causes sorrow*, 420
 pallēō, -ērē, *to look pale*, 353
 pallescō, -ērē, *to turn pale*, 394
 pandō, -ērē, *to spread*, 374
 pangō, -ērē, *to strike, drive*, 382
 pangō, -ērē, *to bargain*, 382
 parcō, -ērē, *to spare*, 382
 pārīō, -ērē, *to bring forth*, 368
 pascō, -ērē, *to graze*, 393
 pascōr, -ī, *to feed*, 396
 pātēfācīō, -ērē, *to open*, 332, 368
 pātēō, -ērē, *to stand open*, 353
 pātīōr, -ī, *to suffer*, 396
 pāvēō, -ērē, *to fear*, 357
 pectō, -ērē, *to comb*, 380
 pellicīō, -ērē, *to allure*, 368
 pellō, -ērē, *to drive (away)*, 387
 pendēō, -ērē, *to hang*, 361
 pendō, -ērē, *to weigh*, 371
 pērāgō, -ērē, *to accomplish*, 383
 percellō, -ērē, *to beat down*, 386
 percensēō, -ērē, *to survey*, 358
 perdō, -ērē, *to ruin*, 372
 pērēō, -īrē, *to perish*, 408
 perficiō, -ērē, *to finish*, 368
 perfrūōr, -ī, *to enjoy fully*, 396
 pergo, *see perrigo*
 pērīmō, -ērē, *to slay*, 389
 perlēgō, -ērē, *to read through*, 383

permittō, -ērē, *to permit*, 374
 permulcēō, -ērē, *to appease*, 360
 perpētīōr, -ī, *to endure*, 396
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ērē, *to go on*, 378
 perrumpō, -ērē, *to break through*, 376
 persuādēō, -ērē, *to persuade*, 360
 pertīnēō, -ērē, *to pertain*, 358
 pessumdō, -ārē, *to ruin*, 349
 pētō, -ērē, *to seek*, 374
 pīget, *it grieves*, 420
 pingō, -ērē, *to paint*, 379
 pinguescō, -ērē, *to grow fat*, 395
 pinsō, -ērē, *to pound*, 390
 plangō, -ērē, *to beat, lament*, 378
 plaudō, -ērē, *to applaud*, 371
 plectō, -ērē, *to beat*, 380
 plectōr, 396
 plēō, *I fill*, 356
 plicō, *I fold*, 347
 plūmescō, -ērē, *to get feathers*, 395
 plūō, -ērē, *to rain*, 366
 pollēō, -ērē, *to be powerful*, 354
 pōnō, -ērē, *to place*, 386
 poscō, -ērē, *to demand*, 370, 393
 possidēō, -ērē, *to possess*, 361
 possūm, possē, *to be able*, 401
 pōtō, -ārē, *to drink*, 278, 347
 praecellō, -ērē, *to excel*, 386
 praecinō, -ērē, *to sing to one*, 387
 praedicō, -ērē, *to predict*, 378
 praefērō, -rē, *to prefer*, 404
 praescribō, -ērē, *to prescribe*, 375
 praesidēō, -ērē, *to preside*, 361
 praestō, -ārē, *to afford*, 349
 praesūm, praecessē, *to be over*, 306
 praetērēō, -īrē, *to pass by*, 407
 prandēō, -ērē, *to breakfast*, 361
 prēhendō, -ērē, *to seize*, 373

prēmō, -ērē, *to press*, 389
 prōfiscōr, -ī, *to set out, start*,
 396
 prōfigō, -ārē, *to strike down*, 378
 prōmittō, -ērē, *to promise*, 374
 prōmō, -ērē, *to take out*, 385
 prosternō, -ērē, *to overthrow*,
 388
 prōsum, prōdessē, *to be useful*,
 306
 prōtēgō, -ārē, *to protect*, 378
 prōvidēō, -ērē, *to provide*, 361
 psallō, -ērē, *to play on the ci-
 thern*, 389
 pūdēt, *it shames*, 420
 pūerascō, -ērē, *to become a
 child*, 395
 pungō, -ērē, *to pierce, sting*, 382
 pūrescō, -ērē, *to rot*, 394

Q.

quaerō, -ērē, *to seek, desire*, 389
 quaeso, *I beseech*, 418
 quātīō, -ērē, *to shake*, 332, 368
 quēō, -īrē, *to be able*, 409
 quērōr, -ī, *to complain*, 396
 quiescō, -ērē, *to rest*, 393

R.

rādō, -ērē, *to scrape*, 371
 rāpīō, -ērē, *to seize*, 332, 368
 rēcensēō, -ērē, *to review*, 358
 rēcrūdescō, -ērē, *to break open
 afresh*, 395
 rēcurreō, -ērē, *to run back*, 387
 rēdargūō, -ērē, *to refute*, 366
 reddō, -ērē, *to give back*, 372
 rēdēō, -īrē, *to return*, 407
 rēdimō, -ērē, *to buy back*, 389
 rēfellō, -ērē, *to refute*, 387
 rēferciō, -īrē, *to cram*, 398
 rēfērō, -rē, *to bring back*, 404

rēflūō, -ērē, *to flow back*, 367
 rēgō, -ērē, *to rule, govern*, 378
 rēlēgō, -ērē, *to read over*, 383
 rēlinquō, -ērē, *to leave (behind)*,
 383
 rēmānēō, -ērē, *to remain*, 360
 rēminiscōr, -ī, *to remember*, 396
 rēnidēō, -ērē, *to shine*, 354
 rēōr, -ērī, *to think*, 364
 rēpellō, -ērē, *to repel*, 387
 rēpēriō, -īrē, *to find*, 398
 rēpētō, -ērē, *to repeat*, 374
 rēplēō, -ērē, *to fill (up)*, 356
 rēpō, -ērē, *to creep, crawl*, 375
 rēposcō, -ērē, *to demand back*,
 393
 rēquiescō, -ērē, *to rest*, 393
 rēsīdēō, -ērē, *to remain behind*,
 361
 rēsīpiscō, -ērē, *to come to one's
 self again*, 394
 rēsōnō, -ārē, *to resound*, 347
 respiciō, -ērē, *to consider*, 368
 respondēō, -ērē, *to answer*, 361
 restitūō, -ērē, *to restore*, 366
 rēvertōr, -ī, *to turn back*, 396
 rēviviscō, -ērē, *to revive*, 394
 ridēō, -ērē, *to laugh*, 360
 rigēō, -ērē, *to be stiff*, 353
 rōdō, -ērē, *to gnaw*, 371
 rūbēō, -ērē, *to be red*, 353
 rumpō, -ērē, *to break*, 376
 rūō, -ērē, *to rush forth*, 366

S.

saepiō, -īrē, *to hedge in*, 398
 sāliō, -īrē, *to leap*, 398
 salvē, *hail*, 417
 sanciō, -īrē, *to sanction*, 398
 sāpiō, -ērē, *to be wise*, 368
 sarcīō, -īrē, *to mend*, 398
 sātisdiō, -ārē, *to give bail*, 349

scābō, —ērē, to scratch, 376
 scalpō, —ērē, to carve, 375
 scandō, —ērē, to climb, 373
 scātēō, —ērē, to gush, 354
 scindō, —ērē, to cut, 374
 sciō, —irē, to know, 338
 sciscō, —ērē, to decree, 394
 scribō, —ērē, to write, 375
 sculpō, —ērē, to chisel, 375
 sécō, —ārē, to cut, 347
 sēdēō, —ērē, to sit, 361
 sēnescō, —ērē, to grow old, 394
 sentiō, —irē, to feel, perceive, 398
 sēpeliō, —irē, to bury, 398
 sēquor, —ī, to follow, 396
 sērō, —ērē, to sow, 388
 sērō, —ērē, to join, 388
 serpō, —ērē, to creep, 375
 sīdō, —ērē, to sit down, 374
 sīlēō, —ērē, to be silent, 353
 sīnō, —ērē, to let, 388
 sistō, —ērē, to stop, 374
 sōlēō, —ērē, to be wont, 363
 solvō, —ērē, to loose, 366
 sōnō, —ārē, to sound, 347
 sorbēō, —ērē, to sip, 353
 sordēō, —ērē, to be dirty, 353
 spargō, —ērē, to scatter, 384
 spēciō, I see, 368
 spernō, —ērē, to despise, 388
 splendēō, —ērē, to gleam, 353
 spondēō, —ērē, to pledge, 361
 spūō, —ērē, to spit, 366
 squālēō, —ērē, to be filthy, 354
 stātūō, —ērē, to set, place, 366
 sternō, —ērē, to strew, 388
 sternūō, —ērē, to sneeze, 366
 stertō, —ērē, to snore, 373
 stingūō, I put out, 378
 stō, stārē, to stand, 349, 370
 strēpō, —ērē, to make a noise, 376
 strīdēō, —ērē, to whiz, creak, 361

stringō, —ērē, to bind, 379
 strūō, —ērē, to build, 367
 stūdēō, —ērē, to be zealous, 353
 stūpēō, —ērē, to be amazed, 353
 suādēō, —ērē, to advise, 360
 sūbēō, —irē, to come under, 407
 sūbigō, —ērē, to subdue, 383
 subjiciō, —ērē, to subject, 368
 subsūm, subessē, to be under, 306
 succensēō, —ērē, to be angry, 353
 succurrō, —ērē, to succor, 387
 suescō, —ērē, to become used, 393
 sūgō, —ērē, to suck, 378
 sum, essē, to be, 303
 sūmō, —ērē, to take, 385
 sūō, —ērē, to sew, 366
 sūperbiō, —irē, to be proud, 398
 sūpersēdēō, —ērē, to forbear, 361
 sūpersum, sūpēressē, to remain
 over, 306
 suppressō, —ērē, to keep back, 389
 (surrigō) surgō, —ērē, to rise, 378
 suspendō, —ērē, to hang, 371

T.

taedet, it wearies, 420
 tangō, —ērē, to touch, 382
 tēgō, —ērē, to cover, 378
 temnō, I despise, 385
 tendō, —ērē, to spread, 371
 tēnēō, —ērē, to hold, 358
 tēnērescō, —ērē, to grow tender,
 395
 tergēō, —ērē } to wipe, 360, 384
 tergō, —ērē }
 tērō, —ērē, to rub, wear out, 388
 texō, —ērē, to weave, 390
 tīmēō, —ērē, to fear, 353
 tingō (tingūō), —ērē, to stain, 378
 tollō, —ērē, to lift, take away, 389
 tondēō, —ērē, to shear, 361
 tōnō, —ārē, to thunder, 347

torpěō, —ěřě, *to be numb*, 353
 torquěō, —ěřě, *to torture*, 359
 torrěō, —ěřě, *to roast*, 358
 trádō, —ěřě, *to deliver*, 372
 tráhō, —ěřě, *to draw*, 378
 transěō, —īřě, *to pass over*, 407
 trěmō, —ěřě, *to tremble*, 386
 trībūō, —ěřě, *to confer on*, 366
 trūdō, —ěřě, *to thrust*, 371
 tūměō, —ěřě, *to swell*, 353
 tundō, —ěřě, *to thump*, 371
 turgěō, —ěřě, *to swell*, 360

U.

ulciscōr, —ī, *to avenge*, 396
 ungō(ungūō), —ěřě, *to anoint*, 378
 urgěō, —ěřě, *to urge*, 360
 űrō, —ěřě, *to burn*, 389
 űtōr, —ī, *to use*, 396

V.

vádō, —ěřě, *to go*, 371
 vālě, *farewell*, 417

věhō, —ěřě, *to carry*, 378
 vellō, —ěřě, *to pluck, pull*, 389
 vendō, —ěřě, *to sell*, 372
 vĕnĕō, —īřě, *to be for sale*, 408
 vĕnīō, —īřě, *to come*, 398
 vĕnumdō, —āřě, *to sell*, 349
 vergō, —ěřě, *to verge*, 384
 verrō, —ěřě, *to sweep*, 389
 vertō, —ěřě, *to turn*, 373
 vescōr, —ī, *to feed upon, eat*, 396
 vĕtō, —āřě, *to forbid*, 347
 vīdĕō, —ěřě, *to see*, 361
 vīgĕō, —ěřě, *to be vigorous*, 353
 vīlescō, —ěřě, *to become vile*, 395
 vincīō, —īřě, *to bind*, 398
 vincō, —ěřě, *to conquer*, 383
 vīřĕō, —ěřě, *to be green*, 353
 vīsō, —ěřě, *to visit*, 390
 vīvō, —ěřě, *to live*, 367
 vōlō, vellĕ, *to be willing*, 405
 volvō, —ěřě, *to roll, turn*, 366
 vōmō, —ěřě, *to vomit*, 386
 vōvēō, —ěřě, *to vow*, 357

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

The references are to paragraphs.

A.

-a, Nouns in, of 1st decl., 56; of 3d decl., 83; acc. sing. 3d decl., 153; changed in compounds, 517

ā, ab, abs, 655; with abl. of separation, 620; of agent, 603; in compounds, 519; with negative force, 531. 2

Abbreviations, 944

abesse — non multum abest quin, nihil abest quin, 766; tantum abest ut. . ut, 760

abhinc, denoting time, 674

abhorrere, with abl., 620, 621

ABLATIVE, 49; sing. of 3d decl., 140, 144; SYNTAX, 603-628; abl. of agent, 603; of cause, 603, 604; of comparison, 609-612; of difference, 612; of limitation, 608; of manner, 613, 614; with opus est, 624; of means or instrument, 605-607; of plenty and want, 622, 623; of price, 617-619; of quality, 615, 616; of separation, 620, 621; in special constructions, 625; of time, 672; with prepositions, 445, 446, 655-671; of place, 687, 688; with names of towns, 683-686; of distance how far, 681

Ablative absolute, 836, 837

absolvere, with gen., 570

absque, 656

abstinere, with abl., 620

Abstract substantives, 37; for concretes, 691, 693; in the plur., 694, 695; derivation, 488, 493

abundare, with abl., 622

-ābūs for -īs, 1st decl., 59

abūti, with abl., 626

ac, atque, 849

Acatalectic verses, 907

Accent, rules of, 29-31

acceptus, with dat., 598

accidit, with ut, 759

accipere, with dat. of purpose, 595; with acc. & infin., 812; with gerundive, 841

accusare, with gen., 570

ACCUSATIVE, 49; sing. 3d decl., 143; plur., 148; in -ās, 157; SYNTAX, 574-586; with active transitive verbs, 574; with intransitive verbs, 575, 576; with compound verbs, 577; with verbs of naming, 578; with verbs of teaching and asking, 579-582; with impersonal verbs, 583, 584; in exclamations, 585; used adverbially, 586; with prepositions, 629-654; with names of towns, 683; to denote space, 679, 680; time how long, 674; how old, 678

Accusative with Infin., 810-820; as subject, 811; as object, 812; after verbs of wishing, &c.,

814, 815; *tenses*, 818, 819; in *indirect* discourse, 825; how to *translate*, 816

Active voice, 272; its participles, 829

Ad, 629; *assimilated* in composition, 520; in compounds with *dat.*, 592; with *gerund*, 845; with *interest*, 573; with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable*, 599

adducere, with *ut*, 758

-*adēs*, *suffl.* in *patronymics*, 487

adipisci, with *ut*, 758

ADJECTIVES, 32, 198-227; of 1st and 2d *decl.*, 72-77; of 3d *decl.*, 137-142; of three terminations, 199; of two terminations, 200; of one termination, 141, 201; defective, 203, 204; indeclinable, 205; indefinite, 268; pronominal, 269; comparison, 207-227; used as *substantives*, 701, 702; used instead of *adverbs*, 550; used instead of *possessives*, 703; denoting a *part* of a thing, 704; *appositive*, 550; *attributive*, 546; *predicative*, 536, 544; in *relative* clauses, 554; with *gen.*, 567; with *dat.*, 598-600; with *abl.*, 623, 625; position, 559, 561; derivation, 496-511; special uses, 701-709; in *abl. absol.*, 836

Adjuncts of the predicate, 558; of the subject, 558

adjuvare, with *acc.*, 589

admonere, with *gen.*, 568; with *ut*, 758; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 814

Adonic verse, 925. 1

adspergere, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 593

adulescens for in *adulescentia*, 691; in *adulescentia*, 673

Advantage, *dative* of, 587

advenire, with *in* & *acc.*, 690

adventu, *abl.* of *time*, 673

Adverbial accusative, 586; phrases, 431

ADVERBS, 32, 424-446; derivation of, 425-434; from adjectives of the 1st & 2d *decl.*, 425; of the 3d *decl.*, 426; of *time*, 437; of *manner*, 438; of *order*, 242; *numeral*, 241; of *place*, 436; used as *prepositions*, 436; comparison, 440-442; with *gen.*, 566. c; correlative, 439; position, 562

Adversative conjunctions, 451, 853

adversus, adversum, 632

ae, changed in compounds, 517

aedes & templum omitted, 566. e

aeger, with *abl.*, 604

aequalis, w. *gen.*, 598

aequare, w. *acc.*, 589

aeque ac, 849

aestimare, w. *gen.*, 569; w. *abl.*, 617

aetate, *abl.* of *time*, 673

-*aetus*, *suffl.*, 508

affatim, w. *gen.*, 566. e

afferre, w. *dat.*, 592

afficere, w. *abl.*, 607

affirmare, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

Agent, *abl.* of, with *ā* or *āb*, 603; *dat.* of, 596, 597; w. *opera*, per, 606

agere, with *annus*, to express how *old*, 678; id agere, with *ut*, 758

agnomen, 194

Agreement of predicate and subject, 536-539; of attribute and substantive, 546, 547; of apposition and substantive, 548-550; of pronoun & antecedent, 551-557

ajo, conjugated, 416; its use, 823

-*āl*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 91

Alcaic verses, 925.9.10; **stanza**, 927.1
Alcmanian stanza, 927. 9
ALI- in *aliquis* rejected, 723, 762
alienāre, with *ā* and *abl.*, 621
alienus, with *abl.*, 925
aliquanto, with *comparatives*, 706
aliquantum, w. *gen.*, 566. 6
aliquid, with *gen.*, 566. 5; used *ad-verbially*, 586
aliquis, 266; its use, 722; after *si emphatic*, 723
-ālis, *suffix*, 501
aliter atque, 849
alius, 202, 728; *alius...alius*, *alii...*
alii, 729; quantity in *gen.*, 861
Alphabet, 3; vowels and diphthongs, 4, 5; consonants, 6, 7
alter, 202, 728; *alter...alter*, 729
Alternative questions, 798
altēro tanto, 612
alterūter, 202
amans, w. *gen.*, 567. 2
amicus, w. *dat.* & *gen.*, 598
amplius, without *quam*, 610
an, *interrog.*, 797, 798; *annon*, 798
Anacrūsīs, 925. 10
anceps syllāba, 908
animadvertēre, w. *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
Animals, Names of, 47
anīmo, *abl.* of *manner*, 613; *anīmo aequo*, without *cum*, 613
Answer, Form of, 799
ante, 631; in composition, 521; in compounds with *dat.* 592; to denote distance of *time*, 675; with *quam*, 675; *ante diem*, 931
Antecedent of relative, 553; incorporated in the relative clause, 719; agreement, 551-557
antepenult, 25
antēquam, 779, 780
-ānus, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507

anxius, with *abl.*, 604
Apocōpe, 894
Apodōsis, 787
apparēre, with *two nom.*, 540
appāret, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
appellāre, with *two acc.*, 578
appellāri, with *two nom.*, 540
Appendix to 3d conjugation, 331
Apposition, 548; in relative clause, 554; *gen.* of *specification* in its stead, 566. 7; expressing *time*, 549; with names of *towns*, 684, 685; agreement, 548-550
aptus, with *dat.*, 598; with *gerund.* & *gerundive*, 844; with *qui* & *subjunct.*, 793
apud, 630
-ār, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 94, 95
arbitrāri, with *two acc.*, 578; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
arcessēre, with *gen.*, 570
Archilochian verse, 925. 11; *stanzas*, 927. 10-13
arguēre, with *gen.*, 570
-āris, *suffix*, 501
Aristophanic verse, 925. 2
-ārītūm, *suffix*, 482
-ārītūs, *suffix*, 501
Arsis, 900
Article, not in Latin, 57
ās, Unit of *value*, 937
-ās, Nouns in, 1st *decl.*, 60; 3d *decl.*, 105-107; *-ās*, Greek *acc. pl.* 3d *decl.*, 157; *suffix*, 507
Asclepiadean verses, 925. 7. 8; *stanzas*, 827. 4-8
-asco, Verbs in, 472
assēqui, with *ut*, 758
Assimilation of prepositions, 518
assuescēre, with *inf.*, 809
Asyndeton, 850
at, 853

atque, 849; atque is, 715
 atqui, 853
 Attraction of mood, 826
 Attribute, its agreement, 546, 547
 Attributive adjective, 546
 -*ātūs*, *suffix*, 503
 au, changed in compounds, 517
 audere, with *inf.*, 809
 audire, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812; with
 pres. participle, 813, 835
 auditu, 848
 aurēus, *the coin*, 938
 -*aus*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 123
 aut, 852
 autem, 853; its place, 564
 AUTHORS, LATIN, 945
 Auxiliary *essē*, 303
 -*ax*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 132; *suffix*,
 498

B.

b changed to p, 375
 belli, in connection with domi,
 686; bello Antiōchi, 673; bello
 Persico, 673; in bello, 673
 bene, compared 441; with emere
 & vendere, 619
 benedicere, with *dat.*, 589
 -*bēr*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 96
 -*bilis*, *suffix*, 498
 bini, instead of duo, 238
 bis die, *abl.* of time, 673
 blandiri, with *dat.*, 589
 -*bs*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 124-126
 -*būlūm*, *suffix*, 494
 -*bundūs*, *suffix*, 496

C.

-*c*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 89
 caelum, *decl.*, 191
 Caesūra, 909-911; of the hexa-
 mēter, 915; of the trimēter, 924

Calendar, Roman, 929-936
 Calends, 929
 capio, -ere, conjugated, 331
 Capital initial letters, 3
 cāpītis et capite damnare, 570
 caput, 129
 Cardinal numerals, 228-233
 carere, with *abl.*, 622
 carus, with *dat.*, 598
 CASE-ENDINGS of the 5 declen-
 sions, 54
 Cases, 35, 49; dependent, 50; in-
 dependent, 50; of adjectives &
 nouns used adverbially, 430;
 construction of, 566-690
 casu, *abl.* of manner, 614
 casus obliqui, 50; recti, 50
 Catalectic verses, 907
 causa, w. *gen.* & mea, tua &c., 566. a,
 604; w. *gerund* & *gerundive*, 843
 Causal clauses, w. *subjunctive*, 782
 Causal conjunctions, 452, 456;
 their uses, 781-786, 851
 cave, cave ne, in prohibitions, 806
 cavere, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591
 -*cē*, -*cīnē*, appended to hic, 254
 celare, with two *acc.*, 579
 celer, special forms of, 138, 140
 -*ceps*, Compounds in, 3d *decl.*, 126
 cernere, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812; with
 pres. part., 813
 cerneres, *potential subjunct.*, 750
 certe, certo, 430
 certum est, w. *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 cetēri, *defective*, 204, 728
 Characteristic of stem; 52
 circa, circum, 634; in composi-
 tion, 522; compounds of, w. *acc.*,
 577
 circiter, 635
 circuire, 522
 circumdare, w. *acc.*, 593

cis, citra, 633

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS, 346-399

coarguere, w. **gen.**, 570

cogere, with **in** & **acc.**, 690

cogitare, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812

cognomen, 194; with **dat.**, 594

cognoscere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812

Collective noun, 38; with plural verb, 543

collocare, to *let*, w. **abl.**, 617; with **in** & **abl.**, 689

cōm = cum, in composition, 523; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592

Common gender, 45; common noun, 38; common quantity, 27, 863

commonere, commonefacere, with **gen.**, 568

communis, w. **gen.**, 567. 3; w. **dat.**, 598

Comparative, how formed, 209; how declined, 139; wanting, 224; with **abl.**, 609; with the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, 705; used in reference to *only two* objects, 709; its force increased, 706; with -cūlus, 510; followed by quam ut, quam qui w. **subjunct.**, 795

Comparative conjunctions, 461, 772; comparative value with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, 619

Comparison of adjectives, 207-227; irregular and defective, 220-227; of participles, 227; of adverbs, 227, 440-442; of two qualities of the *same* object, 708

comperire, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812

complere, with **abl.**, 622

complures, **decl.**, 221

compos, with **gen.**, 567. 1

COMPOSITION OF WORDS, 465, 512-531

Compound adjectives, 531; **comp.** forms of the verb, 303-315; **comp. numerals**, 231, 232; **comp. substantives**, 530; declined, 192; **comp. tenses** of the passive, 309; **comp. verbs**, 513-529; **comp. verses**, 903, 925

Compounds, *Quantity*, 883; *syllabification*, 24; of dāre, 572; of essē, 306; of facere, 413; of ire, 407; of *prepositions* with **dat.**, 592; of *prepositions* with **acc.**, 577

con see **com**

concedere, with **ut**, 758

Concessive conjunctions, 458; uses, 767-771

Concessive subjunctive, 753

Concrete substantives, 37; used for abstracts, 691

condemnare, with **gen.**, 570

Conditional conjunctions, 457; use, 787-790; conditional sentences, 787-788; conditional wishes w. dūm, mōdō, 790

conducere, to *hire*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841

conducit, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811

confidere, with **dat.** or **abl.**, 628

congregari, with **in** & **acc.**, 690

CONJUGATION, 35, 270, 295; *First*, 316, 317, 327, 346-350; *Second*, 318, 319, 328, 351-364; *Third*, 320, 321, 329, 365-396; appendix to *Third*, verbs in **IO**, 331, 332; *Fourth*, 322, 323, 330, 397, 398; of deponents, 324-330; *periphrastic*, 311-314; *special forms* in **conj.**, 333-338; of *irregular verbs*, 400-413; of *defective*

verbs, 414-418; of *impersonal verbs*, 419-423

CONJUNCTIONS, 32, 447-462; co-ordinating, 448-453; use of, 849-857; subordinating, 454-462; use of, 749-790; place of, 564

Conjunctive clauses, 755 ff.

Consecutive conjunctions, 460; use of, 756-766

consēqui, with *ut*, 758

considerē, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

consilio, *abl.* of *manner*, 613

Consonants, Classification of, 6

Consonant-stems, 3d *decl.*, 79, 81; of *verbs*, 339, 345

constāre, *to cost*, with *abl.*, 617

constat, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

constituere, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

CONSTRUCTION OF CASES, 566-690

consul, used for *consulatus*, 692

consulere, its construction, 591; with *ut*, 758

contendere, with *ut*, 758

contentus, with *abl.*, 625

Continental pronunciation, 15

continere; *vix me continēo quin*, 766

contingit, with *ut*, 759

contra, 636

Contracted syllables, *Quantity of*, 860; contracted vowels in *conjugation*, 344

convenire, with *in* & *acc.*, 690

convēnit, *w. acc.* & *inf.* 811

convincere, with *gen.*, 570

Co-ordinating conjunctions, 448-453; use of, 849-857

Copulative conjunctions, 449; use of, 849-851

coram, 658

Correlatives, 269, 439

Corresponsive conjunctions, 858

Countries, Gender of names of, 42

creare, with *two acc.*, 578

creari, with *two nom.*, 540

credere, with *dat.*, 589; with *two acc.*, 578; in the *pass. w. two nom.*, 540; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

credēres, potential subjunct., 750

credibile est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

crime or charge, *gen.* of, 570

crimine or nomine, with *gen.*, 570

-crūm, *suffix*, 495

cujas, *patrial* *adject.*, 264

-cūlūm, *suffix*, 494

-cūlūs, *suffix*, 480, 510

cum, *prep.*, 659; with *abl.* of *manner*, 613; in composition, 523

cum, *conjunction*; *cum temporal*, 774; *cum, whenever*, 740; *cum causal*, 786; *cum concessive*, 769; *cum historical*, 774; *cum primum*, 773; *cum quis*, 723, 762

cum-tum, 857

cunctus, Nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687

-cundūs, *suffix*, 496

-cunque, appended to pronouns, 258; followed by *indic.*, 748

cupere, *w. inf.* or *w. acc.* & *inf.*, 814

cupidus, with *gen.*, 567. 1

cura, *ut*, *imperat.* phrase, 806

curare, *w. ut*, 758; *w. gerundive*, 841

D.

Dactylic Hexameter, 914 ff.

damnare, with *gen.*, 570. 1

dare, 349; with *two acc.*, 578; with *two dat.*, 595; with *gerundive*, 841

Dates, Roman, 931; of year, 935; how to turn into English, 934

DATIVE, 49; *pl. 3d decl.*, 149; *4th decl.*, 172; SYNTAX, 587-602; *indirect object*, *advantage*, 587; with

- intransitive* verbs, 589; with *transitive* verbs, 588; with *compounds* of *ad*, *ante*, &c., 592; with verbs of *twofold* construction, 593; of *purpose*, with verbs of *giving* and *receiving*, 595; *ethical*, 602; of *agency*, with *gerundive*, 596, 741, 840; with *passives*, 590, 597; of *possession*, 594; with *adjectives*, 598-600; with *substantives*, 601
- de**, 657; with *accusare*, 570; negative meaning in compounds, 531. 2
- dea*, *deus*, *decl.*, 59, 67
- debere*, with *inf.*, 809; with the force of the *potential*, 747
- decedere*, with *abl.*, 620
- decet*, *dedecet*, with *acc.*, 583
- declarare*, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
- DECLENSION**, 35, 51; general rules, 55; *First*, 56-62; *Second*, 63-71; *Third*, 78-170; *Fourth*, 171-175; *Fifth*, 176-180; of *adjectives*, 72-77, 137-142; of *compounds*, 192. *Case-endings* of the 5 declensions, 54
- Defective substantives*, in *case*, 182-185; in *number*, 186-188; *defective adjectives*, 203, 204; *defective comparison*, 224, 225; of *adverbs*, 442; *defective verbs*, 414-418
- deficere*, with *acc.*, 589
- desigere*, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
- Degree of difference*, in the *abl.*, 612
- delectari*, with *abl.*, 604
- demergere*, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
- demonstrare*, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
- Demonstrative pronouns**, 252-254; position, 561; agreement, 551, 552; where not used, 716
- Denominative inceptives**, 391, 395; *denominative verbs*, 475-479
- depellere*, with *abl.*, 620
- Dependent cases**, 50
- Dependent clause**, 742; in *indirect* discourse, 825; dependent uses of the *subjunctive*, 755 ff.
- Deponents**, 276; conjugation of, 324-330; of the *first* conj., 350; of the *second*, 364; of the *third*, 396; of the *fourth*, 399; principles, 831
- DERIVATION OF WORDS**, 465, 467-511; of *adjectives*, 496-511; of *verbs*, 470-479; of *substantives*, 480-495; of *adverbs*, 425-434
- Desiderative verbs**, 473
- designare*, with *two acc.*, 578
- desinere*, with *inf.*, 809
- Determinative pronouns**, 255
- detertere*, with *abl.*, 620; with *ne* or *quominus*, 764
- deus*, *decl.*, 59, 67
- Diaeresis**, in pronunciation, 13; in prosody, 892, 909
- Diastole**, 895
- dicere*, with *two acc.*, 578; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
- dici*, with *two nom.*, 540; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 821
- dictu*, 848
- dixus**, *Adjectives in*, 216; quantity, 886
- dies*, 180; in *diem*, 670; *ante diem*, 931
- differre*, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
- difficilis*, 215; *adverb.*, 429; with *dat.*, 598; with *gerund.* or *supine*, 848
- diffidere*, with *dat.*, 589, 628
- dignari*, with *abl.*, 625

dignus, with *abl.*, 625; dignus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c
 diligens, with *gen.*, 567. 2
 Dimēter, 904
 Diminutive substantives, 480, 481; adjectives, 510; verbs, 474
 Diphthongs, 5
 Dipody, 906
 Direct discourse, 823; dir. object, in the *acc.*, 574-577; direct questions, 796-800
dis-, inseparable *prep.*, 516; compounds of, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 discēre, with *inf.*, 809; with *ā*, for docēri, 579
 discernēre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 discessu, *abl.* of time, 673
 discrepāre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 450; use of, 852
 dispar, with *dat.*, 598
 displicēre, with *dat.*, 589
 displicet, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 dissentīre, with *ā* and *abl.*, 621
 dissimilis, 215; with *dat.*, 598
 Distance *how far* in the *acc.* or *abl.*, 681; of time how long before or after, 675
 distāre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Distich, 926; Elegiac D., 919
 distinguēre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Distributive numerals, 237, 238
 docēre, with *two acc.*, 579
 dolēre, with *acc.*, 575; with *abl.*, 604; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815; with *quod*, 783
 dolo, fraude, *abl.* of manner, 614
 domi bellique, 686; domus, 173; used like name of town, 686
 donāre, with *twofold* construction, 593
 donec = quamdiū, 776, 777

Double questions, 798
 Dubitative subjunctive, 754
 dubito & non dubito quin, 766
 dubium non est quin, 766
 ducēre, with *dat.* of purpose, 595; with *gen.*, 569
 dulcis, with *dat.*, 589
 dum, while, with *pres.*, 734, 776; until, 777; if only, 790
 dummodo, 790

E.

e, Quantity of, in -ei, 5th decl., 178, 861; changed to -i, 517
 -ē, Greek nouns in, 1st decl., 60
 -ē, Nouns in, 3d decl., 84; *abl. sing.*, 3d decl., 144
 ē, ex, 660; in composition, 524; with negative power, 531. 2
 edicēre, with *ut*, 758
 edocēre, with *two acc.*, 579
 efficēre, with *two acc.*, 578; with *ut*, 758
 egēnus, compar., 217
 egēre, with *abl.* or *gen.*, 622
 -ēis, suffix in patronymics, 484
 ejicēre, with *abl.*, 620
 ejus, eorum, earum, as possessives, 247, 711
 ejusmodi, w. *ut* or *qui* & *subjunct.*, 793. a
 -ēlā, suffix, 489
 Elegiac Distich, 919; E. Pentameter, 918
 eligēre, with *two acc.*, 578
 Elision, 887-889
 -ēllūs, suffix, 481, 510
 emēre, w. *abl.*, 617; bene, male, 619
 Emotion, verbs of, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815; with *quod*, 785
 Emphasis, as affected by the order of words, 565

-en, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 93
 Enclitics, control accent, 31; quantity, 880
 Endings in declension, 54; in comparison, 209; in conjugation, 294
 -endūs, -undūs, endings of *gerundive*, 337
 English method of pronunciation, 16-20
 enim & nam, 854; position, 564
 Ennehemimēres, 912
 -ensīs, *suffix*, 501, 507
 -entīōr, -entissimūs, 216
 -entūs, *suffix*, 502
 Epenthēsis, 896
 Epicene nouns, 47
 Epistolary tenses, 740
 eques, in *collective sense*, 698
 Equivalents of supine, 848
 -ēr, Nouns in, *2d decl.*, 64, 65
 -ēr, -ēr, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 96-98
 -ēr, -ā, -ūm, Adject. in, 74-76
 -ēr, -īs, -ē, Adjectives in, 138; *superl.*, 213
 -ērē for -ērūnt (*Perf. Ind.*), 334
 erga, 637
 ergo, 855; with *gen.*, 566. s
 erudīre, w. *abl.*, 607
 erumpēre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 620
 -ēs, Greek nouns in, *1st decl.*, 60;
 -ēs, -ēs, nouns in, *3d decl.*, 108-110; -ēs, *nom. plur.*, Greek nouns, 157; proper names in -ēs, 151
 -escō, verbs in, 472
 esse, conjugated, 303; with *abl.*, 617; with *gen.* as *predicate*, 571; with *gen.* of *value*, 569; with *gen.* & *abl.* of *quality*, 556. s., 615; with *dat.* of *possessor*, 594; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; the *inf.* esse as *subject*, 808; as *object*, 809

est, qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. b.
 ēt, 849; used after *multi*, 850; et is, et is non, 715
 etēnim, 854
 Ethical Dative, 602
 etiam, 849; with *compar.*, 706
 etiamsi, w. *indie.* & *subjunct.*, 770
 etsi, 771
 -ētūm, *suffix*, 482
 ETYMOLOGY, 1, 32-464
 eu, 11; vocative-ending, 69
 -eus, Greek nouns in, *2d decl.*, 69
 -ēūs, *suffix*, 500; -ēūs, *suffix*, 506
 evadēre, with *two nom.*, 540
 evēnit, with *ut*, 759
 -ex, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 133
 Exclamations, in *acc.*, 585
 Existence, General expressions of, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b
 existimāre, with *two acc.*, 578; *pass. w. two nom.*, 540
 expēdit, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 expers, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 explēre, with *abl.*, 622
 exsistēre, with *two nom.*, 540
 exsistunt qui, with *subjunct.*, 793
 exspectatiōne, *abl.* of *comparison*, 611
 External qualities in the *abl.*, 616
 extra, 638
 extrēmus, with *subst.* to denote *part* thereof, 704

F.

faba, in a *collective sense*, 698
 fac, with *ut* or *subjunct.*, 806
 facēre, with *two acc.*, 578; with *gen.*, 569; with *ut*, 758; with *pres. partic.*, 835; facere non possum quin, 766
 facilis, 215; *adv.*, 429; w. *dat.* 598; w. *ad* & *gerund* or w. *supine*, 848

factu, 848
 fallit, with *acc.*, 583
 fama est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 familiāris, with *gen.* or *dat.*, 598
 familias, old *gen.*, 58
 fas est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811; with
 supine, 847
 fatēri, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 favēre, with *dat.*, 589
 Feet, metrical, 898
 Feminine, Rule of gender, 42, 43
 fertur, with *nom.* & *inf.*, 821
 -*ficus*, Adjectives in, *compared*,
 216
 fidēre, with *dat.* or *abl.*, 589, 628
 fiēri, with *two nom.*, 540; with *gen.*,
 571; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595;
 quantity, 412, 861
 fiēri non potest quin, 766
 Fifth Declension, 176-178
 Figures of prosody, 887-897
 filia, filius, 59, 67
 Final conjunctions, 459; *use* of,
 756-766
 Final syllables, *Quantity*, 877-879
 Finite verb, 285
 First Conjugation, *Active*, 316;
 Passive, 317; *Deponent*, 327;
 Verbs of, 346-350
 First Declension, 56-62
 fit, with *ut*, 759
 flagitāre, with *two acc.*, 580; with
 ut, 758
 flocci, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 for, corresponding to *dat.*, 588
 fore *ut*, to express *fut. inf.*, 819
 Formation of the *Genitive*, 3d
 decl., 82-136; of the *Principal*
 Parts, 339-399; of the *Tenses*,
 298-302
 the former, hic, ille, 713
 Fourth Conjugation, *Active*, 322;

Passive, 323; *Deponent*, 330;
Verbs of, 347-399
 Fourth Declension, 171-175
 Fractions, denoted by *ordinals*,
 236; of *weight*, 942
 fraude, *abl.* of *manner*, 614
 Frequentative verbs, 471
 fretus, w. *abl.*, 625
 frugi, *indecl.*, 205; *compar.*, 222
 frui, with *abl.*, 626
 fugit, with *acc.*, 583
 fungi, with *abl.*, 626
 Future I & II, 280; how formed,
 298, 300; *wanting* in the sub-
 junct., 302, 746; *Fut. Inf.*, 819;
 Fut. Inf. Pass., 315, 847; *Fut. Inf.*
 of *deponents*, 325; *Fut. Parti-*
 ciple, 301; *syntax*, 736-739
 futūrum esse, *ut* for *fut. inf.*, 819

G.

gallina, in a *collective* sense, 698
 gaudēre, with *abl.*, 604; with *quod*,
 783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815
 GENDER, 35; natural or gramma-
 tical, 39, 48; of *adjectives*, 48;
 in *1st decl.*, 61, 62; in *2d decl.*,
 70, 71; in *3d decl.*, 158-170; in
 4th decl., 174, 175; in *5th decl.*,
 179, 180; of the *predicate*, 544
 General relatives, 258, 259; fol-
 lowed by the *indic.*, 748
 General value, expressed by the
 abl., 618
 GENITIVE, 49; endings of, 51; for-
 mation in *3d decl.*, 82; *gen. pl.* in
 -*tum* for -*orum*, *2d decl.*, 68; of
 3d decl. in -*tum*, 146, 147; in -*um*,
 156; in -*ius*, 77; SYNTAX, 566-
 573; with *substantives*, 566; sub-
 jective, 566. 1. 4; in *predicate*
 571; objective, 566. 2; of *personal*

pronouns, 566.3; partitive, 566.6; of quality, 566.8; answering the question *how old?* 678; of specification, 566.7; with adjectives, 567; with verbs of *valuing*, 569; with verbs of *remembering*, 568; with verbs of *accusing*, 570; with *esse* & *fieri*, 571; with *impersonals*, 572, 584; of *gerund*, 843

GERUND & GERUNDIVE, 288, 289, 298; uses, 839–846; with *est*, 840; gerund changed into gerundive, 842; *gen.*, 843; *dat.*, 844; *acc.*, 845; *abl.*, 846; gerundive with verbs of *giving*, *taking*, *sending* &c., 841

gloriāri, w. *abl.*, 604; w. *quod*, 783
Glyconic verse, 925. 4

gracilis, *superlat.*, 215

gratia, with *gen.*, 566.8; with *gerund* & *gerundive*, 843

gratiam agere, with *quod*, 783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815

gratus, with *dat.*, 598

gravis, with *dat.*, 598

Greek nouns of 1st decl., 60; of 2d decl., 69; of 3d decl., 83, 88, 117, 122, 150–157

H.

habere, with two *acc.*, 578; *pass.* with two *nom.*, 540; with *gen.*, 569; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; habeo quod, with *subjunct.*, 793. b

Hephthemimēres, 912

Heroic verse, 914

Heteroclitēs, 190

Heterogeneous nouns, 191

Hexameter, 904; Dactylic Hexameter, 914–917

hiatus, 888

hic, 252; its use 712; hic, ille, *the latter, the former*, 713; hicine, hiccē, 254

Historical Infinitive, 809; Historical Perfect, 737; Historical Present, 732; Historical tenses, 743

hora nona, *abl.* of *time*, 673

Horace, *Metres* of, 926–928

horrere, with *acc.*, 575

hortari, with *ut*, 758

Hortatory subjunctive, 752

hostis, in a *collective* sense, 698

how old? 678

humi, like name of *town*, 686

humilis, *superl.*, 215

Hypothetical sentences, 787, 788

I.

i & j, but one character, 2, 891

ī, *gen.* ending of the 2d decl., 63; for -ī from nouns in -īus, -īum, 63; *voc.* ending, 2d decl., 67; *dat.* ending, 2d decl., 77; stems in i, 3d decl., 79, 80; Greek nouns in ī, 3d decl., 88; *voc.* ending of 3d decl., 154; *abl.* ending of the same, 140, 142, 144; i, *connecting* vowel in compound subst., 530

-īa, *neut. pl.* 3d decl., 140, 142, 145

-īā, *suffix*, 488

-īādēs, *suffix*, 487

Iambic Strophe, 927. 15

Iambic Trimeter, 922–924

-īānūs, *suffix*, 505

-īās, *suffix*, 487

-īcīūs, *suffix*, 501

Ictus, 900

-īcūs, *suffix*, 501, 506, 509

id, *adverbially*, 586

id agere, with *ut* & *subjunct.*, 758

id quod = quod, 581

idem, 255, 533; used *adverbially*, 717

Ides of the Calendar, 929

-īdēs, -īdēs, *suffixes*, 487

idonēus, with *ād*, 599; idonēus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c; with *gerund & gerundive*, 844

-īdūs, *suffix*, 497

igītur, 855; its place, 564

ignārus, with *gen.*, 567

-īlē, *suffix*, 484

-īlis, -īlis, *suffixes*, 498, 501; *superl.* of adjectives in -īlis, 215

Illative conjunctions, 453, 855

ille, 255; its use, 712, 713

-illimūs, *superl.* ending, 215

-illūs, *suffix*, 481

-īm, *acc.* ending, 3d *decl.*, 143; adverbs in, 432, 433

immēmor, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imminēre, with *dat.*, 589

immo, in *answers*, 800

Imparissyllabic nouns, 3d *decl.*, 81

impatiens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

impedire, w. quomīnus or ne, 764

impellēre, with *ut*, 758

imperāre, with *dat.*, 589; with *ut*, 758

Imperative, 283; personal endings, 294; of dicēre, ducēre, &c., 336; of scire, 338; uses, 804-806; supplied by cura ut, fac ut, 806; by the subjunctive, 752, 805

Imperative phrases, 806

Imperative sentence in *indirect discourse*, 825

Imperfect, 280, 298, 299; its use, 735; in letters, 740; *Imperf. Subjunct.* in conditional sentences, 788. III

Impersonal verbs, 419-423; their

conjugation, 421; with *acc.* 583; with *acc. & gen.*, 584

impetrāre, with *ut*, 758

implēre, with *abl.*, 622

imponēre, with *dat.*, 592

impos, impōtens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imprimēre, with *in & abl.*, 689

imus, to denote a *part*, 704

in, with the *acc.*, 670; with verbs of *assembling*, 690; to denote *time for how long*, 677; with the *abl.*, 671; to denote *time when*, 673; with verbs of *placing*, 689; to denote *place*, 682; in composition, 525; with *negative power*, 531. 2; in compounds with *dat.*, 592

-inā, *suffix*, 485

inānis, with *abl.*, 625

Inceptive (Inchoative) verbs, 392-395, 472

incipēre, with *inf.*, 809

incitāre, with *ut*, 758

incusāre, with *gen.*, 570

Indeclinable nouns, 181; gender of, 44; adjectives, 205, 226

Indefinite adjectives, 268; Indefinite pronouns, 265-267; use, 721

Independent cases, 50

Independent uses of the *Subjunctive*, 749-754

INDEX OF VERBS, *pag.* 274; Index to the metres of Horace, 928

Indicative, 282; use of, 747, 748

indigēre, with *abl.* or *gen.*, 622

indignus, with *abl.*, 625; indignus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c

Indirect discourse, 824-829

Indirect object, 587

Indirect questions, 801-803

inducēre, with *pres. partic.*, 835

induere, construction of, 593
indulgere, with **dat.**, 589
ab infante, 691
infimus, to denote a *part*, 704
INFINITIVE, 287; its use, 807–809;
 as object, 809; as subject, 808;
 its tenses, 818; historical inf.,
 809; fut. inf. with **fore**, 819
Inflection, 34, 35
infra, 641
ingrātus, with **dat.**, 598
inimicus, with **dat.** or **gen.**, 598
initio, **abl.** of *time*, 673
injucundus, with **dat.**, 598
injuria, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
inquam, 416; its use, 823
insciūs, with **gen.**, 567. 1
inscribere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689
Inseparable prepositions, 516
insimulare, with **gen.**, 570
instituere, with **abl.**, 607
intellegere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
inter, 640; in compounds with
dat., 592; **inter se**, for *reciprocal*
action, 711
interdicere, **constr.**, 621
interesse, with **dat.**, 592
interest, with **gen.**, 572; degree of
importance, 573; with reference
 to *which*, 573
INTERJECTIONS, 32, 463–464
intermittere nihil quin, 766
interrogare, with **two acc.**, 580
Interrogative adverbs, 796; **con-**
junctions, 462, 797; **pronouns**,
 260–264, 796; **place thereof**, 562;
 use of **Interrogatives**, 796–803
Interrogative sentences, 796 ff.,
 in *indirect questions*, 825
intra, 639
Intransitive verbs, 273; *imper-*
sonal passive, 590; with **dat.**,

589; **w. acc.** of *kindred* mean-
 ing, 576; becoming *transitive*
 by composition, 577
-inūs, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507
inutilis, with **dat.**, 598, 599; with
gerund, 844
invidere, with **dat.**, 589
-iō, **Verbs in**, of **3d conjug.**, 331
Ionic rhythm, 927. 19
ipse, 255; use, with **reflexive**, 718
-ir, **Nouns in**, **2d decl.**, 64, 66
irasci, with **dat.**, 589
Irregular adjectives, 77; **irreg.**
comparison, 220–223; of **ad-**
verbs, 441; **irreg. conjugation**,
 400; **irreg. nouns**, 181–192
is, 247; use, 553, 714; **is qui**, with
subjunct, 793. a
-is, **-is**, **Nouns in**, **3d decl.**, 111–
 114; **-is**, **acc. pl. ending**, **3d decl.**,
 148; **Greek nouns in**, **3d decl.**,
 154; **-is**, *suffix* in *patronymics*,
 487
-is, **-ē**, **Adjectives in**, 139, 140
-iscō, **Verbs in**, 391
Islands, *Gender of names of*, 42;
constr. like names of towns, 683
isque, 715
-issimūs, in *superl.*, 211
iste, 252; use of, 712
ita ut, 759; **ita est**, *yes*, 799
itāque, 855
-itārē, **Frequentatives in**, 471
-itās, **-itā**, **-itēs**, **-itūdō**, *suffixes*, 488
-itūs, *suffix*, 503; **adverbs in**, 434
-iūm, **gen. pl. 3d decl.**, 98, 140, 146
-iūm, **gen. of nouns in**, 63; *suffix*,
 486
-iūs, **gen. sing. 2d decl.**, 77
-iūs, **gen. of nouns in**, 63; **proper**
nouns in, 67; *suffix*, 501, 508, 509

-*ivūs*, *suffix*, 501
-*ix*, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 134

J.

j & *i*, 2; affecting the quantity of the syllable, 864
jubēre, with *acc.*, 589; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 814; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 822
jucundus, with *dat.*, 598; with *gerund* or *supine*, 848
judicāre, with *two acc.*, 578; *pass.* w. *two nom.*, 540
jugum, its quantity, 864
Juppiter, 97
jurātus, *active*, 278
jure, *abl.* of *manner*, 614
jussu, *abl.* of *cause*, 604
justum est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
juvāre, with *acc.*, 589
Juvenālis, *abl. sing.*, 144. 4
juvēnis, *abl. sing.*, 144. 3; *gen. pl.*, 146. 2; how compared, 224. III
juxta, 642

L.

-*l*, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 90-92; *adjectives* in, 141
laborāre, w. *abl.*, 604; w. *ut*, 758
laetāri, with *abl.*, 604
laetus, with *abl.*, 604
Latin Authors, 945
Latin Grammar, 1
the latter, *hic*, *ille*, 713
Lesser Ionics, 927. 19
Letters, 3-7; names of, 3; *gender* of, 181
liber, with *abl.*, 623
liberāre, with *abl.*, 620
libet, with *dat.*, 421
libra, *weight*, 942
licēre, *to be for sale*, with *abl.*, 617
licet, w. *dat.*, 421; *conjunction*, 768

Like cases in substantives, 55
liquet, with *dat.*, 421
locāre, *to let*, with *abl.*, 617; with *gerundive*, 841
Locative case, 683
loco, *locis*, 687
Logaoedic verse, 925
Long vowels, 10, 859
longe, with *superl.*, 707
longius, without *quam*, 610
longum est, 747
longus, with *acc.*, 679
-*ls*, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 127
ludis, *abl.* of *time*, 673

M.

maerēre, with *abl.*, 604
magis, *maxīme*, in *adverbial comparison*, 218, 708
magni, *parvi*, *gen.* of *value*, 569
magno, *parvo*, *abl.* of *value*, 618
major, *minor natu*, 608, 678
male emēre, *vendēre*, 619
maledicēre, with *dat.*, 598
malle, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 814
mandāre, with *ut*, 758
manēre, with *two nom.*, 540
Masculine *caesūra*, 911
Masculine *gender*, 40, 41
Materials, Names of, 38
matūrus, compared, 214
maximam partem, *adverbially*, 586
maxīme, in forming *superl.*, 218
Means or instrument, *abl.* of, 605-607
Measure in prosody, 905, 906; Roman measures, 937-943; of length how expressed, 680
medēri, with *dat.*, 589
medius, to denote *a part*, 704
memīni, with *gen.* or *acc.*, 568

memor, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 -mēn, *suffix*, 494
 mente, *abl.* of manner, 613
 -mentūm, *suffix*, 494
 mercāri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 617
 -mēt, appended to pronouns, 251
 Metres of Horace, 926, 927
 Metrical Feet, 898
 metuēre, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591;
 with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 metus est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 meum est, 571
 Middle syllables, Quantity, 866-
 876
 miles, in collective sense, 698
 mille, 230
 mināri, with *dat.*, 589
 minīmi, *gen.* of value, 569
 minīmo, *abl.* of value, 618
 minor natu, 608, 678
 minōris, *gen.* of value, 569
 misēret, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584
 mittēre, w. *dat.* of purpose, 595;
 with *gerundive*, 841
 Mobilia substantiva, 46
 moderāri, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591
 Modification in compounds, 512
 modo, *abl.* of manner, 613
 modo, if only, w. *subjunct.*, 790
 molestus, with *dat.*, 598
 monēre, with *ut*, 758
 Money, Roman, 937
 -mōniā, *suffix*, 488
 Monomēter, 904
 Monosyllabic nouns, defective,
 184, 185
 Monosyllables, Quantity of, 880-
 882
 Months, Gender of, 40; in Ro-
 man calendar, 929
 Moods of the verb, 35, 281-285;
 attraction of, 826

mora, 899
 more, *abl.* of manner, 613
 mori, w. two *nom.*, 540
 mos est, with *ut*, 759
 movēre, with *ut*, 758
 -ms, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 124-126
 multāre, with *abl.*, 570
 multi et., 850
 Multiplicative numerals, 239
 multo, degree of difference, 612;
 abl. of price, 618; with *compar.*
 & *superl.*, 706, 707
 muta cum liquida, in prosody, 863

N.

nam, appended to interrogatives,
 263; nam, namque, 854
 Names of men and women, 193-
 196
 Names of towns, Construction of,
 683-686
 Names of verses, 904
 narrāre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 nasci, w. two *nom.*, 540
 natus, with *acc.*, 678; natu, with
 grandis, 608
 navibus, *abl.* of manner, 614
 nē, that not, 756, 762; after verbs
 of hindering, 764; after verbs
 of fearing, 761; in prohibi-
 tions, 805; ne quis, 723, 762; with
 optative subjunct., 751; with
 concessive subjunct., 753, 769
 nē, interrogative particle, 797;
 ne...an, 798; ne...quidem, 564
 nec...nec, 857
 necessariū, with *gen.* or *dat.*, 598
 necesse est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 necne, or not, 798, 803
 necūbi, 762
 nefas, 181; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811;
 with *supine*, 847

negāre, with **acc. & inf.**, 812
Negative Conditions (*nisi*, *si non*), 789; **negative Imperative**, with *ne*, 752, 805; **negative of Optative subjunct.**, *ne*, 751; **negative of Potential subjunct.**, *non*, 750; **negative of Concessive subjunct.**, *ne*, 753; **negative of Dubitative subjunct.**, *non*, 754; **negative with partic.**, 834
nemo, 182; equivalent to *nullus*, 700; *nemo est qui*, with **subjunct.**, 793. b
nequam, **indecl.**, 205, 222
neque, **and not**, *neque quisquam*, *neque ullus*, etc., 851; *neque* . . . *neque*, 857
neque is, 715; *neque enim*, &c., 856
nescius, w. **gen.**, 567. 1
Neuter adjectives or pronouns used adverbially, 429, 586
Neuter gender, 44; like cases, 55
Neutral passives, 279
neve, with **subjunct.**, 757
nihil, 181; its oblique cases, 700; **used adverbially**, 586; *nihil abest quin*, 766; *nihil antiquius habere quam*, w. *ut*, 758; *nihil est quod*, w. **subjunct.**, 793. b; *nihil praetermitto*, *intermitto quin*, 766
nihili, **gen. of value**, 569
nihilo, **abl. of value**, 618
nimis, with **gen.**, 566. c
nisi & si non, 787, 789; *nisi quis*, 723, 762
nit, with **abl.**, 627; with *ut*, 758
no, 799
nobilitas, used for *nobiles*, 693
nocere, with **dat.**, 589
noli, with **inf.** in *prohibitions*, 806

nolle, with **acc. & inf.**, 814
nomen, 194; *nomen est*, w. **dat.**, 594
nominare, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** with **two nom.**, 540
NOMINATIVE, 49; **plur.** in *-ī*, 3d **decl.**, 140, 142, 145; in *-ēs*, 157; case of *subject*, 534; of the *predicate*, 540
Nominative with Inf., 821, 822
non quin, with **subjunct.**, 785
non quo, *non quod*, w. **subjunct.**, 785
Nones, in the Roman month, 929
nonne, **interrog. particle**, 797
nostras, **patrial adjective**, 250
nostri, *nostrum*, 566. 3
Noun, see **Substantive**
Nouns substantive & adjective, 33
-ns, **Nouns in**, 3d **decl.**, 127, 128
nubere, with **dat.**, 589
nudare, with **abl.**, 622
nudus, with **abl.**, 623
num, 797; *num quis*, 723, 762
Number, 35, 49; of the *predicate*, 541, 542
Numbers & persons of verbs, 293
NUMERALS, 228–242; **numeral adjectives**, 228–233; **num. adverbs**, 241; **position**, 561
nuntiare, with **in & acc.**, 690; with **acc. & inf.**, 812
-nus, **suffix**, 501
nusquam, with **gen.**, 566. c

O.

-ō, **Nouns in**, 3d **decl.**, 85–87; *-ō*, **Greek nouns in**, 152
o, with **acc.** in **exclamations**, 585
ob, 643; in **composition**, 526; in **compounds with dat.**, 592
Object, *direct*, 574; *indirect*, 587; of **transitive verbs becomes subject in pass.**, 574

Objective genitive, 566. 2
 oblivisci, with *gen.*, 568
 oboedire, with *dat.*, 589
 obsecrâre, with *ut*, 758
 obsistere, obstâre, with *ne*, *quomînus*, 764
 obtrectâre, with *dat.*, 589
 odiôsus, with *dat.*, 598
 Official titles to indicate *time*, 692
 -ôlûs, *suffl.*, 481, 510
 omnes, 726
 -ôn, for -ûm, *Greek* ending, 2d decl., 69; -ôn, *gen. pl.*, 3d decl., 156
 onustus, with *abl.*, 623
 opëra alicûjus, to denote the *agent*, 606
 opëram dare, with *ut*, 758
 opinio est, with *acc. & inf.*, 811
 opiniône, *abl. of comparison*, 611
 oportet, w. *acc. & inf.*, 811
 oppidum, in apposition with names of *towns*, 684, 685
 optâre, with *ut*, 758
 Optative subjunctive, 751
 opus, with *supine*, 847; opus est, with *abl.*, 624; with *acc. & infin.*, 811
 -ôr, Nouns in, 3d decl., 99-101; *suffl.*, 489
 -ôr, -ûs, Adjectives in, 139, 209, 210
 orâre, with *two acc.*, 580; with *ut*, 758
 oratio obliqua, 824; or. recta, 823
 orbâre, with *abl.*, 622
 orbis, with *abl.*, 623
 Order of words, 558-565
 Ordinal numerals, 234-236
 ordinë, *abl. of manner*, 614
 Origin, expressed by *abl.*, 604
 Orpheus, 154
 -ôs, for -ûs, *Greek* ending, 2d decl.,

69; -ôs, *Latin* nouns, 3d decl., 115-117; *Greek* nouns, 3d decl., 153; -os, *gen. 3d decl.*, 153; *nom. 3d decl.*, 155
 -ôsûs, *suffl.*, 502
 -ox, Nouns in, 3d decl., 135

P.

in pace, *abl. of time*, 673
 paenitet, with *acc. & gen.*, 584
 par, with *dat.*, 598; with *acc. & inf.*, 811; par est, *it would be fair*, 747
 PARADIGM CHARTS, 54, 302
 parcëre, with *dat.*, 589
 Parisyllabic nouns, 3d decl., 80
 particeps, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 Participial adjectives with *gen.*, 567. 2
 PARTICIPLE, 290, 291; of *deponents*, 325; how declined, 198; *comparison*, 227; use of, 829-835; used *appositively*, 833; *attributively*, 832; with *negative*, 834; in *compound infin.*, 817
 Particles, 36
 Partitive genitive, 566. 6
 Parts of the body in the *plur.*, 696
 Parts of speech, 32
 parvi, parvo, *gen. & abl. of value*, 569, 618
 a parvûlo, 691
 Passive voice, 271, 276; *pass. tenses* how formed, 302, 309; *pass. participles*, 830; *passive* used *impersonally*, 423; of *intransitives*, 590; followed by *dat.*, 597
 paterfamilias, 58
 pati, with *acc. & inf.*, 814
 patiens, with *gen.*, 567. 2
 Patrial adjectives, 250, 264, 507

Patronymics, 487
 pauci, *defective*, 204
 pedes, in *collective sense*, 698
 pedibus, *abl.* of manner, 614
 pendere, with *gen.*, 569
 penes, 644; quantity, 879. 2
 Pentameter, 904; Elegiac, 918-921
 Penthemimères, 912
 penult, 25
 per, 645, 674; in composition, 527;
 in compounds with *acc.*, 577; to
 denote the *agent*, 606
 PERFECT, 280; its formation, 344;
 tenses formed upon it, 300;
 Perf. Ind. special terminations,
 294; special forms, 333; Perfect
 Infin., 300; Perf. Part., 301; Perf.
 Subjunct., 300; its uses, 737;
 Perf. definite, 737; its *sequence*
 of tenses, 744; in letters, 740
 perficere, with *ut*, 758
 perfrui, with *abl.*, 626
 perfungi, with *abl.*, 626
 pergere, with *infin.*, 809
 periculum est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 Periphrastic conjugation, 311-
 315; uses, 741; Indic., 747
 perire, *pass.* to perdere, 408
 peritus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 permittere, with *ut*, 758; with *ge-*
rundive, 841
 Personal endings of the verb, 294
 Personal pronouns, 244-247; not
 expressed, 710; expressed in
acc. with *inf.*, 820
 Persons, 35, 243, 293; names of,
 193-196; with different termi-
 nations, 46
 persuadere, *w. dat.*, 589; *w. ut*, 758
 petere, *w. two acc.*, 580; with *ut*, 758
 Pherecratean verse, 925. 3
 Phonetic pronunciation, 9-14

PHONOLOGY, 1, 2-31
 piget, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584
 Place, Relations of, 682-690
 placere, with *dat.*, 589
 placet, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 plenus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 plerique, *defective*, 204
 Pluperfect, 280, 300; use, 738
 Plural, 49; with change of mean-
 ing, 189; wanting, 187; plural
 expressions to be noted, 697;
 of proper names, 699
 Pluralia tantum, 188
 plurimi, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 plurimo, *abl.* of *value*, 618
 pluris, *gen.* of *value*, 569, 619
 plus, 221; without *quam*, 618
 POETICAL FORMS, 858-927
 Polysyndeton, 850
 ponere, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
 porcus, in a *collective sense*, 698
 poscere, with *two acc.*, 580
 Position, in prosody, 862
 Positive, 208; wanting, 224
 Possessive pronoun, 249; not ex-
 pressed, 710; as subjective *gen.*,
 566. 4
 Possessor, *dat.* of, 594
 possum, poteram, *I might, I*
could, 747; with *infin.*, 809
 post, 646; to denote distance of
time, 675; in compounds with
dat., 592
 posteritas, used for posteri, 693
 postquam (posteaquam) *w. perf.*,
 737, 773
 postulare, *w. two acc.*, 580; with
ut, 758
 Potential subjunctive, 750
 potiri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 626
 potis, pote, 308
 potus & pransus, *active*, 278

prae, 662; in composition, *very*, 531. s; in compounds with **dat.**, 592
praebere se, with **acc.**, 578
praecipere, with **ut**, 758
praeditus, with **abl.**, 623
praenomen, 194
Praenomens abbreviated, 197
praestare se, with **acc.**, 578
praeter, 647; in compounds with **acc.**, 577
praeterit, with **acc.**, 583
praeternittere nihil quin, 766
praetor, for in **praetura**, 692
precari, with **ut**, 758
PREDICATE, 534; its place, 558; its number, 541-543; its gender, 544; with different persons, 545; predicate adjective & substantive in **acc. & inf.**, 817; predicate **gen.**, 571; pred. **abl.**, 616
PREPOSITIONS, 32; List of, 443-446; uses, 629-671; with the **acc.**, 629-654; with the **abl.**, 655-664; with the **acc. & abl.**, 665-671; place, 563; in composition, 516; assimilation of, 518
PRESENT Indicative, 280; tenses formed upon it, 298; Pres. Subjunct., 298; Pres. Imperat., 299; Pres. Infinitive, tenses formed upon it, 299; Pres. Partic., 298; Present, its uses, 731-734; to express a past action, 733; for the historical perfect, 732; with **dum**, 734
Price, **abl.** of, 617
pridie, with **acc.**, 930
prima pueritia, 673
Primitive adverbs, 424; primitive verbs, 470; primitive and derivative words, 466

primus, to denote a *part*, 704
Principal clause, 742, in *indirect discourse*, 825
Principal parts of verb, 296; their formation, 339-399
Principal tenses, 743
Principal term of compounds, 512
principio, **abl.** of *time*, 673
prior & primus instead of *ad-verbs*, 550
priusquam, 779, 780
privare, with **abl.**, 622
pro, 661; its *quantity* in compounds, 884
prodesse, with **dat.**, 589
prodest, with **acc. & inf.**, 811
prohibere, with **quominus**, 764
Prohibitions, 805
proinde, 855; **proinde ac si**, 772
Pronominal adjectives, 269
PRONOUNS, 32, 243-269; special uses, 710-729; personal, 244; reflexive, 248; demonstrative, 252; determinative, 255; relative, 265; interrogative, 260; indefinite, 256; their agreement, 551-557
Pronunciation of Latin, 8
prope, 648
Proper names, 38, 193-197; in **plur.**, 699
propior, **propius**, with **acc.**, 600
Proportional numerals, 240
proprius, *own*, 567. s
propter, 649
PROSODY, 858-897; figures of, 887-897
prospicere, with **ut**, 758
Protasis, 787
providere, with **dat. & acc.**, 591; with **ut**, 758
providus, compared, 217

proximus, proxīme, with *acc.*, 600
 -ps, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 124-126
 -pte, appended to pronouns, 251
 pudet, with *gen. & acc.*, 584
 puer, instead of in pueritiā, 691
 in pueritiā, prima pueritiā, 673
 Punishment, *abl.* of, 570
 Purpose, subjunctive of, with ut,
 ne, 758; quo, 763; with relative,
 792; expressed by *ad* with *ge-*
rund, 845
 putāre, with *gen.*, 569; with two
acc., 578; *pass.* with two *nom.*, 540
 putāres, *potential* subjunctive,
 750
 Pythiambic strophe, 927. 16. 17

Q.

quaerere, with two *acc.*, 580
 Quality, *gen.* of, 566. 5; *abl.* of, 615
 quam, with comparatives, 609;
 regularly *omitted* in relative
 sentences, 610; *omitted* after
 plus, amplius, longius, 610; with
 posse & *superl.*, 707; quam quis-
 quam, ullus, 724; quam qui,
 quam ut, w. *subjunct.*, 795, 759
 quamquam, 771
 quamvis, 768
 quandoquidem, 781
 quanti, *gen.* of value, 659, 619
 QUANTITY, 859-896; general rules,
 28; in compounds, 883; of the
 radical syllable, 865; of middle
 syllables, 866-876; of final syl-
 lables, 877-879; of monosyllab-
 les, 880-882; marks of, 10
 quantumvis, 768
 quantus potuit, with *superl.*, 707
 quasi, 772
 que, 849
 quemadmodum, with *indio.*, 772

Question, 532; direct, 796, 797;
 alternative, 798; question and
 answer, 799; indirect, 801, 802;
 indirect disjunctive, 803; in in-
 direct discourse, 825
 qui, 256; its agreement, 551; =
 cum ego, &c. with *subjunct.* 792;
 = ut ego, &c. with *subjunct.*, 792;
 qui? 720; qui dicitur, 555
 quia, 781
 quidam, 725
 quidem, its place, 564
 quilibet, 726
 quin = qui non in clause of re-
 sult, 765; after verbs of *hinder-*
ing, 764; after *negative* clau-
 ses, 765
 quippe qui, with *subjunct.*, 791
 quis = quibus, 257
 quis, 720, 723
 quisquam, 724
 quisque, 727
 quisquis, with *indio.*, 748
 quivis, 726
 quo = ut eo, with *subjunct.*, 763
 quoad, w. *indio. & subjunct.*, 776-778
 quod, in *explanatory* clauses,
 784; quod, quia, *because*, 781;
 quod, *as to*, 785
 quodsi, 787
 quominus = ut eo minus, 764
 quoniam, *since*, 781
 quoque, 849; its place, 564
 quotiens, with *perf. & pluperf.*, 740
 quotquot, with *indio.*, 748
 -quus, adjectives in, 219

R.

-r, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 94-103; ad-
 jectives, 141
 Radical syllables, quantity of, 865
 ratione, *abl.* of *manner*, 613

-rē, for **-rīs** in the *pass.*, 335
rē, **rēd-**, *inseparable prep.*, 516
 READING-CHARTS, 8
 Reciprocal, how expressed, 640
 recordāri, with *gen.*, 568
 recusāre, w. *ne* & *quomīnus*, 764
 reddere, with *two acc.*, 578
 redimere, with *abl.*, 617
 Reduplicated perfects, 349, 361,
 370; quantity of, 867
 Reduplication in compounds, 349,
 361
 refert, with *gen.*, 572
 refertus, with *abl.*, 623
 Reflexive pronouns, 248, 711; in
 indirect discourse, 828
 Reflexive verb, 275
 Relative pronoun, 256-259; agree-
 ment, 551, 552; relative for de-
 monstr. at the *beginning* of
 sentence, 556; in *abl.* of *compa-*
ration, 610; *never* omitted, 557;
 place, 562; general relatives w.
indis., 748; relative clauses with
subjunct., 791-795
 relinquare, with *two acc.*, 578; with
dat. of *purpose*, 595; with *ge-*
rundive, 841
 reliquus, to denote a *part*, 704;
 reliquum est, ut, 759
 reminisci, with *gen.*, 568
 reperiuntur qui, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b
 replere, with *abl.*, 622
 resistere, with *dat.*, 589
 respondere, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 Responsives, 799
 restat, with ut, 759
 Result, *subjunct.* of, with *conjunc-*
tions, 759, 760
 retinēri non possum quin, 766
 reum facere, with *gen.*, 570
 Rhythm, 900; Ionic, 927. 19

Rhythmical feet, 902
 ridere, with *acc.*, 575
-rīmātis, *superl. ending*, 213
 ritu, *abl.* of *manner*, 613
 Rivers, gender of names of, 40
 rogare, with *two acc.*, 580; with
 ut, 758
 rogātū, *abl.* of *cause*, 604
 Roman method of pronunciation,
 9-14
 Root, 467, 468
-rs, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 127
 rus, like name of *town*, 686

S.

-s, Nouns in, *3d decl.*, 103-128; ad-
 jectives in, 141
 salutāris, with *dat.*, 598
 Sapphic stanza, 927. 2 s; verse,
 925. 5. 6
 satiāre, with *abl.*, 622
 satis, with *gen.*, 566. 6
 Scanning, 913
 scire, w. *inf.*, 809; scito for sci,
 338
-scō, *Inceptives* in, 391
 scribere, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 se-, sed-, *inseparable prep.*, 516;
 compounds of *se* with *ā* & *abl.*,
 621
 secernere, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Second Conjugation; *Active*, 318;
Passive, 319; *Deponent*, 328:
Verbs of, 351-364
 Second Declension, 63-77
 secundum, 650
 secus ac, 849
 sed, 853
 sejungere, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Semi-deponents, 277, 278; *2d con-*
jug., 363; *3d conjug.*, 373
 in senectute, 673

senex, instead of in senectūte, 691; compared, 224
 Sentence, 532, 533; of result, sequence of tenses, 745
 sententiā mea, 608
 sentire, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 separāre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621
 Separation, *abl.* of, 620
 Sequence of tenses, 742-746; in sentences of result, 745; in sentences of comparison, 772
 sequitur, with *ut*, 759
 sescenti, *indefinitely*, 233
 sestertius, sestertium, 938, 939
 Short vowels, 10, 861
 si, with *indic.* & *subjunct.*, 787; si quis, 723, 762
 si modo, 790
 si non & nisi, 787, 789
 sic ut, 759
 sicut, with *indic.*, 772
 silentio, *abl.* of *manner*, 614
 similis, *superl.* 215; with *dat.* or *gen.*, 598, 600
 Simple feet, 902; simple forms of verb, 298-302; simple verse, 903
 simulac, simulatque, 773; with *perf.*, 737, 740
 sin, 787
 sine, 664; sine, w. quisquam, ullus, 724
 sinere, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 814; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 822
 Singular, 49; used for the plural, 698; wanting, 188
 Singularia tantum, 187
 singuli, *defective*, 204
 siquidem, *since*, 781
 sitire, with *acc.*, 575
 sive, 852; sive...sive, w. *indic.*, 748
 Small islands, Names of, 683
 so-called, qui dicitur, 555

solito, *abl.* of *comparison*, 611
 solus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. a
 -sōr, *suffix*, 489
 Space, Relation of, 679-681
 spe, *abl.* of *comparison*, 611
 Special Forms in conjugation, 333-338
 Specification, *gen.* of, 566. 7
 id spectāre, with *ut*, 758
 spes est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 spoliāre, with *abl.*, 622
 Spondaic Hexameter, 914
 Stanza, 926; stanzas of Horace, 927
 stare, *cost.* with *abl.*, 617
 statuere, with *in* & *abl.*, 689; with *infin.*, 809
 STEM, 52, 468; in the 5 declensions, 53; 1st decl., 56; 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 79; 4th decl., 171; 5th decl., 176; in the 4 conjugations, 295; in *a*, 340; in *e*, 341; in *i*, 342; in *u* (*v*), 343, 365-367; in consonants, 365-396; in *d*, *t*, 369-374; in *b*, *p*, 375, 376; in *c*, *g*, *q*, *h*, *ct*, 377-384; in *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, 385-389; in *s*, *x*, (*cs*), 390; in *sc*, 391-395
 Stem-words, 466
 Strophe, *see* Stanza
 studere, with *dat.*, 589
 studiosus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 suadere, w. *dat.*, 589; w. *ut*, 758
 sub, 666-667; in composition, 528; in compounds w. *dat.*, 592
 SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, 534, 535; place, 558; adjuncts, 558
 Subjective genitive, 566. 1; as predicate, 571
 SUBJUNCTIVE, 283; of the future tenses wanting, 746; uses, 749-803; with conjunctions, 755-790; with relatives, 791-795; in

indirect questions, 801-803; to express the thought of some other person, 794, 827; in causal clauses, 782

Subordinating conjunctions, 454-462; uses, 755-790

Subordination of sentences, 742

Substantiva mobilia, 46

SUBSTANTIVES, 32, 37, 38; gender, 39-48; number, 49; declensions, 51-192; indeclinable, 181; defective, 182-186; heteroclitics, 190; heterogeneous, 191; derived from adjectives, 488; derived from substantives, 480-487; derived from verbs, 489-495; used as adjectives, 206; substantive predicate, 536; with **dat.**, 601; special uses, 691-700; in **abl. absol.**, 836

subter, 669

Suffixes, 469

sui, sibi, se, 711; **w. quisque**, 727

sumere, with **two acc.**, 578

summus, *top of*, 704

sunt qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. b

super, 668; in compounds **w. dat.**, 592

superbus, with **abl.**, 604

superlative, 211; its declension, 212; with the force of *very*, 705; strengthened, 707; wanting, 224; requires more than two objects, 709

SUPINE, 292, 344; tenses formed upon it, 301; its uses, 847; its equivalents, 848; not changed in **acc. & inf.**, 817

supplicare, with **dat.**, 589

supra, 651

-sūrā, *suffix*, 494

-sūs & -tūs, Nouns in, 4th decl., 183; *suffixes*, 493

suns, its use, 711

Syllables, 21-25; long & short, 860, 861, 899; long by position, 862; common, 863; middle, 866-876; final, 877-879; *syllaba anceps*, 908

Synaeræsis, 890, 891

Syncope, 893

SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSIONS, 54

SYNOPSIS OF TENSES, 298-302

SYNTAX, 1, 532-857

Systole, 895

T.

-t, Nouns in, 3d decl., 129

taedet, with **acc. & gen.**, 584

talis, 269; **talis qui**, with **subjunct.**, 793. a; **talis ut**, with **subjunct.**, 759

tam w. adject. & qui, 793. a

tam w. adject. & ut, 759

tamen, 853

tametsi, 771

tamquam, 772

tanti, tantidem, *gen. of value*, 569, 619

tantum abest, *ut...ut*, 760

tantus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a; **tantus ut**, with **subjunct.**, 759

-tē, appended to pronouns, 251

temperare, with various cases, 591; **temperare mihi non possum quin**, 766

templum, *omitted*, 566. a

Temporal conjunctions, 455; uses, 773-780

in tempore, temporibus, 673

TENSES, 35, 280; formation of, 298-302; *principal and historical*, 743; uses, 730-741; sequence of tenses, 742-746; tenses of the *inf.*, 818, 819; tenses in letters, 741

tenus, 663

-**tēr**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 96, 97
 terra marique, 688
 Tetrameter, 904
 Tetrastich, 926
that & those, not expressed in Latin, 716
 Thesis, 900
 Third Conjugation, *Active*, 320; *Passive*, 321; *Deponent*, 329; in -**īō** (appendix), 331, 332; *Verbs of*, 365-396
 Third Declension, 78-170
 Time, Relation of, 672-678; for how long, 677; how long, 674; how long *before*, 675; how long *since*, 674; when, 672, 673; within which, 676
 timere, with *ut*, ne, 761
 -**tīō**, *suffix*, 493
 Tmesis, 897
 -**tōr**, *suffix*, 490, 491
 totus, 202; nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687
 Towns, Names of, Gender, 42; construction of, 683
 trans, 652; in composition, 529; in compounds with *acc.*, 577
 Transitive verbs, 271; transitive & intransitive, 575
 Trees, Gender of names of, 42
 Trimeter, 904; Iambic, 922-924
 trini, for terni, 238
 Tristich, 926
 Trithemimeres, 912
 -**trix**, *suffix*, 492
 Trochaic strophe, 927. **is**
 -**trūm**, *suffix*, 495
 -**tūrā**, *suffix*, 493
 turpis, with *dat.*, 598
 -**tūs**, *suffix*, 493

U.

u & v, but *one* character, 2, 891
u, Stems, **3d decl.**, 79; **3d conj.**, 343
 -**ū**, Nouns in, **4th decl.**, 171
 ubi, with *gen.*, 566. s; *when*, 773; ubi, ubi primum, with *perf.*, 737
 -**ūbūs**, *dat. & abl. pl.*, **4th decl.**, 172
 ullus, 202; its use, 724
 ultīma, 25
 ultīmus, to denote a *part*, 704
 ultor, ultrix, *adject.*, 206
 ultra, 654
 -**ūlūm**, *suffix*, 494
 -**ūlūs**, *suffix*, 480, 499, 510
 -**ūm**, *suffix*, 489
 -**ūm**, for -**ārūm**, -**ōrūm**, **1st & 2d decl.**, 68; -**ūm**, *gen. pl.* of *adject.*, **3d decl.**, 147
 -**undī**, -**undūs**, for -**endi**, -**endus**, 337
 Unit of measure, 899
 unus, 202; in the plur., 229; instead of singuli, 238; unus omnium, with *superl.*, 707; unus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. **a**
 unusquisque, 267; its use, 726
 -**ūō**, Verbs in, **1st conj.**, 365
 -**ūr**, Nouns in, **2d decl.**, 66; **3d decl.**, 102, 103
 urbs, in *apposition* with names of towns, 684, 685
 -**ūrīō**, Verbs in, 473
 -**us**, Nouns in, **2d decl.**, 63; **3d decl.**, 118-122; **4th decl.**, 171
 -**ūs**, -**ā**, -**ūm**, Adjectives in, 72
 ut, *comparat.*, 772; *final & consecutive*, 756-761; *concessive*, 769; *temporal*, 773; *as soon as*, 737
 ut primum, 773; with *perf.*, 737
 ut si, w. *subjunct.*, 772
 uti, with *abl.*, 626

utīlis, with *dat.* or *ad.* & *acc.*, 598;
with *gerund* & *gerundive*, 844; *uti-*
lius fuit, 747
utīnam, with *subjunct.*, 751
utpōte qui, with *subjunct.*, 792. II
utrum, 797; *utrum...an*, 798
-ūtūs, *suffix*, 503
-ux, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 136

V.

vacāre, with *abl.*, 622
vacūs, with *abl.*, 623
Value, in the *gen.*, 569, 619; in the
abl., 618
vapulāre, *neutral pass.*, 279
ve, 852
vel, 852; with *superl.*, 707
velle, with *inf.* or *acc.* & *inf.*, 809,
814
velut si, with *subjunct.*, 772
vendēre, w. *abl.*, 617; bene, male, 619
venēo, *pass.* to vendēre, 408
venīre, with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595
Verba sentiendi et declarandi, 812
Verbal nouns & adjectives, 286-
292
Verbal inceptives, 392-394
Verbal predicate, 536
VERBS, 32, 270-423; voices, 271;
tenses, 280; moods, 281; finite
verb, 285; persons, 293; conju-
gations, 295; formation of the
tenses, 298; verb-stem, 295; for-
mation of the principal parts,
339; of the 1st *conj.*, 346-349;
of the 2d *conj.*, 351-364; of the
3d *conj.*, 365-396; of the 4th
conj., 397-399; in -IO, 3d *con-*
jug., 331, 368; compounded
with *prepositions*, 516; derived
from *verbs*, 471-474; derived
from *subst.* & *adj.*, 475-479;

place, 558; SYNTAX, 730-848;
Verbs of reminding, remem-
bering, forgetting with *gen.*,
568; of accusing, convicting,
condemning, acquitting, with
gen., 570; of valuing, with *gen.*,
569; of naming, making, tak-
ing, choosing, with two *accus.*,
578; of asking, demanding,
requesting, inquiring, with
two *acc.*, 580; of benefitting,
pleasing, obeying, command-
ing &c., with *dat.*, 589; of giving
& putting, with *dat.*, 593; of buy-
ing & selling, with *abl.*, 617; of
removing, abstaining, with
abl., 620; of plenty & want, fil-
ling and depriving, with *abl.*,
622; of placing, with *in* & *abl.*,
689; of assembling, with *in* &
acc., 690; of willing, wishing,
warning, beseeching, urging,
demanding, resolving, endea-
voring, forcing, permitting,
with *ut* & *ne*, 758; of wishing,
desiring, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 814; of
fearing, with *ut*, *ne*, 761; of hin-
dering, with *quomīnus*, 764; of
emotion, joy, grief, with *quod*,
783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815; verbs
signifying to be able, must, dare,
begin, continue, cease, be accu-
stomed, learn, wish, desire,
resolve, with *inf.*, 809; verbs
of perceiving, with *pres. part.*,
813, 835; of perceiving and de-
claring, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812;
with *nom.* & *inf.*, 821
verēri, with *ut* & *ne*, 761
vero, verum, 853, 564; place, 564
Verses, 898; names of, 904; com-
pound, 903; simple, 903

VERSIFICATION, 898 ff.

versus, 653

vertēre, with *dat.* of purpose, 595

verum, vero, 564, 853

verum est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

vesci, with *abl.*, 626

vestis, in a *collective* sense, 698

vestras, *patrial* *adj.*, 250

vestrum & vestri, 566. 3

vetāre, with *acc.*, 589; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 814; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 822

vetus, *superl.*, 240

vi, vi et armis, *abl.* of *manner*, 614

via, *without prep.*, 688

via et ratiōne, *abl.* of *manner*, 614

vicinitas = vicini, 693

vicinus, with *dat.* & *gen.*, 598

victor, victrix, *adjectives*, 206

vidēre, with *ut*, 758; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812; with *pres. part.*, 813, 835

vidēres, *potential* *subjunct.*, 750

vidēri, with *two nom.*, 540; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 822

vis, 114; per vim, 645

visu, 848

vix, with quisquam, ullus, 724

vocāre, with *two acc.*, 578; vocāri, with *two nom.*, 540

Vocative, 49; of nouns in -iūs, 2d *decl.*, 67; in 3d *decl.*, 154

Voices, 35, 271-279

voluntāte, *abl.* of *manner*, 614

-vōlūs, *Adjectives* in, 216

Vowel-changes in compound verbs, 517

Vowels, 4

Vowel-stems, in *decl.*, 79, 80; in *conj.*, 339, 344

vox, with *gen.*, 566. 7

W.

w, not in Latin, 2

Way by which, *abl.*, 688

Week, Days of the, 936

Weights, Roman, 942

Winds, Gender of names of, 40

without, with *partic.* 834

Women, Names of, 196

Word-formation, 1, 465-531

X.

-x, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 130, 131, 141

Y.

-y, Nouns in, of Greek origin, 88

Year, Date of, 935

yes, 799

-ys, Nouns in, 154

4.10.1
4.10.2
4.10.3
4.10.4
4.10.5
4.10.6

4.10.7

4.10.8

4.10.9

4.10.10

4.10.11

4.10.12

4.10.13

4.10.14

4.10.15

4.10.16

4.10.17

4.10.18

4.10.19

4.10.20

4.10.21

4.10.22

4.10.23

4.10.24

4.10.25

4.10.26

4.10.27

4.10.28

4.10.29

4.10.30

4.10.31

4.10.32

4.10.33

4.10.34

4.10.35

4.10.36

4.10.37

4.10.38

4.10.39

4.10.40

4.10.41

4.10.42

4.10.43

4.10.44

4.10.45

4.10.46

4.10.47

4.10.48

4.10.49

4.10.50

STEIGER'S French Series.

AHN'S French Primer. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.25. (Great care has been bestowed upon the typographical execution of this little book, the perplexing difficulty of the *silent* letters being alleviated by the use of distinguishing

outline and hairline type.

AHN'S French Reading Charts. 20 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. By Dr. P. HENN. \$1.00. (These Wall Charts are printed in very large type, the *silent*

letters being shown by **outline** type cut expressly for the purpose.)

The same. The 20 Plates mounted on 10 Boards. \$3.75 net. Mounted on 10 boards and varnished. \$5.00 net.

(**AHN'S French Primer** and **French Reading Charts** may be advantageously used as an introductory course to any **French Grammar**.)

AHN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. By Dr. P. HENN. First Course. (Comprising a fundamental Treatise on French Pronunciation, French and English Exercises, Paradigms, and Vocabulary.) Boards \$0.40.

***Key** to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. By Dr. P. HENN. Second Course. (Comprising a Series of French and English Exercises, Conversations, Elements of French Grammar with Index, and full Vocabulary.) Boards \$0.60.

***Key** to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. By Dr. P. HENN. First and Second Courses, bound together. Half Roan \$1.00.

AHN'S Elements of French Grammar. By Dr. P. HENN. Being the Second Part of **AHN-HENN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language**.—Second Course—printed separately. Boards \$0.35

AHN'S First French Reader. With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60; Half Roan \$0.80.

AHN'S First French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60; Half Roan \$0.80.

These two editions of one and the same book differ solely in the typographical arrangement of Text and Notes. In the latter the Notes are given separately on the pages following the 75 pieces of Text; in the former each page has at its bottom exactly so much of the Notes as is needed to explain the French Text above. In respect to Vocabulary, etc., both editions are alike.

***Key to AHN'S First French Reader.** By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.30 net.

AHN'S Second French Reader. With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.80; Half Roan \$1.00.

AHN'S Second French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.80; Half Roan \$1.00.

***Key to AHN'S Second French Reader.** By Dr. P. HENN. Bds \$0.40 net.

AHN'S French Dialogues. Dramatic Selections with Notes. Number One. (Specially suitable for young ladies.) Boards \$0.30; Cloth \$0.40.

AHN'S French Dialogues. Dramatic Selections with Notes. Number Two. (Specially suitable for young gentlemen.) Boards \$0.25; Cloth \$0.35.

AHN'S French Dialogues. Dramatic Selections with Notes. Number Three. (Specially suitable for young ladies.) Boards \$0.30; Cloth \$0.40.

Additional volumes of this Series of **French Dialogues**, which fully meet the requirements of advanced students, are in press, and will shortly be published.

AHN'S Manual of French Conversation. In press.

AHN'S French Letter-writer. In press.

Collegiate Course.

C. A. SCHLEGEL. A French Grammar. For beginners. Half Roan \$1.50.

C. A. SCHLEGEL. A Classical French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Half Roan \$1.20.

[* These **Keys** will be supplied to teachers only upon their direct application to the publishers.]

E. Steiger & Co., 25 Park Place, New York.

STEIGER'S Latin Series.

AHN'S Practical and Easy Latin Method. With Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies. By Dr. P. HENN. Half Roan, \$1.80

Also separately:

AHN'S First Latin Book.* (Rules and Exercises mainly on *Nominal* Inflection.) By Dr. P. HENN. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.70

AHN'S Second Latin Book.* (Rules and Exercises mainly on *Verbal* Inflection.) By Dr. P. HENN. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

AHN'S Third Latin Book.* (Rules and Exercises on *Syntax* and *Latin Composition*.) By Dr. P. HENN. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

AHN'S Latin Grammar. By Dr. P. HENN. With References to the Exercises in the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books*. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

AHN'S New Latin Manual. Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies. By Dr. P. HENN. Half Roan, \$2.00

Also separately:

— First Course. Boards, \$0.60; Cloth, \$0.70

— Second Course. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

— Third Course. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

(This is *AHN-HENN'S Latin Grammar*, with part of the Exercises from the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books*, arranged under the corresponding rules.)

AHN'S Complete Latin Syntax. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

This *Syntax* is very complete; it states every matter clearly, and in connection with an extensive collection of exercises under the title:

AHN'S Manual of Latin Prose Composition. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards, \$0.50 is calculated to meet all the requirements even for a six years' collegiate course in Latin. These two books can be profitably used in connection with the above mentioned *AHN-HENN* or any other Latin Course.

AHN-HENN'S First Latin Reader. (*De septem regibus Romanorum*, from LIVY.) With Notes, Vocabulary, and References. (To be used, the second year, with the *Second Latin Book*.) Boards, \$0.70; Cloth, \$0.80

AHN-HENN'S Second Latin Reader. (Selections from JUSTINUS, CAESAR, CICERO, and PHAEDRUS.) With Notes, Vocabulary, and References. (To be used, the third year, with the *Third Latin Book*.) Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.90

These two *Latin Readers*, bound together in one volume. Half Roan, \$1.50

AHN'S Short Latin Course. By Dr. P. HENN. Containing: I. Essentials of Latin Grammar. II. Parallel Exercises, with Vocabularies. III. Reading Lessons, with Vocabulary. Cloth, \$1.20

Also separately:

— Number One. Boards, \$0.60; Cloth, \$0.70

— Number Two. Boards, \$0.60; Cloth, \$0.70

(This book is intended for a one year's or a two years' course in Latin for those who cannot devote more time to its study.)

AHN'S Latin Doctus. Graded Selections from Latin Authors. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards, \$

AHN'S Latin Vocabulary for Beginners. Methodical and Etymological. With a Collection of Latin Proverbs and Quotations. By Dr. P. HENN. (To be used with the *First and Second Latin Books*, or independently.) Boards, \$0.80; Cloth, \$0.70

AHN'S Latin Wall Charts. By Dr. P. HENN. 22 Plates, in Sheets, \$1.50; mounted on 22 Boards, \$6.00. (To be used in connection with any Latin Series.)

* The *Keys* to the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books* (price \$0.40 net, each), intended as aids in dictation exercises, etc., will be supplied to teachers only upon their direct application to the publishers.

🏰 Latin Texts, without Notes, at very low prices. 🏰
(Teubner's Editions.)

Caesar. — Catullus. — Cicero. — Cornelius Nepos. — Curtius Rufus. — Horatius. — Juvenalis. — Livius. — Lucretius. — Ovidius. — Persius. — Phaedrus. — Plautus. — Plinius. — Quintilianus. — Sallustius. — Tacitus. — Terentius. — Vergilius.

For prices of these and of the other Latin books published by Teubner, see STEIGER'S CATALOGUE.

A New Dictionary of the Latin and English Languages. (Latin-English and English-Latin.) With an Appendix of Latin Geographical, Historical and Mythological Proper Names. 16mo. Cloth, \$0.85

Large Stock.

Low Prices.

G

O.

Importer

German

Is

Large

Art, Archi

Ri

Literature,

cl.

Large Stock of

Se

in all Languages

Globe

M

&c.

Acme Library Card Pocket

Under Pat. Sept. 26, '76, "Ref. Index File"

Made by **LIBRARY BUREAU**

146 FRANKLIN ST., BOSTON

either supplied
from German,
Italy, Belgium

Direct Co

Keep Your Card In This Pocket

time
ugal,
tries.

Necessary.

Particular attention
Lists of

Catalogues and

The AHN-HENN German, French, and Latin Courses.

•AHN-HENN'S German Reading Charts. 25 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. \$1.00. — The 25 Plates mounted on 12 boards, \$4.50 net. Varished \$6.00 net.

Complete Method of the German Language. Half Roan \$1.75

Also separately:

First German Book. Boards \$0.25

Second German Book. Boards \$0.45

These two books together form:

•AHN-HENN'S Rudiments of the German Language. First Course. Boards \$0.65, Half Roan \$0.80

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.25 net

Third German Book. Boards \$0.45

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.25 net

Fourth German Book. Boards \$0.60

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.25 net

•AHN-HENN'S Rudiments of the German Language. Second Course. (Being the Third and Fourth German Books together) Boards \$1.00, Half Roan \$1.25

Synopsis of German Grammar. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80

First German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.30 net

Second German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$1.00, Half Roan \$1.20. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$1.00, Half Roan \$1.20

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.30 net

•AHN-HENN'S French Primer. Bds. \$0.25

French Reading Charts. 20 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. \$1.00. — The 20 Plates mounted on 10 boards \$2.50 net. Mounted on 12 boards and varished \$5.00 net

(**•AHN-HENN'S French Primer** and **French Reading Charts** may be advantageously used as an introductory course to any French Grammar.)

Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. Half Roan \$1.00

Also separately:

First Course. Boards \$0.40

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.25 net

Second Course. Boards \$0.50

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.25 net

First French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.30 net

Second French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.80, Half Roan \$1.00. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.80, Half Roan \$1.00

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.40 net

•AHN-HENN'S Practical and Easy Latin Method. With Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies. Half Roan, \$1.80.

Also separately:

First Latin Book. (Rules and Exercises mainly on Nominal Inflection.) Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.40 net

Second Latin Book. (Rules and Exercises mainly on Verbal Inflection.) Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.40 net

Third Latin Book. (Rules and Exercises on Syntax and Latin Composition.) Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90

***Key to same.** Boards \$0.40 net

Latin Grammar. With References to the Exercises in the First, Second, and Third Latin Books. Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90

New Latin Manual. Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies. Half Roan, \$2.00

Also separately:

First Course. Bds. \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70

Second Course. Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90

Third Course. Bds. \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90

(This is **•AHN-HENN'S Latin Grammar**, with part of the Exercises from the First, Second, and Third Latin Books, arranged under the corresponding rules.)

Complete Latin Syntax. Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90

Manual of Latin Prose Composition. Boards \$0.50

First Latin Reader. (*De septem regibus Romanorum*, from Livy.) With Notes, Vocabulary, and References. To be used with the Second Latin Book. Boards \$0.70, Cloth \$0.80

Second Latin Reader. Selections from JUVENAL, CÆSAR, CICERO, and PRÆTORIUS. With Notes, Vocabulary, and References. To be used with the Third Latin Book. Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70

Short Latin Course. (Essentials of Latin Grammar. — Parallel Exercises, with Vocabularies. — Reading Lessons, with Vocabulary.) Cloth \$1.20

Also separately:

Number One. Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70

Number Two. Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70

Latin Vocabulary for Beginners. Methodical and Etymological. With a Collection of Latin Proverbs and Quotations. (To be used with the First and Second Latin Books.) Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70

Latin Wall Charts. 25 Plates, in sheets \$1.50. — Mounted on 22 boards, \$6.00 net

The several Keys above enumerated will be supplied to Teachers only, upon their direct application to the Publishers.